

Class E178

Book 11

.0513

07-5153

OLNEY'S
UNITED STATES,

BROUGHT DOWN TO

1851.



A
HISTORY
OF THE
UNITED STATES,
FOR THE USE OF
SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES.



By J. OLNEY, A. M.

AUTHOR OF THE FAMILY BOOK OF HISTORY, A GEOGRAPHY AND ATLAS, ETC.

REVISED AND IMPROVED EDITION.

NEW HAVEN:
PUBLISHED BY DURRIE & PECK.
1851.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1851, by J. OLNEY, in the Clerk's
Office of the District Court of Connecticut

E178
.1
0513

PREFACE

TO

THE REVISED EDITION.

THE HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES is as deeply interesting as it is eminently instructive. But little more than two centuries ago, our vast territory was an unexplored wilderness, whose only inhabitants were wild beasts and wandering savages. We see a few feeble and scattered Colonies planted in the New World, like seed in an untried soil, slowly putting forth the green leaves of patient hope, the blossoms of growing promise, and, at last, the rich and abundant fruits of a Liberty and Prosperity without parallel in the history of the world. We see our heroic fathers nurturing these germs of a new and free Empire, through long years of toil and danger, contending with their savage foes, the poverty and hardship of their lot, and the selfish and tyrannical government of their own Father Land. In the long and bloody struggle for National Independence, we honor that virtue and heroism which has won the highest place in the annals of fame. In the establishment of our National Government, with its Constitution and Laws, we admire the keen foresight and sound wisdom of the patriots of the Revolution, who laid so deep and strong the foundations of our mighty and glorious Republic. And we survey with wonder and joy, that progress which has turned our wild forests into opulent cities—which has made our lakes, rivers, and coasts, the channels of a mighty commerce—which has startled our wildest mountains and most inaccessible valleys with the shriek of the steam-car, and replaced the insignificance and poverty of our early Colonies by a general wealth and prosperity, which has challenged the admiration of the world.

But still more cheering and important is the lesson taught us by the yet greater contrast between the Old World, as it was, and the New World, as it is. Looking back from our present position in the progress of the race, to that occupied by the most free and enlightened nations at the time of the first discoveries in America, we shall see that the settlement of the United States opened a new era in the history of man—that it was the dawn of a *new civilization*, higher and more perfect than had yet been known. This will be still more evident, if we trace the geographical march of the race from its original locality, to this Western World. Asia, rich in all the treasures of physical nature, was the birth-place of man, the cradle of his infancy, and the school of his childhood. He was there trained to know no bond but that of tyrannical authority, and no relation but that between a solitary despot and a nation of slaves. The soul's aspirations were crushed; and, without thought, there was no progress. But, as time passed on, necessity, or the desire of change, prompted those expeditions and colonies with which began the history and progress of Civil Government. Descending from the highlands of Asia, man proceeded from station to station, toward Europe. Each step was marked by a new and better civilization, and a higher range of thought. Entering Europe, he found a better field for his growing powers. Its coasts, indented with seas, gulfs, and bays, welcomed his early and timid commerce; and its fertile soil and genial climate awakened his powers and excited him to action. Europe thus became the school of his youth, and the field of his first studies in arms and in navigation. Then Science and the Mechanic Arts exercised his thoughts and his powers; and, at length, the great questions

of Civil Freedom and Moral Responsibility. And now, he no longer groveled in the dust beneath a master's frown. He walked erect, and raised his eyes to that Heaven to which his aspirations point. He formed various governments, retaining, indeed, many traces of Asiatic despotism, yet far better adapted to his wants in his advancing development. By slow degrees, he learned the necessity of a more perfect organization, which should recognize and protect the rights of the many. After long and severe struggles, the power of the rulers was limited by written constitutions and laws. This great advance toward popular freedom satisfied him for a time; but still increasing knowledge taught him how oppressive and unjust were the Social, Civil, and Religious Institutions under which he lived. He saw that the power was held by the few, and not by the many. Entire freedom of thought and action was not tolerated. Religion was bound by prescribed forms and creeds, and the church and state were leagued together in a double-headed tyranny. Man's intellect was benumbed by the influence of a corrupt priesthood, and his social rights crushed by the heel of a feudal despot. At length, the glorious Reformation gave an electric shock to his mental powers, taught him to distrust authority, to trace effects back to their causes, and to seek the truth with no other guide than the reason which God had given him. This mighty struggle for Religious Freedom was followed by one as intense and earnest for Civil Liberty. Man now claimed free inquiry and self-government as his inalienable birthright. In this mighty contest between the many and the few, were reared and educated those bold, thoughtful, and earnest men, who left their homes to bear across the ocean, and plant on the shores of North America, the germs of Civil and Religious Liberty. They found the New World opening before them, vast in extent, with its fruitful plains—its grand lakes and rivers—its oceanic position—its varied but genial climate; and all *free*—free as the broad ocean and the boundless air. In this magnificent theatre, unawed by kingly power or priestly authority, and under no eye but that of Heaven, they labored to reduce to *practice* their theories of government and religion. From New England to Florida, settlers from the various nations of Europe met to combine their efforts and gifts, and to carry out the great principles of Social, Civil, and Religious Liberty, on a grander scale than had yet been dreamed of in the Eastern World. Thus tracing the geographical march of mankind through the three Northern Continents, we can say emphatically—

“Westward the cause of Freedom takes its way.”

Asia is still ancient in all her manners and customs. Hardly a single step of progress has marked her history for thousands of years. Europe, the theatre of modern history, rich in science and art, has advanced but slowly, and still watches with deep anxiety the experiment of self-government and entire religious freedom, which her gifted sons had the wisdom to conceive, but not the power to execute. In these United States, the great Republic of the World, lies the grand and imposing theatre of the *future* progress of the race. We are to work out, not alone our own destiny, but that of the whole world. The ever-increasing tide of emigration from other lands, and the unparalleled increase of our own population, have already extended our settlements from ocean to ocean. Cities spring up, and new States are founded in the wilderness, and on our distant Pacific shores, more rapidly than the magic-built palaces of Eastern romance. Here, all the races meet at last in brotherly co-operation, and their varied energies are moulded into one mighty and peaceful nation. Meanwhile, the spirit of investigation is abroad, for a bolder and loftier flight. Nature, in all her domains, is forced to yield up her richest

secrets and rarest powers to the search of a host of philosophers, mechanics, and inventors. Our manufactures already rival those of Europe in variety and importance; and have even, in some cases, superseded those of the Mother Country in her own home-markets. Our commerce, speeded by the magic power of steam, furrows every sea and port with its restless keels. Magnificent palaces glide over our great rivers and lakes. Our fiery coursers unite the wildest valleys of the interior with the rich and busy ports that line our coasts. Broad and deep chasms are spanned by bridges of fairy lightness, but wonderful strength. Impatient thought, already dissatisfied with the swiftness of steam, has called a new messenger to its aid, and sends despatches over *electric* highways with a speed only rived by the light. The Free States of the Atlantic and Pacific shores will soon exchange greetings and intelligence that shall outstrip the sun in his daily course. These marvellous applications of scientific principles to the wants of busy life are due to American inventors, and are but a foretaste of the victories over Nature which still await their untiring energy and skill. Nor are Literature, deep Science, or the Fine Arts neglected nor despised. Here is to be the field of yet greater triumphs for the Pen, the Pencil, and the Chisel, through all the realms of deep study, fervid eloquence, and the most lovely or imposing productions of art. Our Free Schools and Academies, and our popular and flourishing Colleges, are spreading every where the light of general Education—the only safeguard of liberal institutions. Our free Presses are the jealous guardians of our Civil and Social Rights, and tend to unite all classes in one common understanding and labor for the public good. The altars of Religion are no less respected and cherished, because no longer supported by civil or ecclesiastical tyranny. Our country

“Dreads not the skeptic’s puny hands,
While near her school the *church-spire* stands;
Nor fears the blinded bigot’s rule
While near her church-spire stands the *school*.”

Here, for the first time in human history, man will be *truly* man, protected and honored as man, developed in all his powers, and enabled to realize the prophetic dreams of his infancy, and the growing hopes of his youth. Here shall be realized the long-prophesied, long-expected *Golden Age*, which shall perfectly reconcile Order with Liberty, Individual Interests with the General Good, and make Justice and Fraternity the supreme principles in the intercourse, as well of nations, as of men. From this Free and Happy Land shall go forth the power to perfect the Civilization of the World. Completing the long cycle, the Arts of Freedom and of Peace shall be brought home to the ancient cradle of the race, and the deserts of Asia made to rejoice and blossom with the fruits of the highest culture. Then shall commerce, no longer restricted by blind and selfish monopolies, weave a golden chain of sympathy and communion around our globe. The free exchange of products and of works, in this brotherly co-operation, shall arm man with new powers and energies, and confer upon him a wealth surpassing the wildest dreams of the past. The inferior races shall be educated by this friendly intercourse, and made fellow-laborers in the great work of human progress. To the portal of this Golden Future, the consummation of man’s earthly destiny, *America* holds the key. *She* only can accomplish the work to which she is pledged, and thus make the sublimest prophecies and aspirations of the Past the bright *realities* of the Present, and the foundation for a yet nobler Future.

SOUTHINGTON, Jan. 1st, 1851.

CONTENTS.

	Page.		Page.
INTRODUCTION,	9	Events of 1779,	162
Discoveries in America,	19	Events of 1780,	169
Settlement of Virginia,	30	Events of 1781,	177
Settlement of New York,	40	Washington's Administration,	189
Settlement of Massachusetts,	50	Adam's Administration,	200
Settlement of New Hampshire,	70	Jefferson's Administration,	203
Settlement of New Jersey,	74	Madison's Administration,	211
Settlement of Delaware,	77	Events of 1813,	222
Settlement of Connecticut,	79	Events of 1814,	231
Settlement of Maryland,	86	Monroe's Administration,	245
Settlement of Rhode Island,	89	J. Q. Adams' Administration,	249
Settlement of North Carolina,	92	Jackson's Administration,	250
Settlement of South Carolina,	95	Van Buren's Administration,	256
Settlement of Pennsylvania,	98	Harrison's Administration,	261
Settlement of Georgia,	102	Tyler's Administration,	262
The French and Indian War,	106	Polk's Administration,	266
Causes of the Revolution,	118	Taylor's Administration,	279
War of the Revolution,	125	Fillmore's Administration,	281
Events of 1776,	140	Constitution of the U. S.,	283
Events of 1777,	146	Settlement of the States,	288
Events of 1778,	157	Battles of the Revolution,	288

GENERAL DIVISION.

The History of the United States naturally divides itself into **FOUR PARTS** :—

THE FIRST PERIOD

Comprises the events that occurred from the Discovery of America, by Christopher Columbus, in 1492, to the first permanent English settlement in America, at Jamestown, Virginia, in 1607.

THE SECOND PERIOD

Comprises the events that occurred from the settlement of Jamestown to the Declaration of Independence, in 1776.

THE THIRD PERIOD

Comprises the events that occurred from the Declaration of Independence to the adoption of the Federal Constitution, or present system of government, in 1789.

THE FOURTH PERIOD

Comprises the events that occurred from the adoption of the Constitution to the present time.

INTRODUCTION.



VIEW OF THE CIVILIZED WORLD TWO THOUSAND YEARS BEFORE CHRIST.

1. As we glance our eyes over our own fair land and other countries of the civilized world, and remark the high state of learning and the arts,—the facilities for travel, commerce, and social intercourse,—we should bear in mind that these blessings are the result of long ages of toil, struggle, and earnest thought. Indeed, we should remember that the present condition of society, its civilization, comfort, and refinement, is **THE GREAT WORK** of the past; the grand monument of the wisdom and genius of all preceding generations. It would be interesting to trace the progress of society from its origin, to examine the various steps and gradual advance in the cause of human improvement to the present time; but a veil of darkness covers the past, and of the early ages we know comparatively nothing. The various nations were sunk in ignorance, and, doubtless, many that toiled and struggled for the advancement of their race, passed away without leaving on record an event of their history, or even their name.

2. The first authentic historical accounts we have of mankind, extend back no further than about 2000 years before Christ, the period when *Egypt* was distinguished for learning, for a knowledge of the arts, and for a high degree of national prosperity. At that time, most other nations appear to have been sunk in darkness; at least, we know comparatively little of their history. The condition of the world at that period, and the first dawn of civilization, may be illustrated by the preceding map or picture.

3. From Egypt a knowledge of the arts of civilized life extended to other nations bordering on the Mediterranean sea. At that time, the art of navigation was little known. Commerce was carried on between distant cities principally by land. For thousands of years, mankind were ignorant of the extent of the eastern continent, and even of the shape of the earth.* The ocean† was considered as a mighty barrier which no one could pass. As the light of civilization spread abroad, and a spirit of commercial enterprise took the place of the wandering and sluggish habits of barbarous life, mankind began to navigate the great rivers and inland seas, till a profitable trade was carried on in ships between distant nations. The art of navigation, as we shall see by tracing its progress from its infancy down to its present state of perfection, has been attended with the most important results to man.

4. The Phœnicians,‡ or Tyrians, a people who dwelt on the east of the Mediterranean, were most early distinguished for commercial enterprise. It is supposed that they first constructed ships, and invented the art of navigation. They traded not only with the nations inhabiting the coasts of the Mediterranean, but established a regular intercourse with India and Arabia, by the way of the isthmus of Suez and the Red sea. From these countries they imported the most valuable commodities, and for a long time engrossed that lucrative trade without a rival. The vast wealth which they acquired by this means, induced the Hebrews, in the days of David and Solomon, to engage in commercial affairs. They sent ships from Eziongeber, a port on the Red sea, to Ophir, [see 1 Kings, ix. 26,] and after an absence of three years, these returned laden with gold, ivory, ebony, &c.

5. The Egyptians, Greeks, and Romans, the most learned nations of antiquity, seem to have paid no attention to navigation further than it was connected with the means of conquest and military glory. The Carthagenians,§ on the other hand, surpassed all others of that period in commerce and naval power. They made the whole of the old world tributary to their city. Not content with exploring every nook and corner of the Mediterranean, they visited the Atlantic coasts of Europe, the British isles, and, according to Pliny, a Roman historian, they circumnavigated Africa, and returned home by way of

* Formerly the earth was supposed to be flat, and the heavenly bodies to move round it.

† "The ocean," says an eminent Arabian geographer of that time, "encircles the ultimate bounds of the inhabited earth, and all beyond it is unknown. No one has been able to verify any thing concerning it, on account of its difficult and perilous navigation, its great obscurity, its profound depth, and frequent tempests, through fear of its mighty fishes, and its haughty winds. Yet there are many islands in it, some of which are peopled, and others uninhabited. There is no mariner who dares to enter into its deep waters; or if they have done so, they have merely kept along its coasts, fearful of departing from them."

‡ The invention of letters is attributed to the Phœnicians. Cadmus, the leader of a colony from Phœnicia, founded Thebes, and introduced letters into Greece, about 1519 B. C. The alphabet at that time consisted only of sixteen letters.

§ Carthage, a famous city of Africa, founded by a colony of Phœnicians or Tyrians, B. C. 869, and capital of a rich commercial republic of the same name. It was destroyed by the Romans, B. C. 146.

the Red sea. Had not Carthage early fallen by the power of the Romans, perhaps to them would have accrued the glory of discovering America, ages before it was made known to the civilized world.

6. The art of navigation gained nothing for centuries after the fall of Carthage. But from the subversion of the Roman empire,* it seems to have been forgotten until the returning dawn of civilization which succeeded the gloomy period called the *dark ages*. The rude tribes which settled in Italy, having acquired some relish for the arts of civilized life, engaged in commercial affairs with spirit and activity. From about the ninth to the fourteenth century, they were the only commercial people of Europe.†

7. Among these the Venetians took the lead. For a long time they engrossed the whole of the lucrative commerce of India, which they carried on by way of Egypt and the Red sea,‡ or through the inland routes of Asia. The immense wealth which they acquired by this trade, and the high prices put upon the articles thus imported, excited the envy and the enterprise of other nations of Europe. Many began anxiously to inquire, whether another route to India could not be found; one less tedious, less expensive; one that would afford a free and easy course to the nations of Europe, and enable them to procure at a cheaper rate the valuable productions that Southern Asia afforded.

8. About this time, the mariner's compass§ was invented, and man was enabled to pass the boundary within which he had been so long confined. Soon

* Rome was taken, A. D. 476, by Odoacer, prince of the Heruli, and an end put to the Western Roman Empire. Its ruin, however, was the result of its great extent, connected with its moral corruption. Rome had become the seat of luxury, wickedness, and profligacy. It contained within itself the seeds of dissolution, and the Goths, Vandals, Huns, &c., who came to take vengeance on the empire, only hastened its downfall. It now passed forever from the hands of its original masters, into the hands of the barbarians who had so long harassed it by their invasions. These tribes issued from their wilds, and, like a mighty torrent, rolled on and swept away every thing before them. Their path was marked by blood and fire. Nothing was sacred. A night of moral and intellectual darkness overspread the world. For several ages, literature, science, taste, were words scarcely in use. Persons of the highest rank, and in the most eminent stations, could not read or write. This state of things, called the **DARK AGES**, continued from the extinction of the Western Empire to what is termed the revival of learning, about A. D. 1450.

† By means of their extensive commercial intercourse with various parts of Europe, Asia, and Africa, the Italians possessed more geographical knowledge and nautical skill, and had acquired more correct ideas of the true figure of the earth, than any other people of that age. This will account for the singular fact, that the discoverer of America, and those who soon after explored different parts of it, were natives of the commercial cities of Italy, viz. Columbus, Americus Vesputius, Cabot, and Verrazzani.

‡ If you will examine a map, you will perceive, that although the Venetians pursued the shortest route between India and Europe, yet it must have been laborious, slow, and expensive. For the goods were transported to the isthmus of Suez by water, there landed, and conveyed in carriages, or on camels, a distance of more than sixty miles, to the ports of the Mediterranean, where they were re-shipped and transported to Venice or other ports of Europe. Now you will perceive that a continued water passage of much greater length, might be effected with less difficulty and less expense.

§ The mariner's compass is an instrument used by sailors to point out their course at sea. It consists of a magnetic needle suspended freely on a pivot, containing a card marked with the thirty-two points of direction into which the horizon is divided, and which are thence called **POINTS OF COMPASS**. The needle always points to the north, except slight variations, and the direction which the ship is steering is therefore determined by a mere inspection of the card. When and by whom the compass was invented is uncertain; but it is supposed to have been in 1302, by Flavius Gioia, of Naples. It did not come into general use, how-

after this, the art of printing was invented. These had a wonderful effect on society. Mankind now seemed to awake as from a dream. They began to think, to study the laws of nature, to found schools and colleges. A spirit of maritime discovery was awakened. Several nations began to turn their attention to navigation and commercial enterprise.

9. Among these, the Portuguese led the way; and to them is justly due the honor of setting on foot those enterprises of discovery and commerce, which have been attended with such happy results to the human race. Under the patronage of Prince Henry* they discovered the Azores, Madeira, and Cape Verde islands, and explored the shores of Africa to the coast of Guinea. The fame of these discoveries attracted the learned, the curious, and the adventurous, from various nations to Lisbon. Among others, Christopher Columbus† arrived there about 1470.

10. During his residence in Portugal, he sailed in several of their expeditions to the coast of Guinea and the African islands. He participated largely

ever, till after the year 1400. This important instrument has had more influence on navigation than all the efforts of preceding ages. It has enabled man to quit his timid course along the shore, and steer boldly across the unknown deep. It has opened to him the dominion of the sea, and has put him in possession of the terrestrial globe, by enabling him to visit every part of it.

* Prince Henry, the navigator, son of John I., king of Portugal. He was born, A.D. 1394. He early manifested a love for arms and military glory, particularly in the wars against the Moors; but this was surpassed, however, by his love of the sciences, especially mathematics, astronomy, and navigation. During his expeditions in Africa, his vessels visited parts of the ocean which the navigators of that age had regarded as inaccessible. But Prince Henry meditated the discovery of countries till then unknown. Familiar with the previous progress of geographical science, he neglected no opportunity, during his campaigns in Africa, to obtain from the Moors a knowledge of the regions bordering on Egypt and Arabia, and to inquire into the probability of a passage to the treasures of India, by a voyage round the western coast of Africa. The Moors, or Arabians, alone, at this period, were acquainted with this portion of the earth. From this source he received much information respecting the coast of Guinea and other maritime regions. Fully persuaded that Africa was circumnavigable—that a ship, by keeping along its shore, might sail from Europe to India—he offered generous rewards to all who would undertake voyages of discovery down the western coast of Africa. Although he died before he had accomplished the great object of his ambition, viz., A PASSAGE TO INDIA BY WATER, yet he lived long enough to behold, through his means, his native country in a grand career of prosperity. He died in 1463.

† Christopher Columbus was born in the city of Genoa, about 1435. His father, Dominico Columbo, a poor wool-comber, gave him as good an education as his limited means would allow. He early evinced a strong passion for geographical knowledge, and an irresistible inclination for the sea; and at fourteen years of age he began to navigate the Mediterranean. He commenced his sea-faring career with a relative named Columbo, a hardy old captain of the seas, bold and adventurous, and ready to fight in any cause. With this veteran cruiser, Columbus sailed several years, engaged in warlike enterprises against the Mohammedans and Venetians. In one of his engagements with the Venetians, the vessel commanded by Columbus grappled with a large galley, and the crews fought in close combat. In the fury of the contest they threw hand-grenades and other fiery missiles. The galley took fire, and both vessels soon became one flaming mass. The crews threw themselves into the sea. Columbus saved his life by swimming ashore. Portugal, at this time, attracted the attention of Europe by her maritime expeditions and discoveries. Columbus repaired to Lisbon about 1470. Here he married the daughter of Bartholomeo de Pallestrello, a distinguished navigator, who had participated in the discovery of some of the African islands, and had left many charts, journals, and nautical instruments. Columbus made use of these materials, and by profound study became persuaded that the shortest route to India would be found by sailing in a westerly direction.

in the excitement which was felt by all concerned in maritime affairs. As it was the grand object of the Portuguese at that time to discover a passage to the Indies by water, Columbus, from his knowledge of the spherical figure of the earth, was persuaded, that instead of sailing round the southern extremity of Africa, a shorter and more easy route might be found by steering directly west, across the Atlantic ocean.

11. He supposed that the eastern coast of Asia was separated from the western shores of Europe and Africa by an ocean of moderate extent. Several facts tended to confirm this idea. Pieces of carved wood, reeds of an enormous size, and above all, a canoe with the dead bodies of two men, differing in complexion from any known race of people, had been driven by westerly winds upon the Azores, or Western islands. These, and other facts of similar import, convinced him that land might be easily reached by sailing in a westerly direction.

12. Having established his theory, and matured the plan of a voyage, he now began to think of the means of carrying it into execution. Believing it too important an enterprise to be undertaken by an individual, he deemed it necessary to secure the patronage of some sovereign power. For this purpose, in 1484, he made his views known to John II., king of Portugal; but instead of receiving assistance, he experienced ridicule, contempt, and ingratitude.*

13. Columbus soon after returned and laid his plans before the government of Genoa. But that republic was then in a state of decline, and embarrassed by ruinous wars; and in addition to this, its rulers were ignorant, and unable to form any idea of the principles upon which he founded his hopes of success. They looked upon his proposed voyage as the project of a visionary, or lunatic.

14. Columbus next applied to Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain. They listened to his views with attention, and gave him hopes of assistance. Soon after, a council† of the most learned men in the kingdom was assembled by their order, to hold a conference with Columbus and report their opinion as to the merits of his theory. But these, mostly bishops and priests, were poorly qualified to decide upon a subject so much at variance with all their preconceived notions and views. Consequently they came to no decision, and Columbus was kept several years in a state of suspense, struggling with the ob-

* King John gave Columbus an attentive hearing, and being struck with the scheme, he referred it to a council of learned men. It was treated by them with contempt, as extravagant and visionary. Some of them proposed, however, a treacherous experiment to test the truth of his theory, and if found correct, thus secure the glory of the discovery to the crown of Portugal. The king assented to this, and procuring from Columbus a plan of his intended voyage in writing, and the charts by which he intended to shape his course, he dispatched a caravel, or small vessel, to pursue the designated route. The captain, however, was as deficient in courage as his employers were in dignity and justice. After sailing in a westerly direction for some days, and seeing nothing but a waste of wild tumbling waves before him, he returned to Lisbon, ridiculing and execrating the project as wild, irrational, and, above all, DANGEROUS!

† At the time of Columbus, the state of knowledge, even among the learned, was very imperfect; while, to the great mass, nature was a sealed book, and every thing shrouded in mystery. The learned council, assembled to decide upon Columbus's theory, came prepossessed against him. They were far more disposed to criticise and raise objections, than to listen to the dictates of reason and sound argument. Like the stupid and ignorant of all ages, they were ready to condemn every thing that squared not with their own preconceived views and notions. After hearing the novel theory of Columbus, and the reasons urged in support of it, it was contended by certain ones that, however plausible his ideas might appear, they must be false, for they were incompatible with the Christian faith, and contrary to certain passages in the Bible! Others ridiculed his pretensions as wild and extravagant.

stacles thrown in his way by ignorance, bigotry, and malice, before he was enabled to proceed on a voyage of discovery. At length, by orders of Isabella, a fleet, consisting of three small vessels and one hundred and twenty men, was fitted out and placed under his command.



VIEW OF THE CIVILIZED WORLD, A.D. 1492.

15. By examining the above map, it will be seen how much of the earth's surface was known to the civilized world at the time Columbus sailed on his voyage of discovery. It is true, navigation had been greatly improved by the use of the mariner's compass, and many of the nations of Europe were beginning to enjoy the blessings of learning, of the arts, and of commerce; yet, nothing was known with any degree of certainty respecting the extent and true shape of the earth. Even Columbus himself never dreamed of discovering a

"What vanity," said they, "to think at this late day *he* has discovered something which has escaped the notice of all before him!" "How ridiculous are his plans!" said others; "for we all know, that if a ship should sail westward on a globe, she would necessarily go down on the opposite side, and if she did not slip off, it would be impossible for her ever to return, for it would be like climbing up hill, which no ship could do with the strongest wind." "How absurd," said another, "to believe that there are people with their feet opposite to ours, who walk with their heels upward and their heads hanging down; that there is a part of the world where all things are topsy-turvy; where the trees grow with their branches downwards, and where it hails, rains, and snows upward!"

new continent, but simply of finding a new route to the eastern and southern shores of Asia.

16. All things being ready, on the 3d of August, 1492, Columbus set sail from the port of Palos, in Spain. Thus, after eighteen years of painful solicitation at different courts, amid poverty, neglect, and ridicule, he was enabled to test the truth of his theory, and engage in an enterprise which has led to more important results than any ever before undertaken by man.

17. He steered directly for the Canary islands. Here he refitted his vessels—furnished himself with water and fresh provisions. On the 6th of September, he steered directly west into an ocean on which no vessel had ever before sailed. No sooner were they out of sight of land, than the hearts of his crews were filled with anguish. They seemed to have taken leave of the world. Behind them was every thing dear to the heart of man,—country, family, friends; before them was mystery, gloom, and peril. After sailing twenty-one days without sight of land, their courage began to sink; but Columbus, by reminding them of the honors, the glory, the riches, they would acquire by completing the voyage, succeeded in dispelling their fears and reviving their hopes.

18. About this time the needle of the compass deviated from its course, that is, it did not point to the north star, or north pole. At this the pilots, and even Columbus himself, became alarmed. They were fearful that this instrument was about to lose its mysterious virtues; and without this guide, what was to become of them on a vast and trackless ocean? But shortly after, they met large quantities of floating sea-weed, and several land-birds were also seen. For some time the voyage was continued with animated hopes. They every moment expected to see land; but after sailing many days without seeing any, they decame disheartened. The impatience of the sailors rose to absolute mutiny.

19. "Here we are," said they, "sailing day after day into seas where man has never sailed before. And for what? Why, simply that our commander, who is an ambitious desperado, may do something extravagant to render himself notorious. Shall we continue on until all perish, or return while we have the power of so doing? Who would blame us? He is a foreigner, without friends. His schemes have been condemned and ridiculed by the learned. Many would be gratified by his failure."

20. Some even proposed to throw him overboard, and return without him. Columbus was aware of the state of feeling among the crews; and after trying various ways to pacify them, promised that, if they would continue on three days longer, he would then return if land was not discovered. To this they all agreed. The next day they became convinced that they were near land. Birds were seen flying in all directions. A branch of a thorn-bush, with berries on it, floated by. They picked up a reed, a small board, and a staff curiously carved.

21. There were now no murmurs, no complaints. Every eye was turned in the direction whence land was expected to be seen. On the following night, October 11th, all remained on deck. About 10 o'clock Columbus saw something: it appeared to be a light at a great distance. He pointed it out to those near him. They saw it. They continued on till about two in the morning, when a gun from the forward vessel gave the joyful signal of land. When daylight appeared, they saw before them a level and beautiful island, of great freshness and verdure, which Columbus afterward named St. Salvador.* It

* The first land that Columbus discovered, was one of the Bahama Islands, in the West Indies, called by the natives Gua-na-ha'-hi. Columbus named it St. Salvador. It is now called Cat island. It is about 60 miles in length, and 12 in breadth.

was covered with trees, and evidently populous, for multitudes were seen issuing from the woods, and running from all parts to the shore. All the boats were immediately manned and armed, and the Spaniards rowed toward the shore with music and martial pomp.

22. Columbus went first on shore, and was followed by his men. They all knelt, and kissed the ground with tears of joy, and returned thanks to God for their successful voyage. Columbus now drawing his sword, planted the royal standard, and took formal possession of the country in the name of the king and queen of Spain. The natives* witnessed these ceremonies with wonder. All was new to them; the complexion, the dress, the shining armor of the Spaniards.

23. Columbus, perceiving them to be a simple and inoffensive people, to gain their good will, gave them some red caps, strings of beads, and other trifles, which they received with the greatest transport. He spent a few days in examining the coasts and productions of the country, and then sailed to other islands which lay within sight. Having discovered Cuba and Hispaniola,† and several other islands, he built a fort and left a colony of thirty-nine men. He obtained large quantities of gold, and other valuable articles, and taking a number of the natives, he sailed for Spain, Jan. 4, 1493.

24. After encountering many toils and dangers, he arrived at Palos on the 15th of March, amid the shouts of the people, the ringing of bells, and the thunder of cannon. Success usually causes an astonishing change in the opinions of mankind. Columbus, who had been treated as a senseless visionary, was *now* received with almost regal honors. His entrance into Barcelona, where the court then resided, was a species of triumph more glorious than that of a conqueror. It was the tribute of respect paid to genius and exalted worth.

25. Columbus, after this, made three other voyages to the NEW WORLD, and on the 1st of August, 1498, he discovered the continent near the mouth of the Orinoko. The latter part of his life was imbittered by the envy and malice of his enemies. In a word, he experienced the fate of the truly great. With an ingratitude scarcely to be paralleled, he was once sent home in chains,‡ to answer a groundless accusation. Though declared innocent, and apparently restored to regal favor, he never received the rewards due to his merit.§ Even

* India was a term applied by Europeans to the southeastern parts of Asia, and the adjacent islands. As Columbus was in search of these regions, the first land he discovered he supposed to be a part of India, and he called the inhabitants INDIANS, and this name was subsequently applied to all the natives of the western world, and which they still retain.

† The island was named Hispaniola by the Spanish, and St. Domingo by the French. It is now called Hayti, the original Indian name.

‡ These chains Columbus kept hanging in his room during his life, and requested that when he died they might be buried in his grave, which was accordingly done.

§ The Spanish nobility were envious of the honors and distinctions conferred upon Columbus, and they sought every opportunity to detract from his merits, and to decry the greatness of his actions. They insinuated that his discoveries were rather the result of an accident than of well-concerted measures. At a public dinner, several courtiers abruptly asked him, whether, in case he had not discovered the Indies, there would not have been men in Spain capable of doing it. Columbus made no direct reply, but, calling for an egg, he invited the company to make it stand upon one end. When every one had attempted it in vain, and confessed it impossible, "Give it to me," said Columbus. Having taken it, he struck it upon the table, broke one end, and left it standing on the broken part. They all cried out, "Why, I could have done that." "Yes," said Columbus, "but none of you thought of it. So I discovered the Indies, and now every pilot can steer the same course. Remember the scoffs that were thrown out at me before I put my design into execution. Then it was a dream, a chimera, a delusion; *now* it is what any person might have done as well as I!"

the honor of giving name to the new world he had discovered, was denied him. Worn down with anxieties, fatigue, and sufferings, he ended his useful life at Valladolid, the 20th of May, 1506. His last words were, "Into thy hands, O Lord, I commend my spirit."

26. He died, says Mr. Irving, in ignorance of the real grandeur of his discovery. Until his last breath, he entertained the idea that he had merely opened a new way to the old resorts of opulent commerce, and had discovered some of the wild regions of the east. He supposed Hispaniola to be the ancient Ophir which had been visited by the ships of King Solomon, and that Cuba and Terra Firma were but remote parts of Asia. What visions of glory would have broken upon his mind, could he have known that he had indeed discovered a new continent, equal to the old world in magnitude, and separated by two vast oceans from all the earth hitherto known by civilized men!

27. The discoveries of Columbus produced a powerful excitement in Spain and Portugal. Several individuals, stimulated by the hope of wealth and honors, made equipments at their own expense, and crossed the ocean. Among the earliest of these adventurers, was Alonzo de Ojeda, an enterprising officer who had accompanied Columbus in his first expedition. He sailed in 1499, and discovered the main land at the mouth of the Orinoko. With him was one Americus Vesputius,* who published on his return so flattering an account of his voyage, as to make it appear that he had the honor of first discovering the continent of the new world. His description was the first given to the public. It circulated rapidly, and was read with admiration. By this means he obtained the honor of giving his name to this continent, but not without manifest injustice to Columbus.

* Americus Vesputius was born at Florence, in Italy, in 1451. He early discovered a taste for philosophy, mathematics, and navigation. In 1490, he went to Spain for the purpose of trading, and was at Seville when Columbus was making preparations for his second voyage. The success of Columbus's undertaking induced Vesputius to give up trade and explore these newly-discovered countries. In 1499, he sailed with Ojeda, as stated above, after having clandestinely obtained from the bishop of Burgos the drafts and plans which Columbus had left in his hands, in obedience to the orders of their Catholic majesties. He made several voyages afterward, and died at Seville in 1512.

INTRODUCTORY LESSON.

What is the name of this town? What is the principal employment of the people of this town? What do you understand by agriculture? Manufactures? Commerce? Have any events worthy of notice taken place in this town since you can remember? Do you think any have happened since your parents can remember? Can you mention any that have been told you? Can you mention the names of any distinguished persons that have lived in this town? Can you inform me when this town was first settled by white people, or Europeans? Who lived here before the white people came? What has become of the Indians? Should you like to hear a person relate all the important events that have happened in this town, since it was first settled by white people? What would you call this relation or account? Does history always signify a relation or narrative of past events?

What is the name of this county? Can you inform me which town in this county contains the greatest number of inhabitants? Which is the shire or county town? What is the principal employment of the people of this county? Can you tell me which town in this county was first settled by Europeans? Can you mention the names of any distinguished persons that have lived in this county? Can you relate any events worthy of notice that have taken place in this county?

What is the name of this State? What is the capital of it? What do you mean by capital? Which is the most populous town or city in this State? What is the difference between a town and a city? Who is the present governor of this State? Who was governor before him? What town was first settled in this State? By what European nation was it settled? How many years since? Can you mention the names of any distinguished individuals that have lived in this State? Can you relate any important events that have happened in this State?

What is the name of this country? What is the capital of the United States? Which is the most populous city in the United States? Where was the first permanent English settlement made in the United States? How many years since? Who is the president of the United States? Who was president before him? Who is the vice-president of the United States? Can you mention the names of any distinguished persons that have lived in the United States? Can you relate any important events that have taken place in the United States? Is our present form of government monarchical or republican? What is the difference between a monarchical form of government and a republican?

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.



SITUATION OF AMERICA IN A.D. 1492.

PERIOD I.

COMPRISES THE EVENTS THAT OCCURRED FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS, IN 1492, TO THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN, A. D. 1607.

1. The discovery of America by Columbus, in 1492, produced great excitement throughout the civilized world. It awakened a spirit of activity, enterprise, and inquiry, never

QUESTIONS. What events does the first period comprise? By whom was America discovered? When? What was the condition of the country at that time? *Ans.* A wilderness, inhabited by Indians. What does the cut represent?

before known. The gold, the silver, and other valuable productions found by the Spaniards, excited other nations to make discoveries in these new and unexplored regions. Among these the English took the lead.

2. In 1497, John Cabot,* and his son Sebastian,† under the patronage of Henry VII.,‡ king of England, sailed from Bristol, with a fleet of five ships. On the 3d of July, they discovered the American continent in latitude 56° N. "the dismal cliffs of Labrador." Steering southwardly, they soon after arrived at the island of Newfoundland. Thence they sailed along the coast as far south as Florida. Having taken possession of the country in behalf of the crown of England, they returned without making any settlement.

1. What effect did the discovery of America produce? What induced other countries to make discoveries in America? *Ans.* The hopes of enriching themselves by extending their commerce, acquiring vast territories, and obtaining gold, silver, and other valuable productions. What nation took the lead?

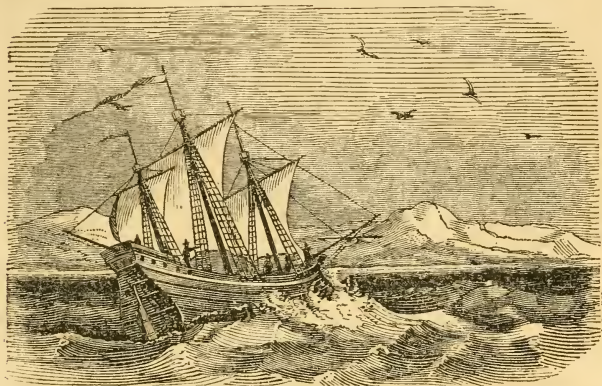
2. Who first sailed from England to America? Who was John Cabot? Sebastian Cabot? Who was king of England at that time? What did they discover? Upon what did the English found their claim to the eastern part of North America?

* John Cabot was a native of Venice. He resided in Bristol, England, some years previous to the discovery of America by Columbus. He was skilled in all the sciences requisite to form an accomplished mariner. Encouraged by the success of Columbus in his first voyage, Cabot was determined to attempt the discovery of unknown lands. He sailed from England the beginning of May, 1497, with five vessels freighted by the merchants of London and Bristol, with articles of traffic, and 300 men. The accounts of this voyage are involved in much obscurity. According to some, after discovering the continent, he sailed north to the latitude of sixty-seven degrees; but meeting with ice, he changed his course, and sailed along the coast toward the equator till he came to Florida. Here his provisions failed him, and a mutiny broke out among his men; and he was compelled to return to England.

† Sebastian Cabot, son of John Cabot, was born at Bristol, England, about the year 1477. He was early instructed in the mathematical knowledge necessary for a seaman, and at the age of seventeen had made several voyages. He sailed several times to the western continent for the purpose of finding a passage to the East Indies. Being disappointed in this, he quit England, and spent some time in the service of Spain. About the beginning of the reign of Edward VI., 1549, he returned to England, and had a pension settled on him as grand pilot of England. He died about 1557, leaving behind him a high character both as a skillful seaman and a man of great general abilities.

‡ Henry VII., of England, was born in 1457. He opposed and defeated Richard III., at Bosworth, and was proclaimed king on the field of battle in 1485. He was devoted to the happiness of his subjects, and contributed materially to the establishment of commerce, the encouragement of industry, and to the protection of the arts. He checked the encroachment of the nobles, made salutary laws, and died, with the reputation of a great and good king, in 1509.

Upon the discoveries made in this voyage, the English founded their claim to the eastern part of North America.*



DISCOVERY OF FLORIDA, IN 1512.

3. In 1512, Juan Ponce de Leon,† a Spanish commander, discovered and named Florida. Having obtained a commission from the king of Spain, he soon after attempted to plant a colony in it. But no sooner had he landed than his company were attacked by the natives, with poisoned arrows, and the greater part of them killed, and the remainder obliged to quit the country. In consequence of this discovery, the Spaniards laid claim to the territory of Florida.

4. In 1524, John Verrazzani,‡ in the employment of

3. When and by whom was Florida discovered? By whom was he commissioned to plant a colony there? What became of this colony? Upon what did the Spaniards rest their claim to Florida?

* It was adopted as a rule by the sovereigns of Europe at that time, and is still received as a principle of the law of nations, that newly discovered countries belong to the discoverers.

† Juan Ponce de Leon was sent to conquer the island of Porto Rico; and having there amassed great riches, and received information of an island situated to the north, in which there was a miraculous fountain possessing the power of restoring youth to the aged, he sailed, in 1512, in quest of those happy shores. Although he was unable to find THE FOUNTAIN OF YOUTH, he discovered the country, to which he gave the name of Florida, on account of its blooming appearance.

‡ John Verrazzani was a native of Florence, Italy. It is worthy of remark, that

Francis I.,* king of France, sailed along the American coast from Florida to Labrador, and named the country New France. He made another voyage the year following, when, by some unknown disaster, he and all his companions perished. In 1534, the French fitted out another expedition under James Cartier. He discovered and named the gulf of St. Lawrence. The year following, he sailed up the river of St. Lawrence, as far as Montreal, and took possession of the country in the name of the French king. The discoveries of Verrazzani and Cartier laid the foundation of the French claim in North America. In 1540, they attempted to plant a colony in Canada, but being unsuccessful, they abandoned the enterprise.

5. In 1539, Ferdinand de Soto,† governor of Cuba, landed on the coast of Florida, with an army of about 1,200 men. He penetrated far into the country in search of gold, exposed to famine, hardships, and the opposition of the natives. In

4. In what year did Verazzanni sail along the American coast? By whom employed? What did he call the country? What happened to him the next year? When and by whom was another expedition made? What gulf did Cartier discover and name? Of what country did he take possession the next year? In whose name? What laid the foundation of the French claims in N. A.? When was an attempt made to plant a colony, and with what success?

6. Who landed an army on the coast of Florida in 1539? What did he do? What did he discover in 1541? Where and when did he die? What became of his followers?

Spain, England, and France, owed their first discoveries in the new world to the Italians; a circumstance which clearly proves that in those times no nation was equal to the Italians in point of maritime knowledge and extensive experience in navigation. It is, however, remarkable, that the Italians, with all their knowledge and experience, have not been able to acquire one inch of ground for themselves in America. This singular failure has been ascribed to the penurious mercantile spirit of the Italian republics, to their mutual animosities and petty wars, and to their contracted, selfish policy.

* Francis I., king of France, called by his subjects the "*father of literature*," was born in 1494. He succeeded Lewis XII., on the French throne, in 1515. He is known as the rival and opponent of Charles V., emperor of Germany, and with whom he was involved in war during almost his whole reign. He was noted for his generosity, clemency, and love of letters; and had he been contented with the arts of peace, France would have been happy and prosperous under his government. He died at Rambouillet in 1547.

† Ferdinand de Soto, a brave, gallant, and intrepid officer. He served under Pizarro, in the conquest of Peru, with such reputation as to obtain from the king of Spain the government of Cuba. Desirous of wealth and renown, he left his honorable and lucrative station, and found want, misery, disease, and a grave! To conceal his death, his body was wrapped in a mantle, and in the stillness of midnight, was sunk in the middle of the river. The discoverer of the Mississippi slept beneath its waters.



DISCOVERY OF THE MISSISSIPPI, IN 1541.

the spring of 1541, he discovered the Mississippi, about 600 miles from its mouth. He continued his march westward to the Red river; but disappointed in his search for gold, he returned to the Mississippi, where he died, May 21, 1542. His followers, after several ineffectual attempts to reach Mexico by land, built seven frail barks without decks, sailed down the river to its mouth, then steered for Mexico, and entered the river Panuco. Their numbers at that time were reduced to three hundred and eleven.

6. During the religious wars in France, Admiral Coligny,* the head of the Protestant sect in that country, formed a plan for settling a colony of his brethren in America, where

6. Who was Coligny? When did he form a plan for a colony? What was the state of France at that time? What was his object in settling a colony? By whose permission was a company sent? Under whom? Where did they land? What happened the next winter? What was their condition while on their return? What became of them at last? What was this the first attempt to do?

* Gaspard de Coligny, a celebrated admiral of France, was born in 1516. He bravely supported the cause of the French Protestants against the Catholics headed by the duke of Guise. After gaining several victories over the opposite party, he was basely assassinated by one of the domestics of the duke of Guise, in the beginning of the horrid massacre of Paris, on the eve of St. Bartholomew's day, 1572, when 30,000 Protestants were inhumanly butchered.

they might be safe from the persecutions of their enemies. By permission of Charles IX.,* in 1562, he sent out two ships under the command of John Ribault, with a large number of colonists, to that part of America called Florida.† They reached the coast in the latitude of St. Augustine; and in May, discovered the St. John's river, which they named the river of May. Sailing northerly along the coast, they at length arrived at Port Royal entrance, on the coast of South Carolina. There they determined to establish the colony. A fort was erected, called Fort Carolina, after the name of the king, in which Ribault left the colonists and returned to France. During the following winter the settlers mutinied, killed their commander, built and rigged a rude vessel, and put to sea for the purpose of returning to their native country. Their little stock of provisions soon failed, and they were reduced to the dreadful extremity of killing and eating one of their companions. In this destitute condition they were taken up by an English vessel and carried to England. This was the first attempt to plant a colony within the limits of the United States.

7. In 1564, another colony was sent out by Coligny, under Laudonniere. He proceeded to the river May, or St. John's, and built another fort, which was also named Carolina. Having planted his colony, he returned to France. The Spaniards, enraged at this intrusion on their lands by

7. When and under whom did Coligny send out another colony? Where was fort Carolina built? When was the city of St. Augustine founded? Which is the oldest European settlement in the United States? What did the Spaniards do? What did Melendes do to secure the country for Spain?

* Charles IX., king of France, was born in 1550, and ascended the throne at the age of 10 years, after the death of his brother, Francis II. During his childhood, he was guided by his mother, Catharine de Medicis, a woman of great ambition, but of little prudence; and as the kingdom was divided by religious factions, nothing for the happiness of the people, or the glory of the throne, could be expected. In the midst of these struggles, Charles maintained a conduct full of dissimulation and hypocrisy. And while he pretended friendship and protection to all his subjects, he was secretly meditating that fatal massacre of St. Bartholomew, in 1572, which leaves an indelible stigma of barbarous cruelty on his name. He died in 1574, and was succeeded by his brother, Henry III.

† For a long time after the discovery of the country, the coast from the gulf of Mexico to Pamlico sound was embraced under the name of Florida. It is supposed by some, that Ribault left his colony on the banks of the Edisto river, within the present limits of South Carolina.

heretics, sent a large force, under Don Pedro Melendes, to break up the settlement. He arrived on the coast of Florida the seventeenth of September, 1565, and entered a beautiful harbor. The next day he took formal possession of the country in the name of the king of Spain, and laid the foundation of St. Augustine, the oldest city, and the first permanent European settlement within the limits of the United States. Soon after, he took the fort and put the settlers to death in the most barbarous manner. To secure the country for Spain, he built three forts and left them garrisoned by Spanish soldiers.

8. The French government took no notice of this atrocious act of the Spaniards. An individual, however, by the name of Ferdinando Gourgues, a soldier of great wealth, indignant at this outrage, fitted out an expedition at his own expense, and sailed for Florida. By a bold assault, he took the Spanish forts, and put the garrisons to death.* Not being in a situation to keep possession of the country, Gourgues destroyed the forts and returned to France. Neither the French nor Spaniards ever after attempted a settlement at that place.

9. Sir Humphrey Gilbert, an enterprising navigator, having obtained a patent† from Elizabeth,‡ queen of England, in 1583, sailed with five ships to America. He entered the

8. In view of this outrage, what did Gourgues do? How did he treat the Spaniards?

9. When did Sir Humphrey Gilbert sail for America? What bay did he enter? What did he find there? In whose name did he take possession of the country? Why was he compelled to return? What became of him and his company?

* Melendes hung on trees all the Frenchmen that he captured, with a label suspended, "Not Frenchmen, but heretics." Gourgues, in retaliation, hung all the Spaniards that he took, with a label signifying, "Not men, but devils."

† Patent, or letters patent, a commission or writing from the sovereign power, granting authority to a person to do some act, or enjoy some right. The term is now applied, in the United States, to certificates issued from the patent office at Washington, which gives to the inventor of any useful machine the exclusive advantage of his invention.

‡ Elizabeth, one of the most celebrated sovereigns of England, was the daughter of Henry VIII., by his queen, Ann Boleyn. She was born in 1533, and began her reign in 1558. She was highly accomplished both in person and mind; and estimating her character by the events of her reign, she will justly rank high among those who have sat on the English throne. Under her auspices, the Protestant religion was first established; factions repressed; the government strengthened; a navy created; commerce rendered flourishing; and the national character aggrandized. She died in 1602, and was succeeded by James VI. of Scotland and I. of England.

bay of St. John's, in Newfoundland, where he found thirty-six fishing vessels. Here he landed and took possession of the country in the name of his sovereign, and made some preparations for establishing a colony; but being in want of provisions, he and his company were compelled to return. On their way back, the vessel in which he sailed foundered, and all on board perished.

10. In 1584, Sir Walter Raleigh* obtained from Elizabeth a patent similar to the one granted to Gilbert. Under this commission he sent out two ships to America, commanded by Amidas and Barlow, to examine the country they intended to settle. They landed at Roanoke, and spent some weeks in trafficking with the natives, by whom they were received with the greatest respect and hospitality. On their return, they gave so flattering an account of the country, that the queen called it Virginia.† This name was afterward applied to the whole coast.

11. In 1585, Raleigh sent out a squadron of seven ships, carrying 107 persons, and every thing necessary to begin a settlement, under Sir Richard Grenville. He left them on Roanoke island, under the care of Ralph Lane, and returned to England. The settlers, however, instead of cultivating the ground, spent their time in searching for mines of gold and silver. On account of their lawless conduct while rambling through the country, many were destroyed by the

10. When did Raleigh obtain a patent? Who were sent out under this commission? Where did they land? How were they treated by the natives? What was the country called on their return? In honor of whom? *See note.* To what was this name afterward applied?

11. When did Raleigh send out another colony? Where did he leave them? What did they do? What became of many of them? What of the survivors? Who arrived shortly after? What did he do?

* Sir Walter Raleigh, (Raw-le), a distinguished warrior, statesman, and writer: was born in Devonshire, in 1552. He performed eminent services for Queen Elizabeth, particularly in the discovery of the country now called Virginia, and in the defeat of the Spanish Armada. He lived in great honor and happiness during her reign. But his sun set at her death. On the accession of James I. he was much persecuted, and accused of high treason. Though reprieved, he remained a prisoner twelve years in the tower of London. He was afterward commissioned to go and explore the gold mines of Guiana; but shortly after his return he was basely condemned on his former sentence of treason, and beheaded in 1618. He is said to have first introduced tobacco into Europe.

† Virginia signifies *the land of a virgin*, so called in honor of the *virgin* or unmarried Queen Elizabeth.

Indians, and others perished with hunger. Reduced to great distress for want of provisions, the survivors were taken to England by Sir Francis Drake,* on his return from the West Indies. Shortly after their departure, Sir Richard Grenville arrived with ample supplies of men and provisions. Not finding the former colony, he left fifteen of his crew to retain possession of the island, and returned to England.

12. In 1587, Raleigh, not discouragad by his ill success, dispatched three vessels, under the command of Capt. White, with 150 men. On their arrival at Roanoke, the little company left by Grenville was not to be found. They probably had been killed by the Indians. White left 117 persons, and returned to England to obtain further supplies. But in consequence of the war then existing between that country and Spain, three years elapsed before any supplies were sent to the colony. When they arrived, no vestige of the settlers remained. All had perished. Thus ended the exertions of Raleigh to plant a colony in America.

13. Discouraged by these successive misfortunes, the English for some years made no further attempt to plant a colony in the new world. In 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold made a voyage, discovered and named Cape Cod,† landed on the coast, and visited the adjacent islands. After trading some time with the Indians, he returned and gave so favorable an account of the country, that a more extensive plan of colonization was devised than had before been attempted.

14. By the influence of Richard Hakluyt,‡ an association

12. What was done in 1587? What probably became of those left by Grenville? What did White do? How long before supplies were sent to the colony? What had become of the settlers in the mean time?

13. How were the English affected by these misfortunes? When did Gosnold make a voyage? What did he discover? On his return, what took place?

* Sir Francis Drake, a distinguished naval hero, was born in Devonshire, England, 1545. He made his name immortal by a voyage into the Pacific ocean, through the straits of Magellan, and by completing a voyage round the globe. He was distinguished for his expeditions and victories over the Spaniards. He died, after having rendered the most eminent services to his country by his bravery and skill, in 1597, on board of his own ship, in the West Indies. He first introduced potatoes into Europe from South America.

† When Gosnold arrived near this cape, in 1602, he caught a great quantity of cod-fish, and from this circumstance he named it *Cape Cod*.

‡ Richard Hakluyt was born in England, in 1553. He was famous for his knowl-

of gentlemen was formed for the purpose of establishing colonies in America. Upon their application to King James,* in 1606, he divided the territory lying between the 34th and the 45th degrees of north latitude, extending from Cape Fear to Halifax, into two districts, called *North* and *South Virginia*. The *latter* extended from the 34th to the 38th degree of north latitude, or from Cape Fear to the southern limit of Maryland, and the *former* from the 41st to the 45th degrees of north latitude. He established two companies, likewise, for the purpose of making settlements in those districts, called the London and Plymouth companies. South Virginia was granted to the London Company, and North Virginia to the Plymouth Company. The intermediate district between North and South Virginia from 38 to 41 degrees, was open to the competition of both companies.

15. In 1603, Henry IV.,† king of France, granted to De Monts, a gentleman of distinction, the sole jurisdiction of the country called Acadia, extending from the fortieth to the

14. By whose influence was an association formed? For what purpose? How did King James divide America? What two companies did he establish? To which was North Virginia granted? To which South?

15, 16. When did the king of France grant Acadia to De Monts? When and where was the settlement made? When was Quebec founded? How did these French possessions affect the English colonies?

edge of the naval history of his country. He published a collection of voyages and discoveries, which had a happy influence in turning the attention of the nation to maritime affairs. He died in 1616, and was buried in Westminster abbey, London.

* James I. of England and VI. of Scotland was the son of Mary, queen of Scots, so famous for her beauty, wit, learning, and misfortunes. He was born at Edinburgh castle, in 1566. The following year, his mother being forced to relinquish the throne, he was solemnly crowned at Stirling, with the title of James VI. of Scotland. On the death of Queen Elizabeth, in 1603, he succeeded to the crown of England under the title of James I. Several conspiracies were formed to destroy him and overturn the government, the most noted of which was the famous gunpowder plot, concerted in 1605, the object of which was to blow up the king and parliament. See the Easy Reader, page 65. During his reign, the Bible was translated into English. He died in 1625, and was succeeded by Charles I. James was not destitute of abilities or good intentions, but owing to his vanity and weakness of temper, he was neither beloved at home, nor respected abroad.

† Henry IV. of France was born at Pau in 1553. His right to the throne was disputed because he was a Protestant. After the massacre of St. Bartholomew, in 1572, he signalized himself as a soldier and general, and gained several victories over his enemies. Convinced that he should never enjoy quiet possession of the French throne without professing the Catholic faith, he embraced that religion in 1593, and was solemnly anointed king at Chartres in 1594. Having overcome the foreign enemies of his country, he succeeded in restoring the internal prosperity of his kingdom. He paid 330 millions of the national debt, and laid up 40 millions in the treasury. He sought by every means in his power to render his subjects prosperous and happy. But notwithstanding this, several conspiracies were formed to overthrow the gov-

forty-sixth degree of north latitude, or from Delaware bay to the gulf of St. Lawrence. The next year, De Monts sailed with two vessels, and arrived on the coast of Nova Scotia in May. After spending some time in examining the coasts, and trafficking with the natives, he erected a fort on an island at the mouth of the St. Croix river, and there passed the winter. The spring following, he formed a settlement in Nova Scotia, near the bay of Fundy, which he named Port Royal—now called Annapolis. This was the first permanent settlement of the French in America.

16. In 1608, De Monts fitted out two vessels for the purpose of forming a settlement in Acadia, and placed them under the command of Samuel Champlain, an experienced navigator and able commander. Champlain sailed from France in April, and in June ascended the St. Lawrence, and laid the foundation of the city of Quebec. These possessions of the French proved the source of innumerable calamities to the English colonies, until the peace of 1763, between France and England.

ernment, and it is said twenty-two attempts were made to assassinate him, but without effect. On a certain day, in 1610, however, as he was riding through the streets of Paris, his coach was obstructed by two wagons. A fanatic named Ravailiac took advantage of this moment to perpetrate a long-meditated deed. He mounted the step of the coach, and plunged a long two-edged knife twice into the heart of Henry, and thus ended the career of the best king France ever had. The benevolent mind of Henry, his paternal love to his subjects, his great achievements, his candor, and sincerity, have preserved his memory in the hearts of the nation, and his royal expression, "I wish that every peasant might have a fowl in his pot on Sundays," still lives in the mouths of the people. Ravailiac, his murderer, was put to death by the most excruciating tortures.

HISTORY
OF
THE UNITED STATES.



SITUATION OF AMERICA IN A.D. 1607.

PERIOD II.

COMPRISES THE EVENTS THAT OCCURRED FROM THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN, 1607, TO THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, 1776.

1. Soon after the London Company had obtained their charter, they sent three ships to America, under the command of Capt. Newport, with one hundred and five persons,

What events are comprised in period second? What was the situation of the country in 1607? What is represented by the cut?

1. What is said of the London Company? For what place did they sail? When and where was the first English settlement made? What was it called, and how long was this after the settlement of Florida by the Spaniards? See page 25, v. 7.

and every thing necessary for establishing a colony. They sailed for Roanoke, but were fortunately driven by a storm into Chesapeake bay. They were so much pleased with the surrounding country, that they determined to settle on the river Powhattan, which they named James river. On the 23d of May, 1607, they landed and began a settlement, and in honor of their sovereign, called it Jamestown.* This was the first permanent English settlement in America.

2. The colonists soon began to experience various calamities, many of which they had not anticipated. Disputes and jealousies arose among their rulers.† They suffered much from want of provisions, disease, and the hostility of the Indians. In less than four months from the time of their landing fifty of their number had perished. Discouraged by these afflictions, they were anxious to return to England.

3. In this state of despondency, one of their number, named John Smith,‡ a very extraordinary man, undertook to manage the affairs of the colony. He established order

2. What did the colonists soon experience? What arose among their rulers? From what causes did they suffer? How soon had fifty of their number perished?

* Jamestown, on James river, thirty-two miles above its mouth. It is now in ruins, and almost desolate. Two or three old houses, the ruins of an old steeple, a churchyard, and faint marks of a rude fortifications, are the only memorials of its former importance.

† The government of the colony was formed in England before it sailed. It was to consist of a president and a council of seven persons. The names of these persons, and the code of laws for the government of the colony, were carefully concealed in a box, and given to Capt. Newport, at the time of sailing, with orders not to open it until twenty-four hours after landing. It was opened on the 24th of May, and found to contain the names of Bartholomew Gosnold, John Smith, Edward Wingfield, Christopher Newport, John Ratcliffe, John Martin, and George Kendall. Mr. Wingfield, an unprincipled, ambitious man, was chosen president, but was soon after deposed for misconduct, and John Ratcliffe chosen in his place.

‡ Capt. John Smith, the father of Virginia, was born at Willoughby, in Lincolnshire, England, in 1579. From his earliest youth he displayed a roving disposition, and was delighted with bold and adventurous feats among his companions. At the age of thirteen he was apprenticed to a merchant, but quit his master in his fifteenth year, and traveled through France, Netherlands, Egypt, and Germany. He afterward entered into the service of the emperor of Austria against the Turks. By his skill, bravery, and exploits, he obtained the command of 250 horsemen. At the siege of Regal, the Turks sent a challenge to the Austrians, stating, that the lord Turbisha, for the diversion of the ladies of the place, would fight any single captain of the Christian troops. Smith accepted the challenge, and meeting his antagonist on horseback, in view of the ladies on the battlements, killed him, and bore away his head in triumph to his general. Crualgo, a friend of Turbisha, upon this sent a particular challenge to Smith. He at once accepted it. They met, and Smith was again the victor; he bore off *his* head in triumph. Smith now sent a message into the town, informing the ladies that if they wished for more sport of a similar kind,

among them, built comfortable houses for them to live in, fortified their little settlement, procured provisions of the natives, and inspired all with confidence. Thus the settlers were able to subsist until they received assistance from England.

4. In 1608, Capt. Newport arrived with 120 new settlers, and a supply of provisions. This was a source of great joy to the little colony. But their prospects were soon overcast; for about this time they discovered in the bed of a small river near Jamestown, a shining substance which they supposed to be gold-dust. A sort of universal phrensy was excited by this discovery. "Immediately," says Smith, "there was no thought, no discourse, no hope, and no work, but to dig gold, wash gold, refine gold, and load gold." Smith used all his influence to convince them of their folly; but to no purpose. A vessel was loaded with this useless commodity, and sent to England. On its arrival there, the cargo was examined, and found to be nothing but mud, filled with small pieces of shining stone.

3. Can you give some account of John Smith? *See note.* What did he do for the colony?

4. Who arrived in 1608? What occurred about this time? What does Smith say? What did the people do? What did it prove to be? Is that all gold which shines or glistens?

they must procure another champion. Bonamalgro soon appeared, and after a short but severe contest, in which Smith nearly lost his life, the huge Turk was slain, and his head was added to the number of the others. He was afterward taken prisoner by the Turks; but by killing his master, he escaped into Russia, and returned to England. He joined the expedition fitted out by the London Company, to make a settlement in America, and was named as one of the council of the colony. On their passage to America, disputes arose among the emigrants, and by his superior talents, Smith excited the envy of the principal persons on board, and he was unjustly confined and kept a close prisoner during the rest of the voyage. After the planting of the colony at Jamestown, he was released from confinement, but excluded from the council. He was afterward tried, and honorably acquitted of all the charges brought against him, and admitted to his seat as a member of the council. After the election of Ratcliffe, the whole weight of the administration devolved on Smith, and all would have perished with hunger, but for his exertions in procuring corn of the Indians. This he obtained, sometimes by purchase, sometimes by caresses, and often by stratagem and force. Unable to procure corn on a certain occasion, he seized the Indian idol Okee, made of skins stuffed with moss; for the redemption of which as much corn was brought to him as he demanded. He often made long excursions into the wilderness for the purpose of exploring the country, and procuring corn of the natives. In one of these, attended only by an Indian guide, he was suddenly surrounded by a numerous body of savages, and after a brave defense, was taken prisoner. His exulting captors conducted him in triumph to Powhattan, the principal chieftain of Virginia. After many ceremonies and consultations, they decided to put him to death. They looked upon him as a man whose courage and abilities

5. In consequence of their neglecting to cultivate the ground, they suffered much, the following winter, from want of provisions, and from disease. Their storehouse was accidentally burned, and they were reduced to great distress. The next year they received a supply of necessities, and seventy new settlers were added to their number; among whom were several persons of distinction.

6. In 1609, the London Company obtained a new charter, granting greater powers and privileges than the former. They soon after sent out nine ships, with nine hundred emigrants, to Virginia. The vessel, on board of which were the officers appointed to govern the colony, was unfortunately driven by a storm upon the Bermuda islands.* The others arrived safely. Most of the persons who came in these were of a vicious character. They at first refused to submit to the authority of Smith, and by this means threw the colony into great confusion. Smith determined, however, that he would be obeyed until the arrival of the officers that were appointed to succeed him. He accordingly seized upon the leaders of the sedition, and put them in prison. By this means order was again restored.

5. How was the colony affected by this conduct? What happened the next year?

6. What took place in 1609? What did they do soon after? What happened to one vessel? Who were on board? What is said of the others? What of Smith?

were particularly dangerous to the safety of the Indians. He was accordingly led forth to execution. His head was placed upon a stone, and a war-club presented to Powhattan, who claimed the honor of being his executioner. As the chief raised the club to give the fatal blow, Pocahontas, his favorite daughter, rushed through the crowd, and clasped the head of Smith in her arms, laid her own upon it, and entreated her father to spare his life. Powhattan was amazed. His heart was touched. He let fall the club, and set Smith at liberty, and soon after had him conducted in safety to Jamestown. Smith was several times chosen president of the council, and by his example and severity he rendered the colonists exceedingly industrious. Several young gentlemen in the colony, indignant that *they* should be compelled to work, often gave vent to their feelings in expressions of impatience and profaneness. Smith caused the number of their oaths to be noted daily, and at night he had as many cans of water poured into the sleeve of each, as he had taken oaths during the day. This discipline had so happy an effect that scarcely an oath was heard in a week, and it perfectly restored the subjects of it to good humor. After many other adventures, Smith died in London, in 1651, in the 52d year of his age. For all his services and sufferings he never received any recompense.

* Bermuda islands, a cluster of small islands in the Atlantic ocean. They are in number about 400, but most of them so small and barren, that they have neither inhabitant nor name. They were first discovered by Juan Bermudas, a Spaniard, in 1522. The air is so healthy that sick people from the United States frequently go



POCAHONTAS HASTENING TO INFORM SMITH OF THE CONSPIRACY.

7. About this time, the Indians, fearing that the white people would become too powerful, concerted a plot to destroy them all. Pocahontas* heard of it, and resolved to save

7. What did the Indians fear? What did they do? How was the colony saved? Can you give some account of the life and character of Pocahontas? *See note.*

thither for the recovery of their health. The winter is hardly perceptible, and the seasons may be said to be perpetual spring. The inhabitants gather two crops of Indian corn in a year, one in July, and the other in December. These islands lie about 500 miles from Cape Fear, in North Carolina. Population about 8000.

* Pocahontas, daughter of Powhattan, a celebrated Indian warrior, in Virginia, was born about 1595. She discovered the warmest friendship for the English who colonized Virginia, and was eminently useful to the settlement. The first remarkable instance of this attachment was displayed in 1608, in preserving the life of Capt. John Smith, as explained in a previous note. From this time she frequently visited the settlements of the whites, to whom she furnished provisions at times when they were particularly needed. In 1612, Pocahontas having incurred the resentment of her father, probably on account of her attachment to the whites, left her home, and visited the territories of Jopazows, chief of the Potomacs. Capt. Argoll, having sailed up the Potomac river, on a trading voyage, prevailed on Jopazows, by the tempting offer of a copper kettle, to surrender her to him. He detained and carried her to Jamestown, presuming that Powhattan would do no hurt to the English while they retained possession of his daughter. But the noble-hearted chief felt indignant at the treachery of the whites, and refused to listen to any terms of peace till Pocahontas was restored. During her detention at Jamestown, Mr. Thomas Rolfe, an Englishman of respectable character, became attached to her, and offered her his hand. It was accepted, and the consent of Powhattan being obtained, the marriage was solemnized with great pomp, in presence of the uncle of Pocahontas, and her two brothers. This event relieved the colony from the enmity of Powhattan, and preserved peace between them for many years. In 1616, she embarked with her husband for England. She was received by the king and queen with the

them. Accordingly, one dark and stormy night, she hastened to Jamestown, and informed Smith of his danger. He immediately took measures to put the colony in a state of defense. The Indians, perceiving that their design was discovered, gave up the project.

8. Soon after, Smith received a severe wound, and returned to England to procure the aid of a surgeon. The most unhappy consequences followed. The Indians perceiving the absence of the man they feared, attacked the colony with united forces. They cut off all supplies, and thus reduced the settlers to the greatest extremity.

9. Such was their wretched condition, that they devoured the skins of their horses, the bodies of the Indians they had killed, and at last the flesh of their dead companions. This period was long remembered by the name of "THE STARVING TIME." In six months their number was reduced from more than five hundred to sixty; and these feeble and dejected. While the colonists were in this situation, the persons who had been wrecked on the Bermudas arrived.

10. All immediately determined to return to England. For this purpose they embarked and sailed down the river. Fortunately, however, they were met by Lord Delaware, who had been appointed governor of Virginia, with supplies of men and provisions. He persuaded them to return to Jamestown, and by a judicious exercise of authority, he restored order and contentment, and for several years the affairs of the colony continued in a prosperous condition.

11. In 1611, Lord Delaware, in consequence of ill health,

8. What is said of Smith soon after? What was the consequence? What did the Indians do?

9. What was the condition of the colony? What was this period called? How much was their number reduced? What happened now?

10. What did they all do? Whom did they meet? What did he do?

11. What took place in 1611? What is said with regard to private property? The effect of this plan?

attention due to her rank. While in London she received a visit from her former friend, Capt. Smith. Her residence among civilized men was destined, however, to be short. While about to embark from Gravesend, with her husband, and an infant son, to return to Virginia, she died at the age of twenty-two. Her son was educated in London, and from him are descended some of the most respectable families in Virginia.

returned to England, and was succeeded by Sir Thomas Dale. Public authority was now rigidly enforced. Hitherto no right of private property in land had been established. The fields that had been cleared were cultivated by the joint labor of the whole, and the produce was deposited in public stores, and shared in common. This plan of proceeding presented but few inducements to industry. The idle and improvident trusted entirely to what was distributed from the common stores.

12. To remedy these evils, Sir Thomas divided a considerable portion of land into lots of three acres each, and granted one of these to each individual, to be his own property. The happy effects of this measure were soon so manifest, that another assignment of fifty acres to each one was made, and the plan of working in a common field was entirely abandoned. From this time the colony rapidly increased and improved. In 1616, they began to cultivate tobacco, a plant which was first found in that soil, and became the great staple of Virginia.

13. Thus far the affairs of the colony had been managed by a governor and council, appointed by the London Company, and from 1611 they had been under martial law, like a garrison of soldiers. But the people had become dissatisfied with this state of things. They longed to enjoy the rights and privileges to which they had been accustomed in their native country. To gratify this noble desire of the colonists, governor Yeardley, in 1619, called a general assembly, consisting of representatives from the several plantations or boroughs. It met at Jamestown on the 19th of June, and was the first legislative assembly ever held in America.

14. The colony hitherto consisted almost entirely of men who came for the purpose of acquiring wealth, and who intended to return again to England. But in order to attach

12. What was done to remedy these evils? The effect of this measure? Tobacco—when first cultivated? Where found?

13. How had the colony been governed thus far? How from 1611? Were the people satisfied? What was done in 1619? What met this year? Where? What is the object of such an assembly? *Ans.* To make laws, and regulate all civil affairs.

14. What was true of the colony hitherto? What was done to attach the men to the soil? The price of a wife?



NINETY GIRLS EXPOSED FOR SALE.

them more to the soil, and to induce them to regard this as their home—the abode of their posterity—in 1620, the company sent over ninety girls, to be disposed of among the young planters for wives. At first, the price of a wife was one hundred pounds of tobacco, but the demand for them increased so much, that it soon rose to one hundred and sixty pounds.

15. The same year, a Dutch vessel arrived at Jamestown with twenty Africans, and offered them for sale as slaves. They were purchased by the people. These were the first slaves brought into the country, and thus was laid the foundation for that system of slavery which now exists in the United States. Emigrants continued to arrive from England, and the settlements were widely extended. The colony was now advancing on the full tide of prosperity. But it was destined soon to experience a sudden and dreadful reverse of fortune.

16. The Indians, though apparently friendly, secretly formed a plan for the total destruction of the English. On

15. When were slaves first introduced? What was thus laid? What do you understand by slavery? The condition of the colony at that time?

16. What is said of the Indians? What did they do? How were some of the settlements saved?

the 22d of May, 1622, the savages burst forth upon the settlements, and murdered the whites without distinction of age or sex. The whole colony would have been cut off, had not a friendly Indian given notice of the plot, in time to put Jamestown, and a few neighboring settlements, on their guard.

17. The English were roused to vengeance by this horrid scene. They attacked the Indians with fire and sword; burnt their wigwams; pursued them from forest to forest; killed multitudes of them, and drove the remainder far into the wilderness. By means of this dreadful calamity, the settlements of the colony were reduced from 80 to 8; and in 1624, out of 9,000 persons, who had been sent from England, only 1,800 were living.

18. These misfortunes and difficulties induced King James, in 1624, to dissolve the London Company, and take the government of the colony into his own hands. He appointed a governor and twelve counselors; yet, in the domestic government of the colony, this produced no immediate change. The popular assemblies were continued and the rights of the people respected. Under the administration of Wyatt and Yeardley the colony prospered and rose in public estimation. In one year a thousand emigrants arrived, and there was an increasing demand for all the products of the soil. But in 1636 the people became so disgusted with the haughty and arbitrary conduct of Sir John Harvey, their governor, that they seized him and sent him prisoner to England.

19. King Charles* was so much displeased with this act

17. What did the English do? How was the colony affected by this calamity?

18. What was done in 1634? To whom was all authority committed? How long did the colonies submit? What did they then do? What did King Charles do?

19. What was done in 1639? Character of Berkley? What was restored? How did this affect the people?

* Charles I. ascended the throne of England in 1625, on the death of his father, James I. The impolitic course that he pursued at the commencement of his reign excited much popular discontent and party prejudice, which resulted in a civil war. The forces of the king were defeated, and he was taken prisoner. Shortly after, he was tried before a self-created court of his subjects, and condemned and executed in 1648. From the death of Charles I. to the elevation of his son Charles II. to the throne in 1660, the government of England was administered by Oliver Cromwell.

of the colonists, that he sent Harvey back, with full power to govern as before. In 1639, however, Sir William Berkley, a man distinguished for the mildness of his temper and gentleness of his manners, was appointed to succeed Harvey in the government of the colony. This gave great satisfaction to the people, and under his wise and judicious administration they enjoyed many years of peace and prosperity.

20. In 1652, Cromwell, who was then at the head of government in England, sent a strong force to compel the governor of Virginia to acknowledge his authority. After a brave resistance, Berkley was obliged to submit. For several years, governors were appointed by Cromwell, and oppressive restrictions were imposed upon the colonists. At length, the people renounced the authority of their oppressors, and again conferred the office of governor upon Berkley, who was still residing in the colony.

21. Soon after this event, news arrived that Cromwell* was dead, and that Charles II.† was on the throne of England. The authority of Berkley was confirmed by the king, but the rights of the people were little regarded. Large tracts of land belonging to the colony were granted to the favorites of Charles. This produced great excitement in Virginia, and resulted in all the horrors of civil war. The

20. Give some account of Cromwell? *See note.* What did he do in 1652? Berkley? What was true for several years? What did the people do?

21. What news arrived soon after? What is said of Berkley? Of the rights of the people? What was done? The effect in Virginia? Who led the opposing party? What did he do?

* Oliver Cromwell, one of the most powerful characters of any age or nation, was born at Huntingdon, England, in 1599. With the sword in one hand and the Bible in the other, he raised the stormy elements of political and religious fanaticism, and ruled them at his will. Brave, cool, and artful, he devised the boldest plans with a quickness equaled only by their execution. No obstacle deterred him; and he was never at a loss for expedients. Calm and reserved, but full of great projects, he patiently waited for the favorable moment, and failed not to make use of it. After the execution of Charles I. he assumed the title of "Protector of the Commonwealth of England." For several years he administered the affairs of the nation with great vigor, success, and ability. He died in 1658. He was admired, feared, and calumniated by his contemporaries, but his character has been more truly appreciated by posterity, and he is now looked upon as one of those wonderful geniuses that the world has seldom seen.

† Charles II. was born in 1630. He was in Holland at the time of the death of his father, Charles I. He was restored to the throne in 1660. He was one of the most hypocritical, licentious, immoral, and profligate kings that ever disgraced the crown of England. He died in 1685, and was succeeded by his brother, James II.

opposing party was swayed by the eloquence of a young and ambitious lawyer, by the name of Nathaniel Bacon. He was elected general, and arrayed himself with 600 armed men against the governor and council.

22. Hostilities continued for several months ; during which, Jamestown was reduced to ashes, and the crops in the fields were laid waste. Troops at length arrived from England, who, on the death of Bacon, which occurred soon after, put an end to the disturbance and restored Berkley to power. Many of the rebels were tried and executed. The assembly, however, soon after interfered, and by wise and salutary laws succeeded in restoring peace and harmony among the colonists.

23. The majority of the people of Virginia were for a long time opposed to slavery ; and laws were passed to prevent it. But the selfish policy of the kings and proprietors in England, encouraged the introduction of slaves, and the evil could not be resisted by the colonists. Virginia, on account of her favorable situation, suffered less from Indian warfare than some of her sister colonies. In 1688, her population had increased to 60,000. Other interesting events which occurred in Virginia will be recorded in the course of the history.

NEW YORK.

1. In 1609, Henry Hudson,* an Englishman in the service of the Dutch East India Company, discovered the Hud-

22. What was the consequence ? What put an end to the disturbance ? What was done to the rebels ? How long did the work of death continue ?

23. What is said of the greater part of the people ? What encouraged slavery ? What else is said of Virginia ? Population in 1688 ? Where will other events be recorded ? How is the state of Virginia bounded ?

* Henry Hudson was an eminent English navigator. He made two voyages to discover a northwest passage to China, in the service of a company of London merchants, but being unsuccessful, in 1609 he went over to Holland, and undertook a third voyage under the patronage of the Dutch East India Company. During this voyage he discovered the Hudson river, and sailed along the coast to the 44° of N. latitude. In 1610, he sailed on his fourth and last voyage. He discovered the large bay in the northern part of America, named after him, Hudson's Bay. Here he spent the winter, and in the spring, being unable to revictual his ship, with tears in



HENRY HUDSON DISCOVERING THE HUDSON RIVER.

son river, and ascended it about 160 miles. In consequence of this discovery, the Dutch laid claim to a large extent of territory on both sides of this river, and called it *New Netherlands*. In 1613, several Dutch merchants erected a fort where Albany now stands, which they named Fort Orange. The next year, they built several trading houses on the island of Manhattan, now called New York, to which they gave the name of *New Amsterdam*.

2. The English regarded the Dutch as intruders, and in the same year, Captain Argal from Virginia, with a fleet of three ships, visited these settlements on the Hudson, demanded a surrender of the fort, and claimed the territory, as

1. When and by whom was the Hudson river discovered? Who laid claim to the territory? When was the first settlement made in New York? What was it then called?

2. From what country did the Dutch come? How did the English regard the Dutch? What did Capt. Argal do? How much territory did the Dutch claim?

his eyes, he distributed his little remaining bread to his men, and prepared to return. Having a dissatisfied and mutinous crew, in his uneasiness and despair, it is said, he used some hard expressions, and threatened to set some of them ashore. Upon which a body of them entered his cabin at night, tied his arms behind him, and put him, with his son, John Hudson, and seven of the most sickly of the crew, into a boat, and set them adrift. They were never more heard of. A small part of the crew, after enduring incredible hardships, arrived the next year in England.

properly constituting a part of Virginia. The number of the Dutch being small, they submitted without resistance. But the next year a new governor arrived from Holland, and the Dutch renounced the authority of the English, and retained possession until 1664. They erected a fort on the Delaware, and one also at the mouth of the Connecticut, and laid claim to all the territory between these rivers.

3. The Dutch were soon molested by the Indians. In 1646, a severe battle was fought at a place called Strickland plain, in which the savages were defeated with great slaughter. At this time, disputes existed between the Dutch and the colonies of New Haven and Connecticut. In 1650, a treaty was made at Hartford, by which the Dutch relinquished their claim to the territory of these colonies, except the small part which they then occupied.

4. In 1655, Stuyvesant,* the Dutch governor, with a fleet of seven ships, attacked and subdued the Swedes, who had settled on the west side of the Delaware river. But the Dutch soon had to encounter again their old enemy, the English. In 1664, Charles II. granted to his brother, the Duke of York and Albany, all New England, and the territory then in the possession of the Dutch. A squadron soon appeared in New York harbor, under the command of Colonel Nichols.

5. The English immediately demanded a surrender of the town, and promised to secure to the inhabitants the rights of life and property. Governor Stuyvesant determined to resist; but at length the inhabitants constrained him to submit. The English took possession Sept. 8, 1664, and in honor of the duke, called the town *New York*. Soon after,

3. What took place in 1646? In 1650?

4. What took place in 1655? In 1664? Who commanded the fleet sent against the Dutch?

5. What demand was made? Was the town surrendered? What name was given to the town of New Amsterdam? What was Fort Orange called? When was New York made a city?

* Peter Stuyvesant was the last Dutch governor of New York. He began his administration in 1647. He was a good soldier, and skillful commander. He remained in the country after its surrender to the English, and at his death was buried in a chapel on his own farm, a few miles from New York.

Fort Orange was taken, and named *Albany*. Nichols now assumed the government of the country, and under his mild and liberal administration, New York, in 1665, was made a city, which is now the grand metropolis of the western world.

6. In 1673, shortly after war was declared between England and Holland, a Dutch fleet arrived at Staten Island, and by the treachery of John Manning, commander of the fort, was permitted to enter the harbor of New York without resistance. The Dutch immediately took possession of the city; but soon the news of peace arrived, and the country was again restored to the English. The Duke of York obtained of his brother, Charles I., a new title of this province, and appointed Sir Edmund Andross governor over all his dominions in America. Sir Edmund's administration was distinguished for nothing but a course of tyranny.

7. The people of the colony, at length, became discontented under the arbitrary regulations imposed upon them; and in 1682, they were first permitted to take part in the government. An assembly, consisting of a council of ten, appointed by the duke, and of eighteen representatives, chosen by the people, met in October, and were allowed to make all the laws of the colony. The laws, however, could not be enforced, until approved by the duke.

8. At this time there were five nations of Indians in the interior of New York, who had united together for mutual defence. With these nations the English formed an alliance. De la Barre, the governor of Canada, being jealous of this union, in 1684, marched with an army of 1,700 men, to subdue these Indians. After suffering much in their march, the French arrived and encamped near them.

9. In addressing the chiefs of the nation, the governor accused them of conspiring with the English against the

6. State what took place in 1673? What do you think of John Manning's conduct? What took place soon after? Who was appointed governor by the Duke of York? For what was his administration distinguished?

7. When was the first assembly held?

8. How many nations of Indians were there in New York at that time? What took place in 1684?

9. Of what did De la Barre accuse the Indians? What was the result? What did the French afterward do?

French; and threatened them with a war of extermination. One of the chiefs replied in a spirit so bold and independent, that the French made peace with the Indians and returned to Canada. A large force was afterward sent against them, but being overpowered by the savages, the French were again defeated in their object. Their attempts only strengthened the hostility of the Indians.

10. The Duke of York, on the death of his brother, Charles II., in 1685, succeeded to the throne of England, under the title of James II.* The king was a Roman Catholic, and exerted his power and influence in favor of promoting that religion in the colony. This was a source of alarm to the inhabitants, and excited their vigilance in behalf of their religion.

11. In 1689, James was dethroned by William, Prince of Orange.† The people of New York now conspired against their oppressive magistrates. Jacob Leisler displayed so much zeal in the cause, that about 500 militia joined him in opposing the government. The chief magistrate having left the colony, Leisler, by the favor of his party, was immediately made governor. He now addressed King William by letter, acknowledging his authority, and professing firm allegiance to his government.

12. Not long after this, a letter was received from England, conferring the authority of government "upon such as might at that time be in power." Leisler now assumed not only the authority but the title of lieutenant-governor. Many

10. What happened in 1685?

11, 12. What in 1689? What did Jacob Leisler do?

* James II. succeeded his brother, Charles II., in 1685. His valor, clemency, and liberality had endeared him to the English nation; but the virtues of the private man unfortunately disappeared in the king. He had no sooner ascended the throne than he became arbitrary, cruel, and oppressive. He was a papist, and in his zeal to establish the Roman Catholic religion, he paid no regard to the opinions, prejudices, or rights of his subjects. The nation became dissatisfied, and invited William, Prince of Orange, who had married the king's daughter, to the throne. He immediately invaded the kingdom, and James, terrified at the success of his enemy, and the ingratitude of his courtiers, fled to France in 1688, where he died in 1701.

† William III. was born in Holland, in 1650. In 1672, he was elected stadtholder, and named general of the Dutch forces. In consequence of the unpopular and arbitrary measures of his father-in-law, James II., he succeeded in gaining possession of the English throne, and was acknowledged king of England in 1689, under the title of William III. He died in 1702, and was succeeded by Anne, daughter of James II. William was great as a politician, and formidable as a general.



DESTRUCTION OF SCHENECTADY IN N. Y.

of the former magistrates, despising Leisler, and envious of his power, repaired to Albany, and raised a party to oppose his authority. Leisler sent Milborne, his son-in-law and counselor, with an army to enforce his authority at Albany. The attempt was successful. He broke up the party, and seized the property of their leaders.

13. In 1690, during the war between England and France, the French of Canada conspired with certain tribes of Indians, for the destruction of the English settlements. On the 18th of February, a party attacked and destroyed the town of Schenectady. Unaware of their danger, the inhabitants had retired to rest. At 11 o'clock the savages entered the town. Every house was soon surrounded, and a horrid yell broke the stillness of the night. The inhabitants sprang from their beds, found their dwellings in flames, and their doors guarded by the savage foe. Many, to escape from the fire, rushed forth half naked and unarmed, and were immediately cut down by the enemy. Women and children perished in the flames, or were butchered before their husbands and fathers, who were in the hands of the Indians.

13. What happened in 1690? Describe the attack upon Schenectady?

14. Some escaped; but, naked and exposed to a terrible storm, many of them perished before they could reach Albany, their nearest place of refuge. In this cruel assault, sixty were killed, twenty-seven made prisoners, and twenty-five lost their hands and feet by the cold. These and other savage cruelties led the English colonists to combine their forces against Canada. Sir William Phips,* with a large fleet, sailed up the St. Lawrence; and an army proceeded from New York by land, as far as Lake Champlain. But owing to some mismanagement, this expedition entirely failed of success.

15. In 1691, King William appointed Colonel Henry Sloughter governor of New York. At this time, the colony needed a magistrate of talents and energy. Sloughter had neither. He was weak and vicious. Leisler disputed his authority; but after several vain attempts to maintain his own power, he, with Melborne, were taken and condemned for high treason.

16. Sloughter at first refused to execute the sentence of the court; but at a feast, in a fit of intoxication, he was induced to sign the death-warrant, and they were executed. Their estates were afterward restored to their families, and their bodies were taken up by their party and buried with

14. How many were killed, taken prisoners, and lost their limbs by the cold? What led the English to combine their forces against Canada? What was the result of these expeditions?

15. Who was appointed governor in 1691? What was Sloughter's character? What was the conduct of Leisler? What ought he to have done?

16. How were Leisler and Milborne treated? Ought they to have been executed? What was afterward done by their party?

* Sir William Phips, governor of Massachusetts, was born at Perroquid, now Bristol, Maine, in 1651. His father was a gunsmith, in humble circumstances, and his mother had twenty-six children, of whom twenty-one were sons. After living in the wilderness till he was 18 years of age, he spent four years in learning the trade of a ship carpenter; at the expiration of which time he went to Boston, and learned to read and write. Determining to seek his fortune upon the sea, in 1683 he sailed in search of a Spanish vessel which had been wrecked near the Bahama islands. After a variety of adventures, he discovered it, and fished up gold, silver, pearls, and jewels, to the value of three hundred thousand pounds sterling; his own share of which amounted only to 16,000*l*. He was, at this time, made a knight by King James II., and appointed high sheriff of New England. He died in England, in 1695. He was a blunt, honest man, ardent in every thing he undertook, open-hearted and generous, but rude in speech and manners. He ever exerted himself to promote the interests of New England,

great pomp, in the old Dutch church, in the city of New-York.

17. Sloughter died in 1691. He was succeeded the next year by Colonel Fletcher. Fletcher desired to promote among the Dutch inhabitants the use of the English language, and the interests of the English church. These objects he recommended to the attention of the assembly. After much difficulty, a bill was passed encouraging education in the colony, and providing for the support of ministers of the gospel, who were to be chosen by the people.

18. In 1698, the Earl of Bellamont was made governor of the colony. At this time the American seas were infested with pirates. The earl proposed to send out a naval force against them; but the assembly rejected the proposal. He then fitted out a private vessel, under the command of Captain Kidd,* who afterward became a notorious pirate.

19. Bellamont was succeeded, in 1702, by Lord Cornbury, son of the celebrated Earl of Clarendon. In his private character, Cornbury was vicious and contemptible; as a magistrate, he was tyrannical and prodigal of the people's money. Disgusted with his profligacy, and wearied with his oppressions, the people made complaint to Queen Anne,†

17. Who succeeded Sloughter? What did Fletcher desire to do?

18. Who was appointed governor in 1698? With what were the American seas infested? What did he propose to the assembly to do? What did he do? What is a pirate? *Ans.* A robber on the seas.

19. Who succeeded Bellamont? What was the character of Lord Cornbury? To whom did the people make complaint against Cornbury? What was the consequence?

* Capt. Kidd was a brave seaman and an able commander. Gov. Bellamont being determined to clear the American seas of pirates, fitted out a vessel, and gave the command of it to Kidd. But after he had been out upon the ocean a few days, Kidd determined to become a pirate himself. He proposed the plan to his men, and they consented to it. Accordingly he went forth, and attacked and destroyed many vessels upon the Atlantic and Indian oceans, and became one of the most famous pirates that was ever known. After three years he returned, burned his ship, and went to Boston, foolishly imagining that no one would know him. As he was walking the streets he was recognized, seized, and soon after sent to England, where he was tried for piracy, condemned, and executed. A great many stories have been told about Captain Kidd—how he buried pots and chests of gold along the coast, and hid vast treasures of silver. Many weak-minded persons have made a great many attempts to find this gold and silver, but without success. He and his men found ways enough to spend the money they took, without burying it. If you and I never have more money than Kidd buried, we shall have no trouble in taking care of it.

† Anne, daughter of James II., succeeded William III. as queen of England, in

who was now on the throne of England. Cornbury was removed from office, and soon after seized by his creditors and thrown into prison.

20. In 1710, the queen appointed General Hunter governor of the colony. This year many Germans arrived and settled in New York. During Hunter's administration another attempt was made for the subjugation of Canada. An army of 4,000 men left Albany, and marched against Montreal. A large fleet proceeded up the St. Lawrence, but meeting with a violent storm, many of the ships were dashed upon the rocks, and the remainder returned to England. When this was made known to the army, the troops were disheartened, and the enterprise was abandoned.

21. In 1719, Hunter left the colony in a state of perfect harmony, and returned to Europe. His office was conferred upon William Burnet, son of the celebrated Bishop Burnet. At this time the French were erecting forts along the lakes and rivers, from Canada to the gulf of Mexico. Their policy in this was, to cut off the fur trade of the English, and secure it all to themselves. Burnet endeavored to defeat their object, by building a fort at Oswego. He watched all the movements of the Indians, and sought to prevent their union with the French.

22. After Burnet, the government of the colony devolved successively upon Colonel Montgomery, Rip Van Dam, and William Crosby. The latter arrived at New York in 1732. During his administration a prosecution was commenced,

20. Whom did Queen Anne appoint in 1710? What was the result of the expedition to Canada, during Hunter's administration?

21. When and in what state did Hunter leave the colony? Who succeeded him?

22. Upon whom did the government devolve after Burnet? What took place during Crosby's administration?

1702. In 1683, she married Prince George, brother to Christian V. of Denmark. Her talents were but moderate, but her reign forms a brilliant epoch in the English history, from the victories of Marlborough. Under her administration, England and Scotland were united under the name of Great Britain. She possessed the peculiar felicity of having for her ministers the ablest statesmen that ever lived; and among her subjects, the most learned, sublime, and eloquent writers in the walks of poetry, science, and general literature; and therefore with truth her reign has been denominated the Augustan age of England. She died in 1714, and was succeeded by George I.

through his influence, against the editor of a newspaper, for publishing an offensive article. After a noble defense by Andrew Hamilton, the editor was acquitted, and Hamilton was greatly applauded by the citizens, who desired the entire liberty of the press.

23. After the death of Crosby, in 1736, George Clark was appointed lieutenant-governor. For many years a severe contest had existed between the governor and the house of representatives. The governor wished to have the control of the public money, and make such appropriations as he saw fit. On the other hand, the house contended that no money should be expended for any object which they did not approve. During Clark's administration the contest was maintained on both sides with a good deal of spirit, but the representatives prevailed.

24. At this time there were many negroes in the city of New York. Fires occurred frequently, and suspicion was excited against them. Some of them were detected in setting fire to buildings. It was now reported that they had formed a plot to burn the city, and intended to appoint a governor from their own number.

25. The people were terrified. About thirty negroes were seized and put to death. Two white men were tried and executed. When the alarm was over, the people began to reflect upon the character of the witnesses and their testimony. None of them were respectable; and the evidence of a plot had all vanished. Terror and prejudice had led these magistrates to a course of manifest cruelty and injustice.

26. In 1743, George Clinton, a man of eminent talents,

23. Who succeeded Crosby? What contest had existed? What was the result?

24. What occurred frequently in New York at that time? Who were detected in setting fire to buildings? What was reported?

25. How many negroes were taken and put to death? Do you think they were justly put to death? Why?

26. Who was appointed governor in 1743? What was projected during Clinton's administration? Why? How many years since the Hudson river was discovered? What other name is often applied to this river now? *Ans.* North river. How many cities and large towns can you mention in the State of New York? How is the State bounded?

was appointed governor. He soon secured the love and confidence of the people, and united their energies against the French and Indians. The frequent depredations of the enemy upon the English settlements led to the project of another expedition against Canada ; but before the plan was carried into operation, peace was restored. For several years New York continued to enjoy uninterrupted prosperity.

MASSACHUSETTS.

1. The Plymouth Company, soon after its incorporation, in 1606, sent out a ship to make discoveries within the limits of its grant. This ship was taken by the Spaniards. In 1607, they sent out another vessel,* with one hundred persons, for the purpose of establishing a colony at the mouth of the Kennebec river, in Maine. Discouraged by the dreary appearance of the country, fifty-five returned in the ship that brought them over. The remainder suffered so much during the winter, from hunger and cold, that they all returned the next year to England, in a vessel that came to bring them provisions. The company, disappointed and disheartened, for several years made no further attempts to effect a settlement.

2. In 1614, Capt. John Smith, in the service of the Plymouth Company, explored the coast from Penobscot river to Cape Cod. He drew a map of his discoveries, and, on his return, presented it to Prince Charles, who was so much pleased with Smith's glowing descriptions of the country, that he gave it the name of New England. In 1615, Smith attempted to plant a colony on this part of the coast, but was unsuccessful ; and all subsequent attempts to form a settlement failed, until the arduous business was undertaken by

1. What two companies were incorporated in 1606 ? What did the Plymouth Company do the same year ? Where did they attempt to form a settlement ? What was the result ?

2. What was done in 1614 ? Was this the same Capt. Smith that acted so conspicuous a part in the settlement of Virginia ? *Ans.* It was. By whom was New England named ?

men who were influenced by higher motives than the love of gain or of perilous adventure.

3. The first settlers of New England were called Puritans,* in derision of their peculiar opinions in matters of religion. To escape from persecution, they left the land of



LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

their fathers, and, after a long and stormy voyage, arrived at Cape Cod, Nov. 19th, 1620. After exploring the country

3. Who commenced the first permanent settlement in New England? What can you tell me respecting the Puritans? When and where did they commence their settlement? In what direction from us is Plymouth? How many years since Plymouth was settled?

* In the reign of Elizabeth, queen of England, the Protestants, or those opposed to the Roman Catholics, were divided into two parties. One party were in favor of adhering to the liturgy, the form of worship that had been established in the time of Edward VI. This was much the more numerous party. The other party wished to introduce a simpler, and, as they considered it, a purer form of worship and church government. These last, by way of derision, were called Puritans. The name was also applied afterward to all who were remarkably strict in their morals or severe in their manners. During the whole reign of Elizabeth they were treated with great rigor and cruelty; and in the reign of James I. they were so much persecuted and oppressed, that great numbers of them left the kingdom in 1609, and retired to Holland. After residing there several years, they resolved to leave the country, and seek an asylum in the wilderness of America, where they might worship God agreeably to the dictates of their own consciences. In 1620, many of them passed over to England, and on the 5th of August set sail for America, in the ship called the May-Flower. They arrived at Cape Cod November 19th, as stated above.

for several weeks, they fixed upon a spot which they called Plymouth, and there commenced, on the 21st of December, 1620, the first permanent settlement in New England.

4. This colony, consisting of 101 persons, landed amid all the perils and privations of a barren shore, in the heart of winter. At this gloomy season they began to erect their buildings to shelter their wives and their little ones from the piercing cold. Feeling the need of some form of civil government among themselves, forty-one of their number, before they landed, solemnly adopted a constitution, and elected John Carver first governor of the colony. Miles Standish* was soon after appointed commander-in-chief of the military.

5. At first the colony was not molested by the Indians. Massasoit, the great sachem or chief of the country, was induced, after much hesitation, to enter the village, and after eating and drinking with the governor, made a treaty of friendship with the English, which was faithfully observed for more than fifty years.

6. The long voyage of the colonists, the severity of the winter, and their numerous privations, brought disease and death among them, which carried off nearly half of their number before the return of spring. But the spirit of persecution in England induced many others to quit their homes and join the infant colony. In the year 1628, John Endi-

4. What did the first settlers do before they landed?

5. What Indian chief formed a treaty with the people of Plymouth? How long was this treaty observed? Of what tribe was Massasoit the chief? *Ans.* Of the Pocanokets, or Wampanoags.

6. Of how many persons did the colony consist? How many of these died during the winter? Who arrived in 1628? Where did they commence a settlement? What was this colony called?

* Miles Standish was born in England, 1584. He served some time in the army in the Netherlands, before he came to America. He was one of the most resolute and daring men of the colony, and in every hazardous enterprise he was foremost. He feared no danger, and regarded the Indians as little as did Samson the men of Askalon. On a certain occasion, one of the colony at Weymouth stole some corn from the savages. The whites, to give them satisfaction, pretended to hang the thief, but, in his stead, hung a poor, decrepit old man. The Indians were exasperated by this base conduct, and threatened vengeance. Standish, with eight men, was sent to protect the whites. He went among them under pretense of trade, and on a certain occasion, being surrounded by a large number of Indians, he seized Pecksuot, a bold chief, snatched his knife from him, and killed him with it, and put to death five others, without losing a man. The savages were filled with consternation, and sought no further satisfaction for their stolen corn! Standish died in 1656.

cott, with about three hundred others, were sent over to prepare the way for another colony. They began a settlement, which they called Salem. This colony received the name of *Massachusetts*, so called from an Indian tribe of this name in that vicinity.

7. The next year their colony was incorporated, under the title of the "Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay in New England." This circumstance greatly increased the spirit of emigration. In 1630, about fifteen hundred people arrived at the colonies. Among them came Governor Winthrop, with other officers, and many gentlemen of wealth and distinction, who brought over the charter of the colony. They founded the town of Boston. Among the towns earliest settled in this vicinity were Charlestown, Dorchester, Watertown, Roxbury, Medford, and Cambridge.

8. Boston soon became the chief town in the colony, and the first general court of Massachusetts was held there, on the 19th of October, 1630. The settlers now endured great hardships from hunger and cold, and great numbers died the first winter. They had few or no accommodations. Their place of public worship was under a large tree. For several years following the colony rapidly increased, and the settlements were greatly multiplied. The Massachusetts colonists, in wealth and education, were superior to the settlers of Plymouth; in other respects they were similar.

9. The colonists of Massachusetts, according to their charter, were to assemble four times a year for the election of officers, and for the enactment of laws. But in 1634, it being inconvenient for them all to assemble, it was agreed by general consent that the power of making laws should be transferred to a representative body, composed of dele-

7. Under what name were they incorporated in 1629? When was Boston founded? What towns were settled soon after?

8. When and where was the first general court of Massachusetts held? How did the colonists of Massachusetts compare with those of Plymouth? Were the colonists of Massachusetts Puritans? *Ans.* They were. When the colony was first settled, did all the people assemble to make laws? How many times in a year? Do all the people of this state meet together to make laws?

9. When was the power of making laws transferred from the whole body of the people to the representatives? What distinguished man was banished from the colony?

gates sent from each of the plantations. Near the close of the year 1635, Roger Williams,* the minister of Salem, having advanced opinions which gave offense, was banished from the colony. In 1636, he founded the town of Providence, in Rhode Island.

10. In 1635, a large number of emigrants arrived in Massachusetts, among whom was Henry Vane.† By his engaging deportment he won the hearts of the people, and the year following was made governor of the colony. But his popularity was of short continuance.

11. About this time Ann Hutchinson,‡ a woman of considerable talent, but of more enthusiasm, inculcated opinions which involved the whole colony in contentions. She soon gained great influence, and was supported by Mr. Cotton of Boston, Governor Vane, and others of the first respectability. But at the next election, Winthrop, instead of Vane, was chosen governor. Vane, being disappointed, returned to England, and afterward became distinguished in the civil wars of that country.

12. The settlements in Massachusetts were now so highly esteemed in England, that many distinguished persons, de-

10. Who arrived in 1635? What can you relate of Henry Vane?

11. What can you say of Ann Hutchinson?

12. What distinguished men were prevented from coming to Massachusetts?

* Williams left Salem in January, 1636, in the midst of a severe, cold, and stormy winter. For fourteen weeks he wandered in the wilderness, often without food or shelter. But he was not without friends. The same scrupulous respect for the rights of others, which had led him to defend the freedom of conscience, had made him also the champion of the Indians. He had studied their language, been their guest; and now, when he came in winter, an exile, to their cabins, he was welcomed with warm hearts by the Pokanokets and Narragansets. He first began to build and plant at Seekonk; but being informed by Gov. Winthrop that he was within the limits of Plymouth, with five companions, in the month of June, he embarked in a frail canoe, sailed down the Narraganset river to Moshaseeck, where he landed, and began a settlement, which he named Providence. See Rhode Island.

† Sir Henry Vane was born in 1612. He early exhibited talents of the first order; but was of an uneasy, restless, and enthusiastic turn of mind. After his return from America, he took an active part in the civil wars of England, and was unjustly beheaded in 1662. He possessed almost all the knowledge of that age, and as a politician and statesman he had but few equals.

‡ Ann Hutchinson, a religious enthusiast. She arrived from England in 1636. Soon after her arrival she instituted meetings for women, in which she pretended to enjoy immediate revelations from heaven. She inculcated many erroneous sentiments, and soon threw the whole colony into a flame. She was banished, and removed to a Dutch settlement in New York, where, in 1643, she and her family, consisting of fifteen persons, were taken and killed by the Indians.

siring to enjoy a greater degree of civil and religious liberty, determined to leave their native shores. Among them, it is said, were Oliver Cromwell and John Hampden,* who, when about to sail, were expressly detained by order of King Charles I.

13. The Indians, now feeling that the whites or themselves must soon be exterminated, began to show their hostility. At this time the Pequots and the Narragansets, two powerful and warlike tribes, were living within the limits of Connecticut and Rhode Island. Between these two tribes there existed the greatest enmity. The Pequots proposed that all animosities should now be laid aside, and their forces united against the whites. But the Narragansets, instead of agreeing to this proposal, made a treaty of friendship with the English, and heartily joined with them in a war against the Pequot tribe.

14. In 1637, the colonies of Massachusetts, Plymouth, and Connecticut, sensible of their danger, combined their forces for the utter extermination of these savage enemies. Captain Mason,† with about ninety whites and three hundred

13. How did some of the Indian tribes begin to feel respecting the whites? What did the Pequots propose to the Narragansets? Was this a wise proposition? What did the Narragansets do?

14. What did the colonists of Massachusetts, Plymouth, and Connecticut do in 1637?

* John Hampden was born in London, in 1594. He was educated at the University of Oxford, and in 1626 obtained a seat in parliament, and soon grew to be one of the most popular men in the nation. He was a uniform opposer of arbitrary practices, in church and state; ever the fearless defender of the rights of man. Believing it wrong for the king to levy ship-money, he refused to pay it, was prosecuted, and alone withstood the royal prosecution. Aided by counsel, he argued the case twelve days before the Court of Exchequer; and although eight of the twelve judges decided against him, the victory, as far as regarded public opinion, was his. From this time he was called the "Patriot Hampden," and took a prominent part in the great contest between the king and the parliament. When the appeal was made to arms, he was the first to enter the field. In a skirmish with the royal forces, he was wounded by the bursting of a pistol in his hand, and died June 24th, 1643. It is said of him, "he had a head to contrive, a tongue to persuade, and a hand to execute." The arbitrary act of the king, detaining Cromwell and Hampden, was a fatal error; for it was owing mainly to the exertions of these men that he was at length deprived of his crown, and finally brought to the scaffold.

† John Mason was born in England about 1600. He was bred to arms, and was a brave soldier and skillful commander. He was one of the first settlers at Windsor, Connecticut, in 1633. He was particularly distinguished in the Pequot war, and passed through many perilous adventures. Mason held the same reputation for military talents in Connecticut, that Miles Standish did in the Plymouth colony. Both rendered the most important service to their country. Mason died in Norwich, Conn., 1672.

friendly Indians, was sent out against them. He attacked one of their largest villages, and, after a severe contest, took their fort, set fire to their wigwams, surrounded the town, and shot many of the Indians in their attempts to escape. Of the Indians, about five hundred were killed, but only two of the English.

15. Soon after, a decisive battle was fought in a swamp near New Haven, where the whole tribe had assembled. The swamp was surrounded by the whites, who, after a hot battle, gained a complete victory. Many of the Pequots



BATTLE BETWEEN THE ENGLISH AND PEQUOTS.

were killed, many were taken prisoners, and the remainder of the tribe fled westward and joined the Mohawks. This battle terminated the war. The English were not again molested by the Indians for nearly forty years.

16. It was now ten years since the first settlement of Salem. About 21,000 persons had already arrived in Massachusetts. But a change had taken place in England. The arm of persecution was broken. The Puritans had

15. What was the result of the war?

16. How many persons arrived in the Massachusetts colony during the first ten years of its settlement? What cause put a stop to emigration?

gained the ascendancy, and many, leaving the colonies, returned to England. Notwithstanding this check to the spirit of emigration, the colonies continued to increase with amazing rapidity in wealth and importance.

17. Education was not forgotten. Mental and moral improvement were considered of the first importance, the best safeguards of the commonwealth. Hence measures were early taken by the settlers to provide for the instruction of the young. In 1636 the General Court appropriated £400 to found a public school or college, and the next year located it at Newtown, now Cambridge. In 1638, John Harvard, an English divine, at his death, in Charlestown, bequeathed to the institution about £800, and a valuable library. In token of respect for this liberal bequest, the school was named by the General Court "Harvard College." In 1639, the first printing-press in America was established at Cambridge. The first things printed were the freeman's oath, an almanac, and a new version of the Psalms.

18. In 1643, the colonies of Plymouth, Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New Haven, joined in a confederacy for mutual advice and protection. They were leagued under the title of "*The United Colonies of New England.*" Commissioners met twice a year alternately at Hartford, New Haven, Plymouth, and Boston, to provide for the interests of the confederated colonies. They were thus united for more than forty years. Rhode Island desired to join the confederacy, but Plymouth would not give her consent, because Rhode Island refused to be incorporated with the Plymouth colony.

19. In 1641, the people of New Hampshire placed themselves under the jurisdiction of Massachusetts. And in 1652, the province of Maine also came under her protection. This province was first granted to Sir Ferdinand Gorges, in 1634.

17. When was Harvard College founded? When was the first printing done in America? What were the first things printed? How many years since? How long after the settlement of Plymouth was Harvard College founded? Where is Cambridge? *Ans.* Three miles N. W. of Boston.

18. What took place in 1643? How long united?

19. What took place in 1641? In 1652? To whom was the province of Maine first granted?

He established a government over it, which in 1649 had lost its authority; and as Massachusetts claimed the province, as being comprised under her charter, the inhabitants submitted to her jurisdiction.

20. We have seen that persecution was the grand fault of that age. The Puritans themselves had been driven from home, on account of their religious peculiarities; yet we soon find them cruelly persecuting others who differed from them in matters of religion. About the year 1650, three Baptists came into Massachusetts from Rhode Island, and having assembled one Sabbath morning to worship, they were taken by the public officers and carried to the congregational church, and there kept till the close of service. Soon after this they were tried, and sentenced to pay a heavy fine, or be publicly whipped. Mr. Holmes, one of the three, refusing to pay the fine, was punished according to the sentence. The friends of one paid his fine, and the other was released.

21. In 1656, a number of Quakers arrived in Massachusetts. Their sentiments, not agreeing with those of the Puritans, excited a spirit of persecution, and a law was passed, banishing all Quakers from the colony, and imposing the penalty of death upon any who should remain after banishment. Four persons, who had been banished, returned, and were condemned and executed. They died in triumph, rejoicing in the opportunity they had of evincing the sincerity of their faith.

22. These cruel measures excited the pity of the people, led some to defend the cause of the Quakers, and finally to embrace their sentiments. The Puritans at length discovered their error, and repealed their cruel laws. In that age of bigotry, the wisest of men had not discovered that—**ALL MEN HAVE A RIGHT TO WORSHIP GOD AS THEY PLEASE.**

23. In 1660, a short time before Charles the Second was

20. What was the grand fault of that age? What took place about 1650?

21. What in 1656? What law was passed? How many were executed? Do you think the Puritans acted wisely in persecuting those who differed from them in their religious opinions?

22. What effect did these persecutions have on the people?

23. What distinguished individuals arrived in New England about this time? What can you say of them?

recalled from exile and placed upon the throne of England, Goffe* and Whalley, two of the judges who had condemned his father, Charles I., to be beheaded, arrived in Massachusetts. Their talents and virtues secured to them the respect of all; and their republican sentiments gave them favor with the lovers of liberty. Various attempts were made by King Charles to arrest these men, but in vain. They lived in seclusion, and died in peace at a good old age. Their monuments may now be seen in New Haven.

24. The government of England now began to look with jealousy upon the growing spirit of republicanism in the colonies. In 1663, laws were passed which confined all the trade of commerce, between Europe and the colonies, to English vessels. Against these restrictions the colonists made frequent complaints, but without effect. In 1664, the king sent over four commissioners to examine into the state of the colonies. They exercised their authority in Plymouth and Rhode Island; but their decisions were little regarded.

25. In Massachusetts their authority was promptly rejected. In New Hampshire they attempted to excite the people against the jurisdiction of Massachusetts; but their counsel was not regarded. They made the same attempts in Maine. In Connecticut, the commissioners were received

24. How did the government of England begin to regard the colonies? What was done in 1663? In 1664? Where did these commissioners exercise their authority?

25. What may these laws, and the acts of the commissioners, be considered as?

* William Goffe, one of the regicides, was a major-general under Cromwell. He left England in company with General Whalley, and arrived in Boston in June, 1660. They were kindly received by Gov. Endicott and the principal inhabitants, and resided at Cambridge until February, 1661, when learning that Charles II. was making efforts to have them arrested, they removed to New Haven, and were concealed by the inhabitants. Fearful of being discovered, they resided for some time on West Rock, near New Haven. In 1664, they removed to Hadley, Massachusetts, and remained concealed fifteen or sixteen years in the house of Mr. Russell, the minister in that place. When the Indians attacked that town in 1675, and threw the inhabitants, who were assembled for public worship, into the utmost confusion, suddenly there appeared among them a man of venerable aspect, white with age, and clothed in an unusual dress. He put himself at their head, and with a firm voice, and an example of undaunted resolution, led them to the conflict, and totally routed the savages. Scarcely was the battle ended, when the stranger disappeared. No one knew whence he had come, nor whither he had gone; and the people actually regarded him as an angel sent by Heaven for their deliverance. Their leader was Goffe. He died at Hadley, about 1679. See "National Preceptor," p. 22.

with respect and compliance. For these marks of her loyalty she afterward received the approbation of the British government. The laws restricting navigation, and the authority assumed by these commissioners from the king, may be considered as the commencement of those aggressions upon the rights of the colonists which led on to the revolution.

26. Fifty years had now passed since the whites first landed at Plymouth. About 120,000 Europeans peopled the shores. The natives at first regarded the English as their friends, and sold to them their extensive lands without fear or suspicion. But now, seeing their own number daily diminishing, and the whites daily increasing, they began to apprehend their own entire extermination.

27. Their patriotism and love of life now roused all these savage tribes to one mighty effort. They were ready to unite and strike the last fatal blow against the whites. Philip,* the sachem of the Wampanoags, was eminently qualified to concert their plans and combine their energies for this great undertaking. Fired with hatred and revenge, he persuaded all the Indian tribes in New England to unite in a war of extermination against their white invaders. His confederacy could bring into the field about 4,000 warriors.

28. The whites now began to perceive the designs of the Indians. Their hostility was daily manifested; and in June, 1675, they attacked the town of Swanzeey, killed many of its inhabitants, and plundered and set fire to their houses.

26. If the Indians could have foreseen what effect the settlement of the whites would have had on them and the country, how do you suppose they would have received them at first? How did the Indians regard the English at first? Did they adopt the arts of civilized life? Why not? Have the Indians always preferred their own savage customs and modes of living, to the comforts and blessings of civilized life? What did they now begin to fear?

27. For what purpose did they now unite? Who was the leader of this grand confederacy?

28. When were the first acts of hostility committed?

* Philip was the youngest son of Massasoit. He was a brave and artful warrior. Foreseeing the loss of his territory, and extinction of his tribe, if the English were permitted to increase without interruption, he lighted up the flame of war in various parts of the country. He was killed in 1676. Mr. Elliot once preached before him, when he took hold of a button of the good man's coat, and said to him, "I do not value the gospel any more than that."

The troops of the colony soon appeared ; but the enemy had fled, setting fire to every building they passed, butchering the whites, and fixing their heads upon poles by the side of the road. The troops pursued, but could not overtake them.

29. The whole country was now roused to arms. Philip, perceiving the augmented forces of the enemy, left his post at Mount Hope, and stationed his troops at Pocasset, now called Tiverton. Here the English attacked him ; but were defeated with the loss of sixteen men. The Narragansets being now leagued with Philip, the English marched directly into their country, and forced them into a treaty of perpetual peace. This treaty, however, was violated as soon as the whites retired.



INDIANS LYING IN WAIT FOR THE WHITES.

30. The colonists now labored under every possible disadvantage. Their settlements were surrounded with thick forests. Indians were living promiscuously among them, professing to be friendly, but proving to be enemies. They were exposed, at every turn, to the shot of their foes. The

29. Where was the first battle fought in this war? What did the English do to the Narragansets?

Indians could rush forth from the woods, plunder and destroy a village, butchering the inhabitants, young and old, and escape to their ambush, before any force could be collected to oppose them.

31. Watching all the movements of the whites, these savages could fall upon them in the most favorable circumstances. The war was so general, that the colonists could not unite their forces at any one point, without exposing their towns, their wives, and their children, to immediate destruction.

32. The commissioners of the united colonies now perceiving that the Indians had conspired to exterminate the whites, declared the war to be just and necessary, and ordered that 2,000 men should be raised to oppose the enemy. The Narragansets being the nearest and most dangerous tribe, the colonists, under the command of Mr. Winslow, governor of Plymouth, marched into their country, and pursued them through a deep snow, to their stronghold in the midst of a thick swamp.

33. Their fortress was built on an island, and surrounded by a thick brush-fence, a rod wide. It had but one narrow entrance, and that well defended. The whites determined to force this passage. The Indians fought bravely; but after a bloody contest the whites entered, set fire to the fort, consuming about 600 wigwams, their old men, women, and children. About 230 of the colonists were killed or wounded, while the loss of the Indians was at least 1,000 slain.

34. During the winter, the Indians destroyed many towns, and massacred great numbers of the defenceless whites. In the spring, the people of Connecticut successfully invaded the country of the Narragansets, took their chief sachem, and delivered him up to the Mohegans, who, being friendly to the whites, put him to death.

30, 31. Were the whites well situated for a war with the Indians? Why not?

32, 33. How large a force did the English raise? Under whose command were the colonists placed? Describe their attack upon the Narragansets.

34. What took place during the winter? What in the spring?

35. Philip had now collected a band of his scattered forces, and returned to his old station at Mount Hope. About the first of August, Captain Church* attacked him, took his wife and children prisoners, and killed about 130 of his men. On this occasion, Philip wept bitterly for the loss of his family, and exhibited the noblest feelings of human nature. One of his own men proposed to him to submit to the whites. Philip instantly shot him dead on the spot. A brother of this Indian, enraged at Philip, deserted his ranks, and joined the colonists. This man, in a battle



DEATH OF PHILIP.

shortly after, shot Philip, in revenge of his brother's death. Thus fell this noble Indian warrior. This event put an end to the war. The Indians now fled, or sued for peace.

36. Peace, indeed, was the ardent desire of all. The colonists had suffered every sort of calamity. The survivors

35. How was Philip affected at the loss of his family? By whom was he killed? Why?

36. Describe the state of the colonists at the close of Philip's war.

* Benjamin Church was born at Duxbury, Mass., in 1639. He was distinguished by his exploits in the Indian wars. He was a man of undaunted courage. His name was a terror to the Indians. Though his life was often exposed to the greatest dangers, he always escaped with little or no injury. He died in 1718.

were all in mourning for the dead. The brave soldier returned, to find his house burned down and his family murdered. The loss of life and of property had greatly weakened the colonies. By the war, they had also incurred a heavy debt. During all these calamities they had never asked any assistance from the mother country.

37. Soon after the close of this war, the heirs of Gorges urged against Massachusetts their claims to the territory of the province of Maine. To satisfy these claims, Massachusetts paid the sum of £1250. In 1680, New Hampshire was separated from Massachusetts, and became a distinct colony.

38. The government of England, dissatisfied with the state of affairs in the colonies, sent over Edward Randolph to secure the enforcement of the obnoxious laws relating to commerce. He brought a message from the king, desiring the colonial governments to send agents to England, authorized to act with full power in behalf of the colonies.

39. The people of Massachusetts suspected that the design of this movement was to get away their charter, and bring the government of the colony under the immediate control of the king. The agents, therefore, who were appointed, were instructed, on no consideration, to deliver up the charter.

40. In 1684, the government of England declared the charter of Massachusetts to be no longer valid; and in 1686, Sir Edmund Andross was appointed governor of that colony. This was highly displeasing to the people of Massachusetts. They felt that a tyrant was now placed over them. The governor immediately imposed restraints upon the press, and broke in upon the religious and domestic regulations of the people. The titles of land, given under the

37. What did the heirs of Gorges do? When did New Hampshire become a distinct colony?

38. For what purpose was Edward Randolph sent over to the colonies? What were the colonial governments requested to do?

39. How did the people regard this movement? How did they instruct their agents?

40. What took place in 1684? In 1686? How did this affect the people? What did Andross do?

old charter, were declared void, and exorbitant prices were demanded for securing new ones.

41. These proceedings of the government provoked the people to madness, and they were ready to seize on the first favorable opportunity for redress. In 1689, news came from England that William, Prince of Orange, had landed at Torbay, and was contending for the crown. The people of Massachusetts, inspired with hope of deliverance, at once flew to arms, arrested and imprisoned Andross and his officers, and restored their former mode of government. The next arrival from England brought word that the Prince of Orange had gained possession of the throne, under the title of WILLIAM III. This intelligence was received with great joy throughout New England.

42. In 1692, William granted to Massachusetts a new charter, which extended her jurisdiction over the provinces of Plymouth, Maine, and Nova Scotia. By this charter, the king reserved to himself the right of appointing the governor of the colony. On the 24th of May, Sir William Phips, the first royal governor, arrived at Boston with the new charter; which, in many respects, was not so acceptable to the people as the old one. By an express provision, the new charter granted entire liberty of conscience to all, excepting Roman Catholics.

43. About this time the colonies were greatly harassed by the French of Canada, combined with the northern and eastern Indians. A fleet was fitted out under the command of Sir William Phips, to proceed against Quebec; and land forces were raised to march directly to Montreal. These movements were unsuccessful; and, instead of relieving the colonists, increased their burden of debt.

44. In the midst of these calamities, New England was thrown into panic and distress by the strange delusions of

41. What effect had these proceedings? What news arrived in 1689? What did the people do?

42. What did Massachusetts receive from the king in 1692? Who was the first governor under the new charter?

43. What expedition was undertaken about this time? Its result? How did Massachusetts pay off her troops on their return? *Ans.* By bills of credit, or paper money. This was the beginning of the paper money system.

witchcraft. A few years before, in England, persons called witches, were tried, condemned, and put to death in great numbers. Many highly respectable men had declared their belief that some persons were actually possessed with evil spirits. The people of New England, therefore, were prepared to receive, with the utmost credulity, the absurdities of this imaginary witchcraft.



TRIAL FOR WITCHCRAFT.

45. The evil commenced in Salem. Two little girls in the family of Mr. Paris, the minister of that place, were taken sick and strangely affected. The physicians could not account for their complaints, and declared them bewitched. The children ascribed their suffering to an old Indian woman, who lived in the family. Their condition was soon reported through the town, and many came to see them. Every body's sympathy was excited. The old woman, being accused and terrified, partly acknowledged that she was guilty.

44. What strange delusion seized upon the minds of the people about this time? Where had it prevailed before?

45. Where did it commence in this country? How were the sufferers affected?

46. So great was the excitement, that others soon imagined themselves affected in the same way; and all the magistrates being alarmed at the progress of the evil, a special court was established to try those who were accused. The sufferers declared that the witches came into their rooms through the cracks of the doors and windows, or through the keyhole, and tormented them, by pinching, scratching, pricking as with forks, shaking, beating them, &c. Many of the accused were tried, condemned, and hung.

47. The infatuation had now extended to all classes in society. Twenty had been put to death, and more than a hundred were in prison, awaiting their trial. At length the magistrates, finding that their own families were exposed to the same accusations, began to suspect that it was all a delusion. Those in prison were released. The witches soon fled.

48. Thus ended the *Salem witchcraft*. It is astonishing to us that our forefathers, with all their learning, should have been thus deluded. But we should remember that this was an age of superstition; that many good men really believed in the existence of witches. The same delusion had prevailed extensively in England and other parts of Europe.

49. The English settlements were harassed by the French and Indians, until the close of the war, Sept. 20, 1697. Peace followed for a few years. But war breaking out anew between England and France, hostilities at once commenced between their colonies. In February, 1704,* the town of Deerfield, Mass., was attacked in the night by the Indians and French. The town was set on fire, and the

46. What did the magistrates do? What was done with the accused?

47. How many were put to death? How many imprisoned? How did the delusion end?

48. What is it now called? How can you account for this delusion? Do you believe in witchcraft?

49. What happened in 1704?

* The first English newspaper published in America, was printed in Boston, April 24th, 1704, called "The Boston News Letter." It was the only paper printed in the American colonies until the 21st of Dec., 1719, when "The Boston Gazette" made its appearance; and on the following day, Dec. 22d, "The Weekly Mercury" was published at Philadelphia.

inhabitants killed or carried prisoners to Canada. More than twenty, unable to bear the fatigue of the journey, were killed by the way; among whom was Mrs. Williams, the wife of the minister of Deerfield. For ten years the people of Massachusetts and New Hampshire endured all the cruelties of an Indian war.

50. In 1711, a large fleet, under the command of Admiral Walker, left England for the purpose of subduing Canada. Having entered the river St. Lawrence, and disregarding the advice of the American pilots, he was driven upon the rocks, and many of his ships dashed to pieces. The cries of the drowning were heard, through the darkness of midnight, but no relief could be afforded. Before morning, more than 1,000 of their number had perished. This dreadful calamity defeated the object of the expedition. The remainder of the fleet returned to England. The Indians continued their cruel depredations upon the colonies till April 11th, 1713, when peace was concluded between England and France.

51. In 1716, Samuel Shute was appointed governor of the colony. During his administration, much contention prevailed between him and the house of representatives, respecting the governor's salary. The house contended for the right of rewarding him according to his services, while the king had ordered the governor to establish a permanent salary. This contest continued for many years, and was finally settled by a vote of the house of representatives, to grant a definite sum for the pay of the governor.

52. In 1744, war was again declared between England and France. During the time of peace, the French had strongly fortified the port of Louisburg on Cape Breton. This port gave French privateers every advantage for ruin-

50. What happened in 1711? What in 1713?

51. What took place in 1716? What under his administration? In whose possession was Canada at that time? In what direction from us is that country? In whose possession is it at this time?

52. When was war again declared between England and France? What is a privateer? *Ans.* It is a ship or vessel owned and fitted out by a private man, or individuals, and commissioned by government to seize the ships of an enemy in war.

ing the important fisheries on that coast, and for breaking up the trade of the colonies. A plan was conceived by one of the colonists for taking this port, and communicated to the governor of Massachusetts. Having imposed an oath of secrecy upon the members of the general court, the governor made known the plan to them. At first the enterprise was considered as altogether hazardous and impracticable; but when made known to the people, all hands and hearts were ready for the undertaking.



TAKING OF LOUISEBURG.

53. An army of more than 4,000 men, under the command of William Pepperell, was soon landed on the island; while a fleet, under Commodore Warren, blockaded the harbor. A detachment marched round to the northeast part of the harbor, in the night, and set fire to the buildings containing naval stores, tar, pitch, wine, brandy, &c. The flames and smoke pouring into the grand battery, so terrified the French, that they spiked their guns, and fled to the city. The next morning the New England troops took possession of the battery.

53. What expedition was fitted out about this time? Who commanded the army?

54. In order to attack the city, it was necessary to transport the cannon across a marsh impassable for oxen or horses. Sledges were constructed; and on these, the men with ropes over their shoulders, sinking to their knees in mud, drew them safely across. They now turned their cannon with great effect upon the city. The fleet in the harbor captured a French 64 gun ship, laden with stores, and five hundred and sixty men for the relief of the garrison. This threw the besieged into great distress, and, with other adverse events, led the French, on the 28th of June, to surrender the city.

55. This expedition displayed the spirit of New England, and excited the jealousy of Great Britain. The next summer a large French fleet of forty ships appeared on the coast, which spread great alarm through the colonies. But the French, after many serious disasters, which destroyed nearly half their fleet, returned to France. In 1748, peace was concluded, and Cape Breton was restored to the French. Nothing more of special importance occurred in Massachusetts till the next French war.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

1. The first permanent settlement in New Hampshire, was made by the English, in 1623. John Mason and Ferdinand Gorges obtained from the New England Company a grant of this territory, and sent over a few pioneers, who made new settlements on the west side of the Piscataqua river: one, near the mouth, called Little Harbor; the other, further up the river, at Cocheco, now called Dover.

2. Portsmouth was settled in 1631; and in 1638, a settlement was made at Exeter, by the Rev. John Wheelwright,

54. What was the result of this expedition?

55. When was peace concluded? Did the English retain Cape Breton?

1. When was the first permanent English settlement made in New Hampshire? Who obtained a grant of this territory? How long since Dover was settled?

2. When was Portsmouth settled? How were the first settlers mostly occupied?



SETTLEMENT OF PORTSMOUTH.

who had before purchased the land of the Indians. The first settlers of this state were mostly occupied in fishing and trade.

3. Soon after the settlement of Exeter, the inhabitants of that town organized a government for themselves. For several years, the government of each town was distinct and independent. But finding that they were very much exposed to the ravages of the Indians, they placed themselves, in 1641, under the protection of Massachusetts. During the wars with Philip, these feeble settlements suffered extremely from the barbarous assaults of the enemy.

4. In 1679, New Hampshire was separated from Massachusetts, and made a distinct province. Its government consisted of a president and council, appointed by the king, and a house of representatives, chosen by the people. The assembly held its first session in Portsmouth, in 1680, when a law was passed, declaring, that "no act, imposition, law, or ordinance, should be imposed upon the inhabitants, but

3. What was the government of each town? Under the protection of what colony did they place themselves in 1641?

4. When was New Hampshire made a distinct province?

such as should be made by the assembly, and approved by the president and council."

5. About this time a contest commenced, which continued with more or less severity for many years. Robert Mason, the grandson of John Mason, arrived at Portsmouth, and laid claim to a large part of the territory, declaring all titles of land not given by him to be invalid. His claims were rejected, and returning to England, he induced the king to commission Edward Cranfield as the commander-in-chief of New Hampshire. On Cranfield's arrival he also met with violent opposition in urging the claims of Mason. By a course of injustice and oppression, he rendered himself contemptible in the eyes of the people, and was obliged to leave the country. Mr. Waldron, a principal man in the colony, and the owner of much land, was very active in opposing the claims of Mason and Cranfield.

6. In 1689, the people sent a petition to the king, praying that they might again be annexed to Massachusetts. The petition was refused, and the petitioners were obliged to submit to a separate government. Samuel Allen, who had purchased Mason's claim, was made governor of the colony. He at once renewed the old contests respecting lands. Suits were laid against some of the principal landholders, but the court usually gave a decision in their favor.

7. Major Waldron and others, of Dover, by repeated acts of injustice, roused the indignation of the Indians, who concerted the following plan for destroying the town. In consequence of the dangers to which they were exposed, the inhabitants had fortified several houses to which they repaired every night to sleep. The Indians sent several women, who were considered friendly to the whites, to seek lodgings with them. They were instructed to throw open the doors of these houses in the night, and give a signal to the Indians, who were to be concealed in the immediate vicinity.

5. What claims were made by Mason? What did he do? How were his claims regarded?

6. What took place in 1689?

7. Who roused the indignation of the Indians? What plan did they concert to destroy the town?



DEATH OF MAJOR WALDRON.

8. The plan was successful. At midnight the signal was given, and the savages rushed into the houses. Their vengeance was first directed toward Waldron, who, after bravely defending himself, was overpowered and treated with the greatest barbarity. He was thrown upon a table, and each of the savages in turn gashing his breast with their knives, exclaimed, "Thus I cross out my account." At length they put an end to his sufferings, by rolling him from the table upon the point of his own sword.

9. Others shared a similar fate. In this surprisal, twenty-three persons were killed, and twenty-nine taken prisoners. Many houses were plundered and burned. Other towns were attacked, hundreds were killed, and many carried captive to Canada, and sold to the French. These cruel depredations continued till 1697, when peace was again restored. In 1703, the colonies were again involved in a long and bloody war. In 1719, Londonderry was settled by emigrants from Ireland. They brought over the foot-spinning-

8. Describe their treatment of Major Waldron.

9. How many were killed and taken prisoners? How long did these depredations continue? When was Londonderry settled? By whom?

wheel, and cultivated potatoes, and were noted for their industry.

10. In 1722, war broke out again with the French and Indians. During this war, Captain John Lovewell* distinguished himself in fighting the Indians. In one of his expeditions he surprised a company of ten Indians who were asleep around a fire. The Indians, jumping up, one after another, were shot on the spot, except one, who, attempting to escape, was seized by Lovewell's dog, and shared the same fate with the others. In another expedition, Lovewell and most of his men were killed by the Indians, under the command of the famous Paugus.

11. In 1746, the owners of Mason's title urged again their old claim, but meeting with no success, they soon yielded, and settled this unhappy contest by an honorable appropriation of their lands. In their grants they provided for the liberal support of the ministers of the gospel, for building churches, promoting education, and internal improvements. The people of New Hampshire now enjoyed a good degree of prosperity and repose, which was not interrupted till the opening of the French war.

NEW JERSEY.

1. New Jersey was first settled by the Dutch, at Bergen, about 1624. Shortly after, a few Dutch families settled on the western shore of New York bay. In 1627, a company of Swedes, under the patronage of Gustavus Adolphus, their king, came over and planted a colony on the banks of the Delaware. Three years after, the English began a settle-

10. Who distinguished himself in the war of 1722?

11. What took place in 1746?

1. When and by whom was New Jersey first settled? Where did the Dutch commence a settlement? The Swedes? The English? Who broke up the English settlement?

* John Lovewell, or Lovell, was distinguished in the Indian wars for his bold and daring exploits. He was killed at a place called Lovell's Pond, in 1725. He was here met by a party of Indians under Paugus. At the first fire he and eight of his men were killed. During the contest, Chamberlain killed Paugus. See Easy Reader, page 130.



DANES COMMENCING A SETTLEMENT.

ment at Elsingburgh, on the eastern side of the river. This settlement was soon broken up by the Swedes, who erected a fort on the same spot to guard the river.

2. The Swedes continued to multiply their settlements until 1655, when they were conquered by the Dutch. It has been stated in the history of New York, that the Dutch claimed all the territory between the Connecticut and the Delaware. The same territory was also claimed by the king of England, who, in 1664, sent over a fleet which completely subdued the Dutch.

3. The same year the Duke of York, to whom the king had granted this territory, conveyed all the lands between the Delaware and Hudson to Lord Berkley and Sir George Carteret. These possessions were called New Jersey, in honor of Sir George Carteret, who had been governor of the island of Jersey. They appointed Philip Carteret governor. He arrived at Elizabethtown in 1665, and established a government over the colony, just and liberal in its principles.

4. For several years the colony was in a very flourishing

2. When were the Swedes conquered? When were the Dutch?

3. What grant did the Duke of York make in 1664? Why were the possessions called New Jersey? Who was appointed governor?

state. But at length those settlers who had purchased their land of the Indians before the English took possession, refused to pay rent for it to the government. In 1672, the discontented party rose in rebellion. Their complaints were made known to the proprietors in England. Some concessions were made, and some privileges granted, which satisfied the people.

5. About this time Lord Berkley granted all his claims in the colony to Edward Billinge. In 1677, the territory was divided into East-Jersey and West-Jersey. The latter was assigned to Billinge, the former to Sir George Carteret. Three years before this division was made, the Dutch again took possession of this territory, but retained it only a few months. In consequence of this conquest by the Dutch, Sir Edmund Andross declared that Berkley and Carteret had lost all claim to the territory. In 1678, he therefore extended his tyrannical sway over New Jersey.

6. He imposed taxes upon the people, seized and imprisoned all those who would not submit to his authority. The colonies complained to the duke, and the case was at length referred to commissioners, and decided in favor of the people. Billinge had committed the management of affairs in West-Jersey to a board of trustees, one of whom was William Penn. In 1682, William Penn and eleven others of his sect, purchased East Jersey.

7. Penn and his Quaker brethren now appointed Robert Barclay* governor of East-Jersey for life; but peace and

4. What happened in 1672? Why?

5. What grant did Lord Berkley make? What division of the territory was made in 1676? To whom were these divisions assigned? In consequence of the Dutch conquest, what did Sir Edmund Andross do? How do you like Sir Edmund Andross's character? Should you like to have a governor like him in this state?

6. In consequence of the treatment they received from Andross, what did the people do? To whose management was West-Jersey committed? What was done in 1682?

7. Who was appointed governor of East-Jersey?

* Robert Barclay, an eminent writer of the society of Quakers, was born in Scotland, in 1648, of an ancient and honorable family. Uniting all the advantages of a learned education to great natural abilities, he early distinguished himself by his talents and zeal in defending the doctrines of the sect to which he belonged. He published many works, the most noted of which was his "Apology for the Qua-

tranquillity were not yet secured. There had been so many owners of the land, and so many changes in the government, that no one could tell with certainty whether he had a good title to his land or not. Great disorder prevailed. This state of confusion continued till 1702, when the right of government was surrendered to the queen of England.

8. The two divisions were now re-united, under the old name of New Jersey. Lord Cornbury was appointed governor. The same governor exercised jurisdiction over the provinces of New Jersey and New York. In 1738, the king, in answer to a petition of the people of New Jersey, appointed a separate governor over that colony. The office was first conferred upon Lewis Morris, under whose administration the people enjoyed peace and prosperity. The population was then 40,000. The same year, the college named *Nassau Hall* was founded at Princeton. The settlers of New Jersey purchased their lands of the Indians, and by their mildness and hospitality, secured their friendship.

DELAWARE.

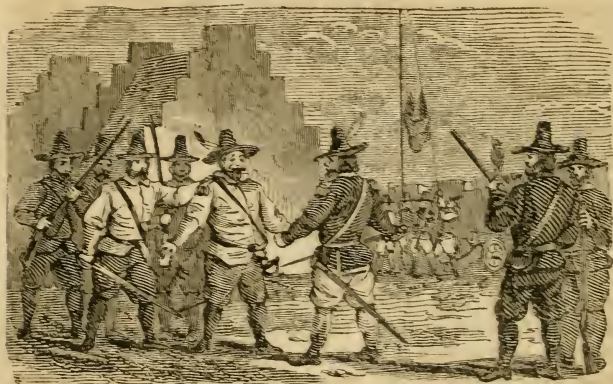
1. In 1627, a company of Swedes and Finns arrived in Delaware bay, and landed at Cape Henlopen. They were so much pleased with the richness and beauty of the country, that they called it *Paradise Point*. They purchased a large tract of land of the Indians, and called it New Sweden, extending from Cape Henlopen to the falls in the Delaware river opposite to Trenton. Their first settlement was on Christiana creek, near Wilmington.

8. Under what name were East and West Jersey again united in 1702? Who was appointed governor? When had New Jersey a separate governor? Who was appointed to this office? When was Nassau Hall college founded? How many years since New Jersey was settled?

1. When and by whom was Delaware first settled? How long since? What did they call the country? Where was the first settlement made?

kers." This work was published in Latin, in 1676, and was quickly translated into the English, Dutch, French, German, and Spanish languages. He was much persecuted, and several times imprisoned in consequence of his religious sentiments. He spent the close of his life, in the bosom of a large family, in quiet and peace. He died in 1690, in the 42d year of his age.

2. Being annoyed by the Dutch, who occupied the eastern bank of the Delaware, the Swedes built a fort on the island of Tinicum, about 12 miles southwest of Philadelphia, and this for a time became the seat of their government. John Printz was their first governor. They erected a number of forts along the river, to protect their settlements from the Dutch, who were now settling on the eastern side. In 1641, the Dutch crossed the river, and built a fort at New Castle. The Swedes claimed the territory, and remonstrated against these proceedings.



SWEDISH GOVERNOR TAKING THE DUTCH FORT.

3. Risingh, the second Swedish governor, with a band of thirty men, visited the fort under pretense of friendship. Being admitted, and kindly treated by the Dutch, he seized this opportunity to take possession of the fort. This act of treachery exasperated the Dutch governor of New York, and he came with a fleet of seven ships and took possession of all the Swedish settlements. Many of the Swedes were

2. What town became their seat of government? Who was their first governor? What did the Dutch do in 1641?

3. How did the Swedes get possession of the fort? What did the Dutch do in consequence?

seized and transported to Holland; the remainder submitted to the Dutch.

4. In 1664, the English conquered the Dutch and took possession of all their dominions. The settlement on the Delaware continued under the English governor of New York, until 1682. At this time, William Penn obtained a grant of the several tracts of land which now constitute the State of Delaware. They were called the "Territories," and for many years were under the government of Pennsylvania.

5. The territories were divided into three counties. Each county sent six delegates to the general assembly of Pennsylvania. In consequence of the fertility of the soil, and the liberal policy of the government, Delaware increased rapidly in population, and at the commencement of the revolution, was in a prosperous condition.

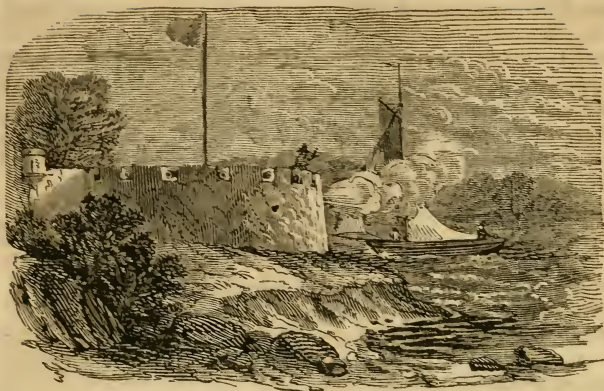
CONNECTICUT.

1. In 1630, the territory now constituting the State of Connecticut, was granted by the Plymouth Company in England, to the Earl of Warwick, and in the following year, he transferred it to Lord Say-and-Seal, Lord Brooke, and others. During the same year, Mr. Winslow, governor of the Plymouth colony, with several of his people, by the invitation of an Indian chief who wished the English to settle among them, visited the country along the Connecticut river, and finding the Indians friendly, and desirous of trading with the whites, he selected a spot for a trading house. The Dutch at New York, anticipating the designs of Winslow, sent a company to erect a fort at Hartford, to prevent the English from forming a settlement in that region.

4. What happened in 1664? In 1682? How many years since the Swedes first landed in Delaware? Where did the Swedes come from? Where the Finns?

5. Into how many counties was the territory divided? How is Delaware bounded? What is its capital?

1. When and to whom was the territory of Connecticut granted? Who visited the country soon after this? What did he do? What did the Dutch do in consequence?



HOLMES PASSING THE DUTCH FORT AT HARTFORD

2. In 1633, Winslow, having prepared the frame of a building, fitted out a party from Plymouth, under the direction of Capt. Wm. Holmes. He sailed up the river, and as he was passing the fort, the Dutch hailed him, and ordered him to stop, and threatened to fire in case he did not. But Holmes paid no regard to their orders, passed by without injury, ascended the river, landed, and set up the building within the present limits of the town of Windsor.

3. In 1635, a number of families from Massachusetts began settlements at Wethersfield and Windsor. The next winter, some of them being destitute of provisions, and in danger of starvation, returned through the cold and snow to their friends in Massachusetts. In October of the same year, John Winthrop arrived from England, with orders from the company, who now owned the territory, to build a fort at the mouth of the river.

2. What took place in 1633? Would you have done as Capt. Holmes did? What did Holmes say when the Dutch threatened to fire unless he struck his colors and stopped? *Ans.* "Fire," said he, "fire and be hanged. Who cares for your Dutch powder? I obey Governor Winslow, not you." Where was the first house erected in Connecticut? When?

3. What towns were settled in 1635? Who arrived in October?

4. In the summer of 1635, the Rev. Mr. Hooker, and about one hundred persons belonging to his congregation, left Massachusetts, and laid the foundation of Hartford. In their long journey through the wilderness, they had no guide but their compass, no cover but the heavens, and their principal food was the milk of the cows, which they drove before them. The Indians in Connecticut were very numerous. Thirty years after its settlement there were about twenty Indians to one white man. The first settlers suffered every sort of barbarity from these cruel savages.

5. In 1637, the troops from this colony distinguished themselves for bravery and fortitude, in the war against the Pequots, some account of which has already been given in the history of Massachusetts. In June, 1637, the Rev. John Davenport, Mr. Eaton, and other gentlemen of wealth and respectability from England, arrived at Boston. In 1638, they founded the colony of New Haven at Quinnipiac, the Indian name of that region.

6. The first Sabbath after their arrival, Mr. Davenport preached to the colony under a large oak tree. A day of fasting and prayer was appointed, and at the close of it, they all bound themselves by a solemn covenant, "to be governed in all things, both civil and religious, by the rules and principles of the Bible."

7. In 1639, June 14, the people of this colony met in a large barn, and adopted a constitution. It provided that none but members of some church should be permitted to vote, or take any part in government; that all voters should meet once a year to choose the officers of the colony; and that the word of God should be their only rule, as well in civil as in religious affairs. In short, "The Bible was their law-book, and church members the only freemen." The same year,

4. How many years since Hartford was settled?

5. When and by whom was the colony of New Haven founded? The Connecticut colony embraced the towns on the Connecticut river. The New Haven colony embraced the towns bordering on Long Island sound. They remained separate and distinct colonies till 1665.

6. Where was the first religious meeting held in New Haven? How did they agree to be governed?

7. When and where did they adopt a constitution?

Jan. 24, the people of Hartford, Wethersfield, and Windsor, assembled at Hartford, and adopted a constitution for the colony of Connecticut, thus establishing for themselves a separate government. The constitution* thus formed was of unexampled liberality, carefully guarding and protecting the rights of all the people. It provided that the members of the towns who should take the oath of allegiance to the commonwealth, should be entitled to the elective franchise, or right of voting; that the governor and legislature should be chosen annually by ballot; that the representatives should be apportioned among the different towns according to population; that the general court, or assembly, alone should have power to make and repeal laws, and should hold two sessions each year, &c. Previously to this, the people of the colony had been governed by the laws of Massachusetts.

8. About this time, George Fenwick and others began a settlement at the mouth of the river, which, in honor of Lords Say-and-Seal, and Brooke, was called *Saybrook*. For many years they enacted their own laws, and made their own regulations; but in 1664, this town became a part of the Connecticut colony.

9. The Dutch, claiming the territory of Connecticut, continued their hostilities, and excited the Indians against the colonies. In 1650, a treaty of peace was made with the English, by which the Dutch gave up their claim to the territory. But soon after, the Dutch governor was detected in forming a conspiracy with the savages, for the entire extermination of the English.

10. At this time the colonies of New England were all, except Rhode Island, united in a confederacy for their mutual protection. New Haven and Connecticut, alarmed at their danger, laid before the commissioners of the United Colonies the designs of the Dutch. At first agents were sent to the Dutch governor; but obtaining from him no satisfactory ex-

8. When was Saybrook settled?

9. What took place in 1650? Did the Dutch continue friendly?

10. What did the colonies of New Haven and Connecticut do?

* "This is the first example in history of a WRITTEN CONSTITUTION, constituting a government and defining its powers."—L. BACON, D.D.

planation of his conduct, the commissioners thought it necessary to appeal to arms.

11. At this critical moment, the court of Massachusetts resolved, "that no decision of the commissioners should bind the colony to engage in war." This was a gross violation of the articles of the confederacy. Connecticut and New Haven, not being able to defend themselves against their enemies, without the aid of Massachusetts, implored the assistance of Cromwell, who was then at the head of affairs in England. He immediately sent a fleet against the Dutch; but soon after its arrival in New England, the news of peace between Holland and England reached the colonies, which put an end to all hostilities.

12. On the restoration of Charles II., John Winthrop, governor of the Connecticut colony, was sent to England to obtain from the king a royal charter for the colony. He presented to Charles a ring of great value, which his father, Charles I., had given to Winthrop's grandfather. Pleased with the gift, the king granted a charter very liberal in its privileges, and which confirmed all the provisions of their constitution. The charter included New Haven; but that colony, not willing to give up its entire independence, did not submit to the regulations of the charter until 1665, when the two colonies were united.

13. In 1686, King James II., dissatisfied with the spirit of liberty which prevailed in the colonies, ordered the people of Connecticut to surrender their charter. Sir Edmund Andross, his agent, and at that time governor of New England, finding the people of that colony unwilling to submit to the king's order, marched with a band of troops to Hartford.

14. The legislature was then in session. Sir Edmund entered the court-house and demanded the charter. The matter was debated until evening, when the charter was

11. What was the conduct of Massachusetts? From whom was assistance implored? What did Cromwell do? What event rendered assistance unnecessary?

12. Who was sent to obtain a charter for Connecticut? State the result. When were the colonies of Connecticut and New Haven united?

13. What took place in 1686? What did Sir Edmund Andross do?

14. State what took place at Hartford. What has this tree been called

brought forth and laid on the table. The excitement was great, and the house was crowded. In the heat of the discussion, the candles were all suddenly extinguished. When they were relighted, the charter was gone. Amid the darkness and confusion, a Captain Wadsworth had seized it, and escaping from the house, had concealed it in the hollow of an oak tree.

15. Andross now took upon himself the absolute control of the colony. Soon after this, King James was driven from the throne, and Connecticut, under the favor of King William, who succeeded him in 1688, enjoyed her former privileges. But in 1692, the king appointed Colonel Fletcher governor of New York, and commissioned him to take command of the militia of Connecticut. By the charter, this power was conferred upon her own governor; and he was determined to maintain it, and was supported in this determination by the people of the colony.

16. The next year Fletcher repaired to Hartford; but was promptly informed that the militia would not be placed under his command. He then ordered out the troops of that city. This being done, he appeared in front of the line, and commanded one of his officers to read to them his commission from the king. Wadsworth, the captain of the militia, immediately commanded the drums to beat. Fletcher demanded silence, and ordered the officer to read on. "Drum, drum!" cried Wadsworth. The order was obeyed, and nothing was heard but the roar of drums. "Silence, silence!" exclaimed Fletcher, and a pause succeeded. Wadsworth then turning to Colonel Fletcher, boldly addressed him, "If I am interrupted again, I will make the sun shine through you in a moment," and again ordered the drums to beat. Struck with this bold address, Fletcher

since that event? *Ans.* The charter oak. It is still standing in the southern part of the city of Hartford.

15. What event occurred soon after, favorable to the colony? What took place in 1692? By the charter of Connecticut, who was commander-in-chief of the militia?

16. When did Col. Fletcher go to Hartford? For what purpose? Did he obtain the command of the militia? What occurred? Did Capt. Wadsworth do right?

no longer persisted. The case was afterward referred to the king, and decided in favor of Connecticut.



WADSWORTH SILENCING FLETCHER.

17. In 1700, a number of clergymen, desiring to increase the means of education, met at Branford and founded Yale College on an endowment of books. The next year it was incorporated with an annual grant of £120, and established at Saybrook; but in 1717, the location being considered inconvenient, it was removed to New Haven. It derived its name from Elihu Yale, one of its most liberal patrons. In respect to numbers and reputation, it is now one of the first literary institutions in the country.

18. In 1708, the people of Connecticut established an ecclesiastical constitution. The ministers and delegates of the churches met at Saybrook, and framed the celebrated creed, called "*The Saybrook Platform.*" All churches which acknowledged this platform were established by law.

17. When was Yale College founded? Where was it first established? When and to what place was it removed?

18. What was done in 1708? How many years since the first settlement was made in Connecticut?

Other churches, however, were permitted to regulate their own concerns as they chose.

19. In the wars with the Indians, Connecticut suffered much, though less than some of the other colonies. Her troops were ever ready to fly to the assistance of their brethren, and were distinguished for their bravery and success. After the death of Philip, she was seldom molested by the Indians, and for many years enjoyed uninterrupted prosperity.

MARYLAND.

1. We have seen that the first settlement of Massachusetts and Rhode Island was owing to religious persecution. The same spirit prevailed against the Roman Catholics, which led to the settlement of Maryland. In 1632, George Calvert,* called Lord Baltimore, a distinguished member of that sect, applied to Charles I. for a grant of territory north of Virginia, for the purpose of establishing a settlement on the principles of religious liberty. Before the grant had passed the royal seal, he died. About two months after, the territory was granted in the name of Cecil Calvert, Lord Baltimore's eldest son and heir. In honor of the queen Maria, the colony was called Maryland.

2. Lord Baltimore appointed his brother, Leonard Calvert, governor of the province. He, with about 200 Catholic emigrants, arrived at the mouth of the Potomac in 1634.

19. What is said of the troops of Connecticut?

1. What led to the settlement of Maryland? How did Lord Baltimore wish to establish a settlement?

2. When, where, and by whom, was the first settlement made?

* George Calvert was born in Yorkshire, England, in 1582. He possessed superior talents, and was knighted by James I., and made clerk of the privy council; and in 1619, was appointed one of the secretaries of state. This post he resigned in 1624, in consequence of having become a Roman Catholic. Notwithstanding this, he retained the confidence of the king, and in 1625, was created Lord Baltimore, or baron of Baltimore, in the kingdom of Ireland. He died at London, 1682, beloved and respected by all. It is said of him, that he took as much pleasure in hearing the sentiments of others, as in delivering his own, and was ever conspicuous for his good sense and moderation.

After exploring the country for a few weeks, they purchased the village of Yoamaco of the Indians, and named it St. Mary's. Here they found comfortable habitations; and the soil being somewhat cultivated, they had a sufficient supply of provisions.

3. Many circumstances favored the settlement of Maryland. Although Lord Baltimore and his family were Catholics, and had been severely oppressed and persecuted in England, they granted equal protection to all Christian denominations in their new colony, while persecution prevailed in the northern provinces. The soil and climate were very inviting. The Indians were perfectly friendly. The people were permitted to make their own laws. These things led to the rapid increase of the colony.

4. The first assembly, which met soon after they arrived, was composed of all the freemen in the colony. This mode of legislation was soon altered. In 1639, the "House of Assembly" was made up of representatives chosen by the people, and persons appointed by the proprietor, together with the governor and secretary. These all met in the same room. A change took place in 1650, by which this body was divided into a lower house, consisting of representatives, and an upper house, consisting of the governor and council, appointed by the proprietor.

5. The peace of this colony was soon disturbed by William Clayborne. By circulating false reports among the Indians, he excited them to a war, which involved the colony in much distress for several years. Clayborne was tried and condemned; but before the day of his execution, he made his escape. At length he appealed to the king, but his appeal was in vain. During the civil war in England, he joined the party opposed to the king. Soon after, he re-

3. What circumstance favored the settlement of Maryland? How does the conduct of the first settlers of Maryland compare with that of the first settlers of Massachusetts?

4. When did the first assembly meet? Of whom was it composed? When was this mode of legislation altered? Of whom did the House of Assembly consist? What change took place in 1650?

5. By whom was the peace of the colony disturbed? How? When did he excite a rebellion?



INDIANS ATTACKING SETTLERS AT WORK IN THE FIELDS.

turned to Maryland, and in 1645 excited a rebellion against the government.

6. But the contending parties in England soon occasioned a civil war in the colony. The Catholics were completely overpowered, and an act was passed declaring them without the protection of law. Laws also were enacted against the Quakers. At the restoration of Charles II., in 1660, Cecil Calvert recovered his right to the province, and his son, Philip Calvert, was appointed governor, and harmony was again restored in the colony. At this time the population of Maryland was about 12,000.

7. Cecil Calvert, Lord Baltimore, the proprietor and founder of the colony, died in 1676. He was greatly distinguished for wisdom, benevolence, and liberality of sentiment. His memory is gratefully cherished by the people of Maryland. The city of Baltimore was named after him. By his death his eldest son, Charles, became heir to his estate and title.

6. What law was passed against the Catholics, and against the Quakers? Who was appointed governor in 1660?

7. When did Lord Baltimore die; and what was his character? What city in Maryland is named after him?

8. The peace of the colony was again disturbed in 1689, when a suspicion prevailed that the Catholics had conspired with the Indians to destroy the Protestants. A revolution took place, and the Protestants assumed the government in the name of King William. The government of the colony continued under the crown of England until 1716, when it was again restored to Lord Baltimore, with whom it remained for many years.

RHODE ISLAND.



EMIGRATION OF ROGER WILLIAMS.

1. The first settlement in Rhode Island was made, in 1636, by Roger Williams,* who was banished from Massachusetts, as before mentioned. He proceeded to the country of the Narragansets, obtained a tract of land from them, at

8. What took place in 1689? In 1716? How many years since the settlement of St. Mary's? What was the Indian name of St. Mary's? Can you tell me how Maryland is bounded? Its capital?

1. When, where, and by whom, was the first settlement made in Rhode Island? Why did he call the settlement Providence?

* Roger Williams was born in Wales, in 1593. He was regularly educated, and

a place called Moshassuck, and began to build a town, which, in acknowledgment of God's goodness to him in time of trouble and distress, he called *Providence*. The settlement was called Providence Plantation.

2. Williams maintained the doctrine, that the civil law should provide equally for the protection of all Christian denominations, and not interfere with the faith of any. For these just and noble sentiments he had suffered much persecution; and he now determined to test their practical effect, by founding a colony on the broadest principles of civil and religious liberty, granting equal toleration and entire liberty of conscience to all religious sects.

3. The colony soon became popular, and many joined it from other settlements. In 1638, William Coddington,*

2. What doctrine did Williams maintain? How does his conduct compare with that of the first settlers of Massachusetts colony?

3. What took place in 1638?

admitted to orders in the Church of England. Having embraced the doctrines of the Puritans, he embarked for America, where he arrived with his wife, in February, 1631. He preached in Plymouth about two years, and, in 1634, was settled over the church in Salem. While here, and at Plymouth, he maintained the character he had acquired in England, that of "a godly man and zealous preacher." His just views of religious liberty soon gave offense. He insisted that the civil magistrate is bound to grant equal protection to every denomination of Christians, and that he has no right "to deal in matters of conscience and religion;" that every person should be permitted to worship God agreeably to the dictates of his own conscience. These doctrines were too liberal for the age in which he lived. He was brought before the court, tried, and banished from the colony, in 1635. Having left Massachusetts, he proceeded southward, and purchased a tract of land of the Narraganset Indians, and laid the foundation of Providence. Having embraced the sentiments of the Baptists, he was baptized in March, 1639, and while he enjoyed liberty of conscience himself, he granted it to all others. He studied the Indian languages, and used his endeavors to impart to the savages the blessings of the gospel. He enjoyed the highest confidence of his fellow-citizens, and was several times elected to the office of governor. He died in 1683, at Providence. He was a man of superior talents, of unblemished moral character, and of ardent piety; unyielding in opinions which he conceived to be right, and not to be diverted by threats or flattery from what he believed to be duty. His memory is deserving of lasting honor, for the correctness of his opinions respecting liberty of conscience, and for the generous toleration which he established. With true magnanimity and nobleness of soul, he exercised all his influence with the Indians in favor of Massachusetts, and ever evinced the greatest friendship for the colony from which he had been driven. He is justly accused of frequent changes in his religious sentiments; but these changes should be ascribed to conviction, rather than any regard to worldly interests.

* William Coddington was a native of England. He arrived at Salem in 1630, and was for a number of years a magistrate in the Massachusetts colony. Becoming involved in the religious contentions at that time, he removed, in 1638, to Rhode Island, and was the principal instrument in effecting the original settlement of that place. His name stands first on the covenant signed by eighteen persons, 1638, forming themselves into a body politic, "to be governed by the laws of the Lord Jesus Christ, the King of kings." It was soon found necessary, however, to have

with many others, came from Massachusetts, and settled on the island, now called Rhode Island. The settlements on the island rapidly extended, and were called the Rhode Island Plantations.

4. In 1643, Rhode Island petitioned to be admitted into the celebrated union of the New England colonies. Plymouth, declaring the settlements of this colony to be within the limits of her territory, would not consent to the petition. But after a warm discussion between the commissioners, it was voted that Rhode Island should enjoy all the benefits of the union, provided she would submit to the jurisdiction of Plymouth. Spurning the idea of such submission, she maintained her independence, and was not associated with the other colonies.

5. In consequence of this, Roger Williams went the same year (1643) to England, and obtained from the parliament, the year following, a free and absolute charter of civil government for the two plantations, or colonies. In 1647, delegates from the several towns met in general assembly at Portsmouth, adopted a constitution, and framed a code of laws, which closed with the declaration that, "all men might walk as their consciences persuaded them, without molestation, every one in the name of his God." The executive power was placed in the hands of a president, or governor, and four assistants. It was not, however, until 1652, that the two plantations, or colonies, were fully united under one government.

6. In 1663, Charles II. granted a charter to Rhode Island, which embraced the principles on which the colony was founded, and those of the charter obtained from parliament in 1644. It enjoined the greatest toleration in matters of

4. What prevented Rhode Island from joining the confederacy?

5. What took place in 1643? When was the government of Rhode Island first organized? Where is Portsmouth? *Ans.* It is in the northern part of the island of Rhode Island, seven miles north of Newport.

6. When did the colony obtain a charter? Of whom? What did it enjoin? What did the legislature do in 1664? What in subsequent acts?

something more definite. He was chosen governor of Rhode Island seven years successively, until the island was incorporated with Providence Plantation, in 1647. He died in 1678. He was ever a warm advocate for liberty of conscience, and he founded his little colony on the principle of religious toleration.

religion, allowing every man to worship God agreeably to the dictates of his own conscience. This broad principle of religious toleration was reasserted by the legislature in May, 1664, and in subsequent acts, the rights of conscience and freedom of mind were strictly respected. The charter government of this colony was dissolved by Andross while he was governor of New England, but was resumed again directly after his imprisonment, and continued in force until 1842, when a state constitution was adopted.

7. In 1764, Brown University was founded by Nicholas Brown, at Warren; but, in 1770, was removed to Providence, and is now a flourishing institution. At this time the population of the colony was about 75,000. Rhode Island, on account of her just and benevolent treatment of the Indians, was seldom molested by their depredations.

NORTH CAROLINA.

1. Sir Robert Heath, in 1630, obtained a grant of a large extent of territory, reaching from Virginia to Florida, which was called Carolina. Under this grant no colony was planted. About the year 1645, a number of persons fled from persecution in Virginia, and settled north of Albemarle sound. Here, for many years, they lived in the enjoyment of freedom and plenty.

2. In 1661, another settlement was made near Cape Fear river by a band of emigrants from Massachusetts. In consequence of the hostility of the Indians and the unproductiveness of the soil, the settlement was abandoned in 1663.

7. When and by whom was Brown University founded? What protected the colony from Indian depredations? Suppose all the white people that came to America had been kind and honest in their dealings with the Indians, what do you think would have been the result? If we should in all cases "do to others as we wish others to do to us," what do you imagine would be the consequence?

1. To whom was Carolina first granted? When and where was a settlement first made in Carolina?

2. When and where was another settlement made? Why was that settlement abandoned? When did emigrants arrive from Barbadoes? Where did they settle? Who was appointed governor?

In 1665, a number of emigrants, planters, from the island of Barbadoes, settled near the same place, over whom Sir John Yeamans was appointed governor.

3. As yet, Sir Robert Heath had not complied with the conditions of his title, and, in 1663, the same territory was granted to Lord Clarendon and seven others.* They now organized a government on the most liberal principles, and held out many inducements to emigration. Mr. Drummond was appointed governor of the settlement on the Albemarle.

4. At this time the celebrated John Locke had gained great reputation in England for his political writings. At the request of Lord Clarendon, he prepared a constitution of government for the province. It was very different from the constitutions of the other colonies. It provided that the governor should hold his office during life, and that an hereditary nobility should be created. This constitution was adopted, but was not pleasing to the people, and was the occasion of much disorder in the colony.

5. In 1671, William Sayle commenced a settlement, which, in honor of King Charles, he called Charleston. This town, being well situated for commerce, rapidly increased in population. Many came from Clarendon county, which embraced the settlements about Cape Fear. After the death of Sayle, in 1671, Sir John Yeamans was appointed governor of Charleston. The settlements under this government were now called South Carolina, in distinction from those at Albemarle, which were called North Carolina.

6. At length disorders began to arise in the northern colony. These were greatly increased under the administration of Seth Sothel, one of the proprietors, who was ap-

3. What had Sir Robert Heath failed to do? What was the consequence? What did they do? Who was appointed governor?

4. What did John Locke do? What did it provide? Were the people pleased with it?

5. When did William Sayle commence a settlement? Why did he name it Charleston? Who was appointed governor after Sayle? After Yeamans was appointed governor, what were these settlements called?

6. How did the people like Seth Sothel for governor? What did they do with him? Was that right? What took place in 1693?

* This patent comprised the territory between 30° and 36° north latitude, extending from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean.

pointed governor in 1683. He was avaricious, corrupt, and tyrannical. The people, after enduring for six years his cruel oppression, banished him from the colony. Philip Ludwell, his successor, and John Archdale, who succeeded him, were both popular governors. Under their administrations the people were prosperous and happy.



INDIAN MASSACRE.

7. In 1707, a company of French Protestants arrived and located themselves on the river Trent, a branch of the Neuse. In 1710, one hundred German families from the Rhine, seeking a refuge from religious persecution at home, came and settled in the same part of the province. To each of these, the governor and proprietors gave 100 acres of land. In the enjoyment of liberty of conscience, and in prospect of ease and competence, a terrible calamity fell upon them. The Tuscarora and Coree Indians, who dwelt in the interior, had watched with jealousy and alarm the increasing power of the whites, and fearful of a total extinction from the encroachment of these strangers, in 1712, secretly formed a conspiracy to massacre the whole colony. One night,

7. Who arrived in 1707? In 1710? What war in 1712? What were the principal events that took place during this war?

1,200 savage warriors, having concerted a plan, entered the houses of the inhabitants, and murdered men, women, and children, without mercy. They flew from village to village, leaving nothing behind them but a horrid scene of common slaughter. A few only escaped.

8. Not long after that fatal night, Colonel Barnwell, with about 1,000 men, arrived from South Carolina. After a fatiguing march he met and defeated the Indians, and restored peace. He then returned. But hostilities were soon renewed by the Indians. Colonel Moore was immediately sent with a strong force from the southern colony. He defeated the enemy, and took 800 prisoners. The next year the Tuscaroras abandoned their country and joined the confederacy of the five nations in New York.

9. The two Carolinas were still united under the same board of proprietors. Troubles and disputes often arose between the rulers and the people. In 1729, the Court of England declared the old charter forfeited; and the king immediately separated the two colonies and established a distinct government over each. The people of North Carolina, finding the soil in the interior much better than that near the coast, began to penetrate the wilderness. Peace with the Indians being secured, many came from the northern provinces; and the colony, under wise governors, enjoyed a high degree of prosperity.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

1. The first settlement in South Carolina was made at Port Royal, in 1670, by William Sayle. The next year he commenced the settlement of old Charleston. This place increased rapidly, and was for many years the seat of gov-

8. What became of the Tuscaroras? Would it have been better for the Indians to have remained at peace with the whites?

9. When was Carolina divided into two distinct and separate governments?

1. 2. When and where was the first settlement made within the limits of South Carolina? What took place in 1680? In 1690?

ernment. But in 1680, the people considering Oyster Point, between Ashley and Cooper rivers, a more suitable place for a city, removed there, and laid the foundation of the present city of Charleston. The first settlers suffered extremely from the climate, and from the hostility of the natives.

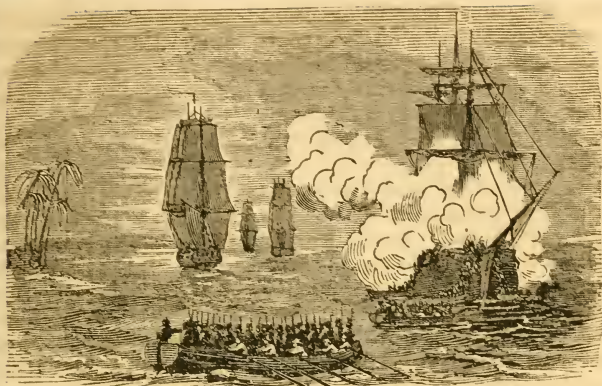
2. In 1690, Seth Sothel, who had been banished from North Carolina, was by the favor of a party made governor. But on account of his oppression, he was afterward removed from office. The English Episcopalians, being very numerous, manifested a spirit of determined opposition against the French Protestants. They were not willing to admit their representatives into the general assembly. The French were mild and peaceable. The governor favored their cause, and endeavored to appease the feelings of their unchristian opposers.

3. In 1695, John Archdale was appointed governor of both Carolinas. Order was now restored, and the French soon enjoyed all the rights of freemen. But not long after this, Lord Granville, one of the proprietors, and James Moore, the governor, determined to establish the Episcopal religion by law. An act was passed for this purpose, depriving dissenters of all participation in the government. This measure was laid before the proprietors in England, and finally sanctioned by them. But the dissenters made complaint to the house of lords, and soon after, the obnoxious law was declared void.

4. During the war between England and Spain, governor Moore, in 1702, made an unsuccessful expedition against the Spanish settlement at St. Augustine in Florida, which cost the colony \$26,000. Soon after his return, he marched against the Apalachian Indians, who were in alliance with the Spaniards. Here he was more successful. He burned their towns, took many prisoners, and enriched himself by selling them as slaves. In 1706, a Spanish fleet appeared off Charleston harbor. But finding the whole force

3. What took place in 1695? What unjust and oppressive laws were passed?

4. What expeditions were undertaken by Gov. Moore? What took place in 1706?



THE SPANISH FLEET, ONE SHIP TAKEN.

of the colony prepared to oppose them, they retired without a general attack. One of their ships, however, was taken by the colonists.

5. A general war with the Indians, headed by the Yamassees,* who had conspired to extirpate the whites, commenced in 1715. It began by a general massacre of the colonists around Port Royal. A band of seventy whites and forty negroes, after a short contest, surrendered, and were all immediately cut to pieces. Governor Craven, with a force of 1,200 men, at a place called Saltcatchers, fought a bloody battle with the enemy. The savages were defeated with great slaughter. The survivors fled to Florida, and were kindly welcomed by the Spaniards. About 400 whites were killed in the war, and a great deal of property destroyed.

6. Besides the calamities of war, the colonists groaned under the cruel measures of the proprietors, and their oppres-

5. What took place in 1715? What did Gov. Craven do?

6. In 1719?

* The Yamassees were a brave and warlike tribe of Indians. They had long meditated the total destruction of the whites. They had engaged in the conspiracy all the Indian tribes from Cape Fear to the Alabama river.

sive officers. The people at length became exasperated, and determined to throw off their yoke. In 1719, a general union was formed, and after several unsuccessful attempts to produce a change in their favor, the people met and appointed James Moore their governor. He immediately assumed supreme authority, and controlled the affairs of the colony with spirit and decision.

7. The contest was finally settled by the king, in 1729, who established over each of the Carolinas a regular colonial government. Under the blessing of a good government the colony rapidly increased in wealth and population. Its peace was again disturbed in 1738, by an insurrection of the slaves. At Stono they killed the keepers of a warehouse, and supplied themselves with guns and ammunition. They then marched forward with their colors flying, killed the whites, burned their houses, and compelled the blacks to join them.

8. The alarm soon reached Wiltown, where a large congregation were assembled for divine worship. Having their arms with them, they immediately marched against the negroes. They soon found them in an open field, dancing and rejoicing at their success. They fell upon them, killed some, and put the rest to flight. The leaders were taken and put to death. The colony afterward suffered from the Indians; yet the population continually increased. Hundreds and thousands came from Europe and the northern colonies.

PENNSYLVANIA.

1. William Penn* was the founder of Pennsylvania. His father was an admiral in the English navy, and after

7. What took place in 1738? Describe the insurrection and conduct of the slaves.

8. What was the result of this insurrection? Can you tell me how South Carolina is bounded? Its capital?

* William Penn was born in London, in 1644. He was the only son of William Penn, who was vice-admiral of England in the time of Oliver Cromwell, and afterward knighted by Charles II. for his successful services against the Dutch. At the age of fifteen, he entered Christ-church college, Oxford. He appears to have

his death, in reward of his services, King Charles granted to his son William a large extent of territory west of New Jersey, and gave it the name of Pennsylvania, which means "The groves of Penn."

2. Penn having become well acquainted with the soil of that region, now published a description of Pennsylvania, and offered to sell or rent lands so cheap, that many were induced to emigrate. In the autumn of 1681, a large company, mostly Quakers, left England for Pennsylvania, among whom was William Markham, who was to act as deputy-governor. Penn also purchased of the Duke of York, the "Territories" of Delaware. The next summer, with about 2,000 colonists, he embarked for America.

3. He first landed at New Castle, and the day following, possession of the "Territories" was legally given him by the

1. Who was the founder of Pennsylvania? What can you tell me about William Penn? What is the meaning of the word Pennsylvania?

2. When did the first settlers sail for Pennsylvania? When did Penn sail? How many colonists with him?

3. Where did he first land?

been seriously inclined from his youth; and having heard Thomas Loe, an eminent preacher among the Quakers, or Friends, he was deeply impressed, and with a number of other students, withdrew from the established worship, and held meetings by themselves. This gave great offense to the heads of the college, by whom they were fined for nonconformity; but persisting in their religious exercises, they were finally expelled the university. On his return home, his father tried in vain to divert him from his religious pursuits; and at length, finding him inflexible in what he now conceived to be his religious duty, beat him severely, and turned him out of doors. Relenting, however, he sent him to Paris with some persons of quality, hoping by this means to draw his mind from the subject of religion. In two years, he returned so well skilled in the French language, and other polite accomplishments, that he was again joyfully received at home. He commenced the study of the law at Lincoln's Inn. Here he continued till his 22d year, when his father committed to him the management of a large estate in Ireland. At Cork, he heard the famous Thomas Loe again preach. He began his discourse with these penetrating words, "There is a faith that overcomes the world, and there is a faith that is overcome by the world." Penn was so deeply affected that he now resolved to devote himself to a religious life. Soon after this he commenced preaching, and from this time, his life was nearly one scene of persecution. He was often imprisoned and fined, but he was never deterred from doing what he conceived to be his religious duty. Some debts being due to his father at the time of his death, from the king, and as there was no prospect of payment very soon in any other mode, Penn solicited a grant of lands in America; and, in 1681, obtained of Charles II. a charter of Pennsylvania. In 1682, he arrived in the province, and established a government, allowing perfect liberty of conscience. In 1684, he returned to England, but revisited Pennsylvania again in 1699. He returned to England in 1701, where he died in 1718, aged 73. The writings of Penn bespeak his character as a Christian and *philanthropist*. He was a man of great abilities, of quick thought and ready utterance, of mildness of disposition, and extensive charity. Of his ability as a politician and legislator, the prosperity of Pennsylvania is a lasting monument.

magistrates. He then made a speech to the people, and explained to them the principles of the government. The Dutch, Swedes, and Finns, who had settled in Delaware, cheerfully submitted to his authority. Before leaving England, Penn had published a "Frame of government, and a body of Laws," by which he intended to regulate the colony. His liberal policy induced great numbers to emigrate.



PENN'S TREATY WITH THE INDIANS.

4. The first assembly met at Chester, soon after his arrival, and adopted his constitution and laws. Penn endeavored to secure the good will of the Indians. He made a treaty with them, and considering them the rightful owners of the soil, purchased of them all the lands which had been secured to him by the charter from the king. He selected a spot for a large city, which he called Philadelphia, a word

4. When did the first assembly of the people meet? *Ans.* The 4th of December, 1682. Where? Did he drive the Indians off, and take their lands? What did he do as regards the Indians? What was the consequence of this treaty? *Ans.* The colony enjoyed the blessings of peace and friendship with the Indians 70 years. To what sect of Christians did Penn belong, and most of those who first settled in that colony? Can you mention any distinguishing peculiarity of the Quakers? *Ans.* Never to make war, or to perform any act of violence, even in self-defense. What city did he immediately found?

signifying *brotherly love*. Here eighty houses were built before the end of the year.

5. In 1683, a second assembly was called at Philadelphia. Penn now granted a new charter, similar in spirit to the first. Many wise and pacific regulations were adopted. Penn was intent upon securing the good order and prosperity of all the people. In 1684, he returned to England. At this time the province was very prosperous. Twenty settlements had already been commenced, and the city of Philadelphia contained 2,000 inhabitants.

6. Penn was a firm friend of James II. "As he has," said he, "been my friend, and my father's friend, I feel bound in justice to be a friend to him." On account of his known attachment to James, he was accused of hostility to King William, and was several times imprisoned. The government of his province was taken out of his hands, and conferred upon Col. Fletcher, the governor of New York. But he soon proved his conduct to be just and honorable, and his rights were again restored. He now commissioned William Markham as his deputy-governor.

7. Penn visited his province again in 1699. Finding some ground of complaint among the people, in 1701, he granted them a new charter. He also permitted the Territories of Delaware to have a distinct assembly, yet subject to the governor of Pennsylvania. Soon after this, Penn returned to England again, and left the government of his province in the hands of his deputy-governor.

8. Frequent complaints were still made, which for many years marred the happiness of the people. The colony, however, continued to increase in wealth and population, beyond any previous example. By their just and upright

5. When and where was a second assembly called? When did Penn return to England?

6. To what king was Penn friendly? Why was Penn imprisoned by King William? Whom did he appoint as his deputy-governor?

7. When did Penn visit Pennsylvania for the last time? What did he do in 1701? What did he permit to the Territories of Delaware?

8. How happened it that the colony of Pennsylvania lived in peace and friendship with the Indians, while other colonies suffered so much from their depredations? Can you tell me how Pennsylvania is bounded? Its capital?

conduct, the whites secured the friendship of the Indians, which was not interrupted for more than 70 years.

GEORGIA.

1. In 1732, George II.* granted the territory now constituting the state of Georgia to a company of benevolent gentlemen, who desired to provide an asylum for the poor of England, and for the persecuted Protestants of all nations. The affairs of the colony were committed to a board of twenty-one trustees, who made many wise and useful regulations.

2. In November of the same year, James Oglethorpe, a member of the British parliament, a brave and humane man, sailed from England with 113 emigrants, and arrived at Charleston in January. After receiving a good supply of provisions, he proceeded to Georgia, and on the 12th of February, 1733, commenced a settlement on Yamacraw bluff, and named it Savannah, after the Indian name of the river. The next year a large company of poor persons arrived and commenced clearing up the wilderness. But the trustees finding many of these emigrants idle and inefficient, made liberal offers to any who would settle in the colony. This induced hundreds from Scotland, Germany, and Switzerland, to emigrate.

3. In 1738, George Whitefield,† the most celebrated

1. When, by whom, and to whom, was the territory of Georgia granted? For what purpose? To whom were its affairs committed?

2. When, where, and by whom, was the first settlement made?

3. Who visited the colony in 1638? Who was Whitefield?

* George II. of England was born in 1683. He succeeded his father, George I., in 1727. He died in 1760. He was a prince of very moderate abilities, parsimonious, and wholly regardless of science or literature; hasty and obstinate; but honest and open in his disposition.

† George Whitefield was born in Gloucester, England, in 1714. At the age of 18 he entered one of the colleges at Oxford, where he became acquainted with John and Charles Wesley, whose piety was ardent and singular, like his own. From the strict rules and methods of life which these young men followed, they were called METHODISTS, and they were the founders of the sect thus denominated. Whitefield took orders, being ordained by the bishop, June 20, 1736. Such was his strain of preaching, that at his first sermon at Gloucester, a complaint was made to the bishop that he had driven fifteen people mad; on which the prelate observed,

preacher of modern times, visited the colony. His benevolence and piety had led him to explore the habitations of the poor in England, where he found hundreds of helpless orphan children. His object now was to establish an orphan asylum in Georgia, where they might be trained up in the paths of virtue and religion.

4. In 1740, about 2,500 emigrants had settled in the colony. More than 1,500 of these were from among the poor of Europe, or persecuted Protestants. For their support the trustees had expended nearly \$500,000. The restrictions under which the first settlers labored, made it extremely difficult for them to obtain a comfortable subsistence. The government was a sort of military establishment, with general Oglethorpe at its head.

5. At this time the Spaniards had possession of Florida. Oglethorpe, fearing that they would combine with the Indians and invade Georgia, undertook an expedition against St. Augustine in May, 1740. This expedition proving unsuccessful, Oglethorpe with sorrow and regret returned to Georgia. In 1742, the Spaniards, in retaliation, resolved on invading Georgia.

6. Oglethorpe, having been informed of the proposed invasion, made preparation for a vigorous defense. He

4. What was the government of Georgia at first?

5. Why did Oglethorpe undertake an expedition against St. Augustine in Florida? Was it successful? What did the Spaniards do?

6. What did Oglethorpe then do? Where did he collect his forces?

that he hoped the madness would not be forgotten before the next Sunday. He visited this country seven times, and was instrumental in imparting the pure principles and elevated hopes of religion to thousands both in Great Britain and America. No preacher ever had such astonishing power over his auditory, or was attended by such multitudes as he sometimes addressed in the fields. He was of a very liberal spirit, and had little attachment to forms. He embraced all who loved the Lord Jesus Christ in sincerity. The following anecdote respecting his manner of preaching will serve to illustrate this part of his character. One day while preaching from the balcony of the court-house in Philadelphia, he cried out—"Father Abraham, who have you got in heaven—any *Episcopalians*?" "No!" "Any *Baptists*?" "No!" "Any *Presbyterians*?" "No!" "Have you any *Methodists* there?" "No!" "Have you any *Independents*, or *Seceders* there?" "No! No!" "Why, then, who have you there?" "We don't know those names here. All that are here are *Christians*—believers in Christ—men who have overcome by the blood of the Lamb and the word of his testimony!" "O, is this the case? Then God help me. God help us all to forget party names, and to become Christians in deed and in truth." He died at Newburyport, Mass., 1770, having been in the ministry 34 years.

applied to South Carolina for assistance. But alarmed at their own danger, the people of that colony prepared only for their own defense. The general, hoping to be able to resist the enemy till aid should arrive, collected all his forces at Frederica,* and waited the attack. Soon a Spanish fleet of 36 sail arrived, and landed more than 3,000 men on St. Simon's island.

7. Oglethorpe, learning that the Spanish army was separated into two divisions, determined to attack one of them by surprise. He advanced his troops in the night within two miles of one division; then selecting a small band, he advanced nearer, and while observing the situation of the enemy, a French soldier in his service fired his musket, and deserted to the Spanish camp.



OGLETHORPE SENDING A LETTER TO THE FRENCH
DESERTER.

8. The general, fearing that this deserter would make known to the enemy his bad situation, devised a very happy

7. What occurred as he was examining the situation of the enemy?

8. What expedient did he devise to save his little army?

* Frederica is situated on the west side of St. Simon's island, near the mouth of the Altamaha river.

expedient, by which his little army escaped. He wrote a letter to this French soldier, instructing him to make known to the Spaniards the weakness of the English forces, and urge them to attack Frederica ; or, if he should not succeed in this, that he should persuade them, if possible, to remain on the island, until the expected reinforcement should arrive from South Carolina. He also cautioned him not to drop a word respecting the attack which a British fleet was preparing to make upon St. Augustine. He concluded by promising him a large reward for his services.

9. The letter was sent by a Spanish prisoner, who promised to give it to the deserter. But instead of this he carried it directly to the Spanish general, which was just what Oglethorpe desired. The deserter was now supposed to be a spy, and was immediately put in irons. Soon after, three vessels of war appeared off the coast. The Spanish general supposing this to be the reinforcement spoken of in the letter, determined to attack the English without delay.

10. Oglethorpe, anticipating his designs, placed a party of his men in ambuscade, and falling suddenly upon the Spaniards, as they were advancing, killed many, threw the remainder into great disorder, and compelled them to retreat with a loss of about 200 men. Thus defeated, and fearing the approach of the reinforcement, the enemy embarked in haste, leaving a quantity of ammunition and guns behind them, and left the coast as soon as possible. By these successful maneuvers General Oglethorpe saved his own, and perhaps all the neighboring colonies.

11. The prosperity of the colony was not, however, established till 1752, when the trustees, disappointed in their expectations, gave up their charter. The king soon after established a government over Georgia, similar to those in the other colonies. The colony now began to flourish. Rice and indigo were cultivated, and soon became a source

9. What was done with this letter? What effect had it on the Spanish general? What did the Spanish general do?

10. What was the result? Which do you think was the best general, the English or the Spanish?

11. What took place in 1752? After this time? How is Georgia bounded? Its capital?

of wealth to the planters. Peace was occasionally interrupted by the Indians of Florida, but no general war occurred for many years.

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

1. The value of the western territories, or the great valley of the Mississippi, was well known to both France and England, and for many years was the cause of violent contentions between them. The French had settled in Canada, on the north of the English colonies, and in Louisiana, on the south. They had also explored the country* along the great lakes, the rivers Ohio and Mississippi, and had settlements at Detroit, Mackinaw, Green Bay, Vincennes, Kaskaskia, St. Genevieve, Arkansas, New Orleans, &c.; consequently, they founded their claim upon the actual exploration and occupation of the country. For the purpose of protecting their rights and vindicating their claims, they determined to connect their northern and southern possessions by a line of posts, and in 1753 they commenced erecting a chain of forts from Lake Erie to the gulf of Mexico. They contended that the English had no claim to territory west of the Alleghany mountains.

2. The English, on the other hand, claimed the country

1. Who laid claim to the western territories, or to the country west of the Alleghany mountains? To which do you think it belonged?

* Joseph Marquette, usually called Father Marquette, was a French Jesuit and missionary among the Indians of Canada and Michigan. Many accounts had been given by the Indians, of a great river at the west, which flowed southwardly, and which they called Mississippi. M. de Frontenac, the governor of Canada, desirous of ascertaining the truth of this report, and of making such other discoveries as opportunities would admit, sent Father Marquette and M. Joliet, with five other Frenchmen, on an expedition for that purpose. On the 13th of May, 1673, they left Green Bay in two birch-bark canoes, and sailed up Fox river. On the 10th of June, taking their two canoes on their shoulders, they crossed the narrow portage that divides the Fox river from the Wisconsin. Embarking on the broad Wisconsin, they sailed down that river, and in seven days entered the Mississippi—"the ocean-stream of the West." They proceeded as far as the mouth of the Arkansas river. They visited the various Indian tribes on the banks of the Mississippi, and were kindly received and welcomed by all. On the 17th of July they started on their return. In latitude 38°, they entered the Illinois, and thus shortened their route to Michigan. In September they arrived at Green Bay, having been absent four months. Marquette remained among the Miamis until his death, in 1675. M. Joliet returned to Quebec.

stretching westward as far as the Pacific Ocean, and built some forts and trading houses on Lake Ontario and the Ohio river, for the purpose of carrying on the fur trade with the Indians. The French formed an alliance with numerous tribes of Indians, and in 1753 prohibited the English traders from all intercourse with them. Some of these traders were seized by the French, and carried prisoners to Canada. In consequence of this, Dinwiddie, governor of Virginia, determined to send a remonstrance to the French governor. For this purpose he commissioned George Washington,* who had already given marks of future greatness, and who now cheerfully undertook this difficult enterprise. Though not yet twenty-two years of age, he traveled 400 miles, most of the way through a dreary wilderness, exposed to the savages, and delivered the message.

3. The reply of the French commander was not satisfactory, and the next spring, Washington, at the head of 400 men, marched against Fort Du Quesne,† built near the place now called Pittsburgh. On his way he surprised and took a detachment of the enemy. Shortly after, he erected a fort at the Great Meadows, and was there besieged by a large French force. After a brave defense, being overpowered, he surrendered, and marching out with the honors of war, returned with his regiment to Virginia.

4. War appearing inevitable, delegates from seven of the

2. Whom did Governor Dinwiddie send with a message to the French governor? How far did Washington travel?

3. What was done the next year? State the result of this expedition.

4. Delegates from how many states met at Albany? What did they do? What tribes were called the Six Nations? *Ans.* The Mohawks, Oneidas, Senecas, Onondagos, Delawares, and Tuscaroras. Why was their plan rejected?

* George Washington was born February 22, 1732, in Westmoreland county, Virginia. At fifteen he obtained a midshipman's warrant in the navy of Great Britain; but, in compliance with the wish of his mother, he immediately resigned it, and prepared himself for the profession of a surveyor and engineer. He was with Braddock at his defeat, and on his return to Mount Vernon, he married, and took no further part in public affairs, until 1774, when he was sent from Virginia to the Continental Congress. In 1775, he was appointed commander-in-chief of the national forces, and he acted in this capacity until the successful close of the war, in December, 1782, when he resigned his commission, and retired to private life. In 1789, he was unanimously elected first president, and held the office until 1797, when he once more retired to Mount Vernon, where he died in 1799. Of him it is truly said, "his history is that of his country." See the "Life of Washington."

† Du Kay.

provinces met at Albany, and formed an alliance with the confederated Six Nations of Indians. At this meeting, a plan of union was proposed for uniting all the forces of the colonies. This plan provided for a general council of delegates from all the colonies, and for a governor-general, appointed by the king. The council was to propose measures, and the governor was to accept or reject them as he chose. This plan was rejected by the British government, because it gave too much power to the colonies; and by the colonies, because it gave too much power to the king.

5. Early in the spring of 1755, Gen. Winslow, with an army of 3,000 men, left Massachusetts on an expedition to Nova Scotia, which was settled by the French. He soon took possession of the whole country, and fearing that the people would revolt as soon as he left the territory, he determined to break up their settlements. Accordingly the miserable inhabitants were torn from their homes, and transported to Boston, and afterward scattered among the colonies.

6. England had now determined to maintain her claims; and the same spring, Gen. Braddock was sent from Ireland, with a large force of English troops, to drive the French from her territories. A British fleet was also ordered to prevent the French from entering the St. Lawrence. Braddock arrived in Virginia in April, and in connection with the governors of the colonies, determined upon three expeditions; one against Du Quesne, another against forts Niagara and Frontenac, and a third against Crown Point.

7. Braddock immediately made preparations to march against Fort Du Quesne. After much delay in procuring provisions, he set out with 1,200 men, chosen from his army. The remainder, under Col. Dunbar, were to follow as soon as possible, with the stores. Braddock, as a British soldier, had acquired a good degree of skill in the science of war,

5. What was done in 1755? What do you think of Gen. Winslow's conduct in breaking up the settlements in Nova Scotia?

6. What did England do? When did Braddock arrive in Virginia? How many expeditions were now resolved upon?

7. Against what place did Braddock march? Was he acquainted with the modes of Indian warfare? What did Washington do?

as carried on in Europe, but knew nothing of the modes of Indian warfare. Washington explained to him their mode of attack, and warned him against proceeding in the regular order of march. He offered to go before the army with a company of colonial troops, and scour the woods, to guard against falling into an ambuscade.

8. But the general, despising both the enemy and the provincial officers, marched on in regular file. When he had advanced within seven miles of the French fort, passing through a thicket of wood and long grass, a sudden yell and destructive fire burst upon the army from every quarter. The French and Indians, invisible to the English, cut down their ranks with dreadful slaughter. Braddock,



DEATH OF BRADDOCK.

after five horses had been shot under him, received a fatal wound; and most of his officers fell with him.

9. Washington and his troops were the only part of the army that effectually resisted the enemy. The British troops retreated till they met the detachment with the bag-

8. Did Braddock comply with the advice of Washington? How did he proceed? State what happened. Would you have done as Braddock did? Do you always follow the advice of those who know what is best?

9. What did Dunbar do? How many were killed in "Braddock's defeat?"

gage. Terrified at the fate of Braddock and his officers, Col. Dunbar, on whom the command now devolved, marched his remaining troops to Philadelphia, leaving the frontier settlement to endure all the horrors of savage warfare. In this battle, sixty-four officers, and one half of the army, were either killed or wounded.

10. The expedition against Crown Point was conducted by Gen. Johnson, with a body of New England troops. He marched, in the month of August, as far as Lake George. Hearing that an army had arrived in Canada from France, and was marching down upon him, he immediately erected a fortification, and sent forward 1,000 men to meet the enemy. The French perceiving their approach, hid themselves, and fell upon the English by surprise. Colonel Williams, their leader, fell, and the troops fled to their fortifications. The enemy pursued, and after some delay, assailed the fort.

11. The English recovered their courage, and by a well-directed charge of their artillery, put the Indians and Canadians to flight. Dieskau, their commander, was mortally wounded. On the next day, a detachment coming from New Hampshire to join Gen. Johnson, surprised and defeated about 400 of the enemy. In this battle the English lost about 200 men, and the enemy 700. Johnson would not proceed any further, and the expedition was abandoned. The attempt against Niagara was also unsuccessful. Gen. Shirley, who had command of the forces, was overtaken by the long rains of autumn, which disheartened his troops, and compelled him to return.

12. During the winter some of the colonies suffered extremely from the barbarity of the savages. But preparations were extensively made to commence operations again in the spring. The failures of the last campaign increased

10. Describe the expedition against Crown Point. Where is Crown Point? *Ans.* On Lake Champlain, in the State of New York, fifteen miles north of Ticonderago, and about 100 miles north of Albany. This fort, so celebrated in the American wars, is now demolished. The town now contains about 1,800 inhabitants.

11. What was the result of the expedition against Niagara? What, and where was Niagara? *Ans.* It was a strong fort on Niagara river, at its entrance into Lake Ontario, fifteen miles below the great falls.

12. What was done during the winter?

the caution of the soldiers, but did not diminish their courage. Shirley, who had control of affairs, proposed that attempts should again be made against the forts Du Quesne, Niagara, and Crown Point.

13. Early in the spring of 1756, General Webb arrived from England, and brought intelligence that the king was displeased with the management of Shirley, but highly approved of the conduct of Johnson, and had conferred upon him distinguished honor. In July, Lord Loudon arrived, as commander-in-chief of all the British forces in America. But the season was so far advanced, and so great was the difficulty in procuring supplies, that little or nothing was effected.

14. The English fort at Oswego was besieged on the 12th of August, by General Montcalm. On the 14th, the English proposed terms of submission. They were accepted by the French, but barbarously violated as soon as the garrison was in their hands. Many of the British soldiers were seized by the savages, and horribly butchered. Gen. Webb, who had been sent to the assistance of the fort, hearing that it had already been taken, returned to Albany. Lord Loudon now ordered great preparations to be made for vigorous operations in the spring.

15. Thus another season passed away, and nothing of importance had been accomplished. The officers and troops from the colonies were evidently crippled in all their operations by the sluggish movements of the British commanders. In 1757, the first object of the English was to get possession of the fort at Louisburg. For this purpose 12,000 troops, and a fleet of fifteen ships, met at Halifax. But hearing that the French had just received a large reinforcement from France, they abandoned the enterprise.

16. In the mean time the French were not idle. Mont-

13. Who arrived in the spring? In July? What was effected?

14. What took place on the 12th of August, 1756? Where is Oswego?
Ans. A town at the mouth of the Oswego river, on Lake Ontario. This fort is still kept up, and is an important military post. How were the English treated after their surrender?

15. What did the English attempt to do in 1757? Where is Louisburg?
Ans. The capital of the island of Cape Breton in the gulf of St. Lawrence?

calm made an assault upon Fort William Henry, on Lake George. By the bravery of the garrison he was defeated. But shortly after, with a stronger force, he renewed the attempt. On account of the cruel neglect of General Webb to send assistance, who with an army of 4,000 men was stationed at Fort Edward, only 15 miles distant, the commander of the fort was compelled to submit on these conditions: his men were to march out unarmed, and to be protected from the savages. But these conditions were shamefully broken. No sooner were they exposed, than the Indians rushed upon them, plundered, and butchered without restraint. It was a horrid scene. The yells of the savages, the shrieks of the helpless soldiers, and their dying groans, rent the heavens, while the French looked on unmoved, or at least, rendered no assistance.

17. Thus shamefully closed the third campaign. It ought to be told, to the disgrace of the British officers, that their jealousy and contempt for the colonial troops, was the principal cause of all this ill success. Thousands fell a sacrifice to their pride and folly. The king, indignant at these disgraceful results, appointed a new ministry, and placed the celebrated William Pitt* at the head of affairs. The aspect of things was now entirely changed. New officers were appointed to command the British forces. New England raised 15,000 men, and Gen. Abercrombie, who was now commander-in-chief, commenced the fourth campaign at the head of 50,000 troops.

18. About the first of June, 1758, General Amherst, with

16. Who made an attack upon Fort William Henry? To whom is to be attributed the surrender of the fort? On what conditions did the garrison surrender? State the massacre that followed.

17. What was the cause of the ill success of the English? Who was now placed at the head of the British ministry? Who was appointed commander-in-chief; and with how many men did he commence the fourth campaign? What is the meaning of campaign?

18. Describe the capture of Louisburg; the attack on Ticonderoga? Where was the fortress of Ticonderoga?

* William Pitt, earl of Chatham, was born in 1708, and died in 1778. He was one of the most illustrious statesmen that England ever had, one of those that ruled his country solely by the superiority of his genius. As an orator, he was unrivaled. The music and majesty of his voice, the persuasive gracefulness and irresistible force of his action, and his power of eye, all carried conviction with his argument.

14,000 soldiers, commenced the siege of Louisburg. On the 26th of July, he took possession of the fort. About 1,500 of the French were killed, and 5,000 carried prisoners to England. In the mean time, Abercrombie marched against the enemy at Ticonderoga. This fortress was very difficult of access. It was situated on the river between Lake George and Lake Champlain, nearly surrounded by water, and strongly fortified in front. On approaching the fort, Lord Howe, a brave and valuable officer was killed. Abercrombie maintained a severe contest of four hours, and after a loss of 2,000 men, retreated to the head of Lake George.

19. On the 27th of August, Colonel Bradstreet, with 3,000 men, took possession of Fort Frontenac, on Lake Ontario. By this exploit, he deprived the French and Indians of a large supply of arms and stores, besides a fleet of nine vessels of war, which lay in the harbor.

20. By this time an expedition had also been made against Fort Du Quesne, by General Forbes, with an army of 8,000 men. After a most laborious march, he arrived at the fort, and found it deserted. The French, fearing a siege, had left their post and sailed down the Ohio. General Forbes, in honor of William Pitt, the prime minister of England, called the place Pittsburgh. Thus closed the successful campaign of 1758. This change of fortune must be ascribed to the energies of Pitt, and to his wisdom in the choice of men to execute his plans.

21. Animated by the success of the last year, Pitt marked out a bold plan for the entire subjugation of the French possessions in America. Québec, Niagara, and Ticonderoga, were now the strongholds of the enemy. The English forces were recruited, and in 1759, an expedition was commenced against each of these places. The one against Quebec, was placed under the command of Gen.

19. When and by whom was Fort Frontenac taken? Where was Fort Frontenac? *Ans.* In Canada, now called Kingston.

20. What did General Forbes do? Why had the French left Port Du Quesne? What did Forbes call this place? In honor of whom was it called Pittsburgh? To whom must the success of this campaign be ascribed?

21. Against what places were expeditions commenced in 1759?

Wolfe; that against Ticonderoga and Crown Point, the central and main army, was to be commanded by General Amherst, the new commander-in-chief; and the other against Niagara, by General Prideaux.

22. General Amherst commenced preparations for his part of the enterprise early in the winter; but it was not until the last of May, that his troops reached Albany.* About the middle of June, he marched against Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and finding both of these places deserted by the enemy, who had fled to the Isle Aux Noix, he proceeded up the lake. But being met by violent storms, he was obliged to return to Crown Point.

23. In July, General Prideaux commenced the siege of the fort at Niagara. The French, to save this important post, rallied all their forces in that region. Prideaux was killed during the siege. Sir William Johnson, who now took command, observing the movements of the enemy, intrenched his forces and prepared for defense. The French, with their Indian allies, came up and made an impetuous assault; but in less than an hour, were entirely defeated. On the next day the English took possession of the fort.

24. But the most glorious exploit of this year is yet to be

22. Describe the expedition of General Amherst.

23. Who took the command after Prideaux was killed? What was the result?

* Yankee Doodle was written by Dr. Shackburg of the British army, while it lay encamped, in 1759, on the eastern bank of the Hudson, under General Amherst. The colonies were called upon for troops to march against Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and as they came in, their march, accoutrements, dress, &c., &c., furnished matter of amusement to the wits of the British army. The tunes, or marches played, were about two centuries old. Dr. S. composed a tune to please brother Jonathan, and recommended it to the American officers as a celebrated air, called Yankee Doodle. The joke took, and in a few days nothing was heard in the American camp, but the tune of YANKEE DOODLE! In less than 30 years from that time, Lord Cornwallis and his army, marched into the American lines to the tune of *Yankee Doodle*.—See *Amer. En.* vol. 13, p. 297.

The word "Yankee," according to Thatcher, in his *Military Journal*, p. 19, originated as follows: "A farmer of Cambridge, Mass., named Jonathan Hastings, who lived about the year 1713, used it as a favorite *cant word* to express *excellence*; as, a *yankee* good horse, or *yankee* good cider. The students of the college hearing him use it a great deal, adopted it, and called him *Yankee Jonathan*; and as he was rather a weak man, the students, when they wished to denote a character of that kind, would call him *Yankee Jonathan*. Like other *cant words*, it spread and came finally to be applied to the New Englanders, as a term of reproach. Some suppose the term to be a corrupt Indian pronunciation of the word English, whom they called *Yengeese*, *Yenglees*, *Yanglees*, *Yanklees*, and finally *Yankee*.

recorded. General Wolfe,* who had distinguished himself at Louisburg, undertook the reduction of Quebec. This city stands on the north side of the St. Lawrence, and is strongly defended by nature. It consists of two parts, an upper and a lower town. The lower town is built on a plain between the shore of the river and the base of a very steep rock, called the Heights of Abraham. The upper town is built on the top of this rock, which runs parallel with the river. The east side is protected by the river St. Charles, which empties into the St. Lawrence, and in which were floating batteries and armed ships.

25. Wolfe, with an army of 8,000 men, landed on the island of Orleans, just below the city. Soon after, he erected batteries on the bank of the St. Lawrence, opposite the city. But so wide was the river, that his cannon could not produce much effect upon the forts of the enemy. He now determined to cross the river, land below the city, and attack the French army which lay intrenched on the banks of the St. Charles. In this attempt he was defeated, with the loss of 500 men. He next attempted to destroy the shipping, but succeeded only in burning one magazine.

26. Wolfe now saw that the difficulties to be encountered were almost insurmountable. But his daring spirit thirsted for the glory of victory, or death in the attempt. Hearing of the success of his fellow-officers at Niagara and Ticonderoga, and dreading the disgrace of a failure in his enterprise, he determined to hazard the bold attempt of scaling the rock, and approach the enemy in a manner least expected. His troops had caught the fire of their leader, and were ready for the most daring exploit.

27. There was only one narrow spot between the rocks

24. Who undertook the reduction of Quebec in 1759? Give a description of Quebec.

25, 26. Mention some of his attempts to take Quebec.

27. In what manner did he gain the Heights of Abraham?

* James Wolfe was born in Westerham, England, in 1727. He entered young into the army, and soon distinguished himself as a brave and skillful officer. He was formed by nature for military greatness. His apprehensions were quick and clear, his judgment sound, and his courage daring. He was manly, gentle, kind, and conciliating in his manners. He died in the 33d year of his age.

where it was possible to land and ascend the Heights. To conceal his design, Wolfe sailed his fleet several miles up the river. In the night he set his army on board of boats, and floated down with the stream to the place of landing. Wolfe was the first man on shore. His troops at once began to climb the rock, and by the aid of bushes and projecting crags, they gained the summit. Here they found a guard, which they soon subdued, and before morning the whole army was arrayed on the plains above.

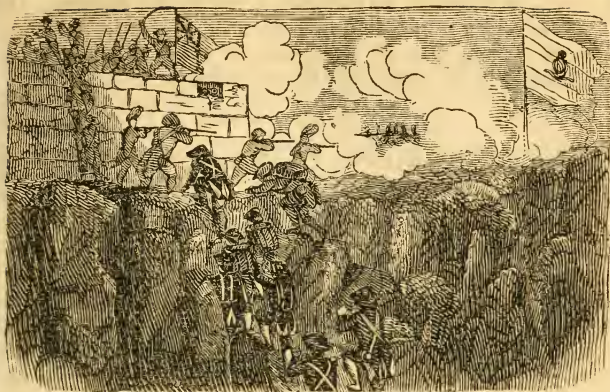
28. Montcalm,* the French general, was amazed at this daring achievement, and immediately marched his army to meet the English. His troops were fresh and eager for battle. The Indians and Canadians first advanced, but Wolfe ordered his men to reserve their strength for the main body of the enemy. The battle was hot and bloody on both sides. After a destructive fire kept up for some time, Wolfe ordered his grenadiers to charge bayonet and rush upon the French. At this moment he received a mortal wound. About the same time, Montcalm, fighting in front of his battalion, received a mortal wound, and his second in command almost at the same instant fell by his side.

29. Wolfe died in the triumphs of victory. In the first part of the battle he received a wound in the wrist; soon after, another more severe in the lower part of the body. Concealing his wounds, he cheered on his men, and was advancing at the head of his grenadiers, with charged bayonets, when a ball pierced his breast. As he fell, he was caught by his attendant, and carried out of the line. As he lay fainting in death, with his head on the arm of another, "Tell me," said he, "do the enemy give way there? Tell me, for I can not see." He now reclined his head and

28. What did Montcalm then do? Describe the battle.

29. How many wounds did Wolfe receive? What were the last words of Wolfe? Of Montcalm?

* Louis Joseph Montcalm, Marquis of St. Vernon, was born in France, near Nismes, in 1712. He was carefully educated, and entered the military service in his 15th year, and distinguished himself on several occasions in Italy, Bohemia, and Germany. In 1756, he was sent to Canada as commander-in-chief of the French forces in America. He possessed all those qualities requisite to form a great and skillful commander. He was brave, generous, noble, and compassionate. He died in the 47th year of his age.



BATTLE ON THE HEIGHTS OF ABRAHAM.—DEATH OF WOLFE.

closed his eyes. Soon the distant cry, "they fly, they fly," aroused the expiring hero. "Who fly?" said he. "The French, the French," was the reply. "Then," said he, "I die happy," and instantly expired. Montcalm also died a glorious death. He was carried into the city, and when told that his wound was mortal, he replied, "So much the better; I shall not then live to see the surrender of Quebec." His last moments were employed in writing, with his own hand, a letter to the English general, recommending the French prisoners to his care and humanity. Thus died Wolfe and Montcalm, in the prime of life. They were noble, generous, brave, every way worthy of being competitors. In talents, in military skill, in personal courage, they were equals, and their death was universally lamented.

30. Five days after the battle, the city was surrendered to the English. The next spring the French attempted to retake Quebec, but did not succeed. The English forces were soon after directed against Montreal. On the 8th of September, 1760, that city, with all the important posts of the

30. When was the city surrendered? When was Montreal taken? When was a treaty of peace concluded between France and England? What did the French relinquish?

French in Canada, was delivered up to the English. In 1763, a treaty of peace was concluded at Paris, by which France relinquished all her claims in the northern parts of America. Thus ended the French war.

EVENTS LEADING TO THE REVOLUTION.

1. The success of this war against the French and Indians, relieved the colonies from all apprehensions of a foreign invasion, and the dread of savage hostilities. They felt secure under the protection of Great Britain, she now being mistress of the ocean, and at peace with the world. The troops of the colonies, during the war, had had a fair opportunity of comparing their own skill, courage, and strength, with that of the bravest soldiers of Europe. They had proved themselves in no respect inferior in war, and by their enterprise and success in commerce and trade, they had already excited the admiration of the civilized world.

2. England for many years had been growing jealous of the colonies, and in several instances had endeavored to destroy their liberties. She now commenced a course of manifest injustice toward them, which, instead of humbling them, led them to combine all their energies to resist her oppression. England regarded the colonists not as entitled to the privileges of subjects, but rather as slaves, who were to toil and suffer for her aggrandizement. She had, indeed, been at great expense to defend them against the encroachments of the French and Indians; but for all this, she either had been, or soon would have been, amply rewarded.

3. Soon after the war, the British government asserted the right to tax the people of America. In 1764, a bill was passed, imposing a heavy duty on certain goods imported

1. Of what were the colonists relieved by the successful termination of the French war? What is said of Great Britain at this time? How did the American troops compare with those of Europe? What is said of their enterprise in commerce?

2. How did England feel toward the colonies? How did she begin to treat them?

3. What right did the British government claim soon after the war? What did they do in 1764?

into the colonies. The principle of taxation was considered by the Americans as altogether unconstitutional and unjust. They were not permitted to send representatives to parliament to plead their cause; and therefore, according to the English law, they could not be justly taxed.

4. The next year the celebrated "*stamp act*" was passed. This bill required that every piece of paper or parchment, which was used in the transaction of business, should have a stamp upon it, and that for every such piece, a tax, greater or less, should be paid to government. This bill was very strongly opposed by some members of parliament, especially by Colonel Barre, who, knowing the spirit of the colonists, made an eloquent speech against it. But it passed by an almost unanimous vote.

5. When the news arrived in America, the people were filled with grief and indignation. Riots broke out in the cities, and the stamp act was exhibited as "the folly of England and the ruin of America." The bells were muffled, and tolled "the knell of freedom." Combinations, styling themselves "sons of liberty," were formed to resist the enforcement of this obnoxious law. The general assemblies protested against it; addresses and appeals were made to the people of England, showing the injustice of the law, and praying that it might be repealed. The officers of the British government were objects of popular hatred, and most of them were compelled to disregard the stamp law, or resign their offices.

6. In October, agreeably to a recommendation of Massachusetts, delegates from nine of the colonies met in congress at New York, to consult for the general safety. They passed an act, declaring their rights and liberties as lawful subjects of Great Britain. They remonstrated against the

4. What famous act was passed in 1765?

5. What effect had the "*stamp act*" on the colonies? What did the people do?

6. When and where was the first congress, or general meeting of the colonies held? Which of the colonies sent delegates? *Ans.* Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and South Carolina. What did they do? To what extent was the stamp act opposed? *Ans.* Probably not a single stamp was ever used in the colonies.

stamp act, and petitioned for its immediate repeal. The merchants of that city entered into agreement not to import any more goods from England, till the stamp act was repealed. In all parts of the country, the people gave up imported goods, and used home manufactures. They even abstained from eating lamb, that the growth of wool might be increased.

7. But a change had now taken place in England. The people of that country began to feel the bad effects of this check upon their trade with America, and a proposition was made in parliament to repeal the stamp act. William Pitt, who was not present when the act was passed, made a powerful speech in favor of repealing it. He declared that England had "no right" to tax the colonies. The act was repealed. The news caused universal joy throughout America. Bells were rung, cannon were fired, and festivals were held.

8. But in repealing the stamp act, the British government by no means intended to give up the principle of taxation in every form. In 1767, a duty was imposed on tea, glass, and other articles. The colonies again took the alarm, and manifested their indignation as before. The people of Massachusetts sent delegates to Boston, to consult with the citizens of that place, upon measures for resisting the king and parliament. The citizens of Boston had already incurred the displeasure of his majesty, and General Gage was now ordered to repair to that place, with a regiment of troops to protect the public officers, and quell all disturbances.

9. The soldiers arrived, and were stationed in different

7. Was there any opposition to the stamp act in England? *Ans.* There was. Many articles were written and published, showing the injustice of the act. Many speakers in both houses of parliament denied their right of taxing the colonies. Lord Camden, in the house of lords, in strong language, said; "My position is this; I repeat it; I will maintain it to my last hour, **TAXATION AND REPRESENTATION ARE INSEPARABLE.** This position is founded on the laws of nature. It is more. It is itself an eternal law of nature. For whatever is a man's own, is absolutely his own. No man has a right to take it from him without his own consent. Whoever attempts to do it, attempts an injury. Whoever does it, commits a robbery." What did Wm. Pitt say? Was the act repealed? What effect had this news on the colonies?

8. What was done in 1767? What did the people of Massachusetts do? What British general was ordered to Boston with a regiment of troops?

9. What took place on the 5th of March, 1770?



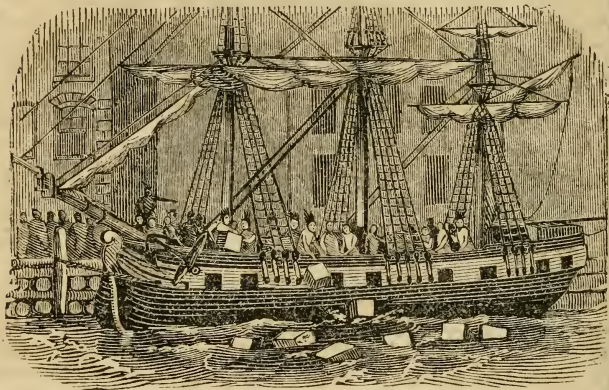
BOSTON MASSACRE.

parts of the city. Their insolence often excited the people to resistance, and instead of subduing the spirit of liberty, daily increased it. On the 5th of March, 1770, a riot took place, during which, a party of soldiers being insulted, fired upon the citizens, killed three, and wounded several others. The next day they were arrested and imprisoned. This event was afterward commemorated as the *Boston Massacre*. At the demand of the citizens, the troops were removed from the city. The dead were buried with great pomp and solemnity. Soon after, the soldiers were brought to trial, and two of them found guilty of manslaughter.

10. To appease the people of the colonies, parliament repealed all the duties except that on tea. But America was not to be satisfied, so long as the principle of taxation was not renounced. The value of a few pence on a pound of tea, was not what she contended for. The right to take one penny, implied the right to take a thousand. The colonies *denied the right*. Tea, therefore, was at once banished from the tables of all, both rich and poor, who regarded the liberties of their country.

10. What did parliament do to appease the colonists? Why were not the people satisfied?

11. For two or three years no tea was imported into the colonies. In 1773, the government of England determined to force this article into their ports. Accordingly the East India company was directed to send several cargoes of tea to America. The people of New York and Philadelphia would not suffer the tea to be brought ashore. At Boston, the masters of the ships met with such violent opposition, that they would gladly have returned to England immediately, but the king's governor would not permit them to leave the port.



THROWING THE TEA OVERBOARD.

12. At a large meeting of the citizens, it was resolved, that "the tea should not be landed." One night a party of men, dressed in the garb of Indians, went on board the ships, broke open the chests, and poured all the tea into the ocean. This bold exploit exasperated the king and parliament; and to humble the Bostonians, they passed an act to blockade the port, break up their trade, and remove the custom-house to Salem.

11. Did they continue the use of tea? What took place in 1773? What did the people of New York and Philadelphia do?

12. What was done by the people of Boston? Did they do right in throwing the tea overboard? What did the king and parliament now do?

13. This act, called the Boston *Port Bill*, produced great distress in Boston, as it at once deprived the greater part of the population of their usual means of subsistence. But the inhabitants soon found that the whole country were sympathizing with them. Contributions were raised in other places, for the relief of all who were thrown out of business by this bill. The people of Salem refused to take the trade of their "suffering neighbors," and gave up their wharves and storehouses, for the relief of the Boston merchants.

14. In Virginia a day of fasting and prayer was observed. It was devoutly implored, that God would give to the people one heart and one mind, firmly to oppose every invasion of American rights. It was a serious time. The people in all parts of the country united in a "Solemn League and Covenant," to break off all intercourse with Great Britain. All seemed actuated by an invincible spirit of patriotism and love of liberty. A few, however, favored the cause of England. These were called *Tories*, while those who favored the cause of American rights, were called *Whigs*. The lovers of liberty had no hope of success against the military force of England; but they did hope that continued resistance would lead her to yield to the claims of justice.

15. Yet the colonies now determined to prepare for a united and desperate struggle. On the 5th of September, 1774, delegates from all the provinces, except Georgia, met in congress at Philadelphia. Their deliberations were secret. Nothing was to be made public without a vote of congress. They insisted on the rights of the colonies, and resolved to break off all trade with Great Britain, until these rights were acknowledged. They sent addresses to the king and people of England, expressing a warm attachment to the

13. What was this act called? How were the Bostonians regarded by the people of the country? Was not this act directly calculated to benefit the people of Salem? What was their conduct?

14. What was done in Virginia? What did the people do in all parts of the country? What two parties were now formed? Who were called Tories? Who were called Whigs?

15. What did the colonies now determine to do? When and where did a provincial congress meet? From what provinces did delegates attend? Who was chosen president of this congress? *Ans.* John Hancock. What did this congress do?

mother country, and declaring, that they desired nothing, which, as loyal subjects, they had not a right to claim. After a session of eight weeks, having recommended a meeting of another congress the next year, they dissolved.

16. Their addresses displayed so much force of argument, so much knowledge of political science, and so much glowing patriotism, that a strong impression was made in favor of their cause. In the British senate, Mr. Pitt made a most eloquent speech in behalf of America. He spoke in the highest terms of the wisdom and dignity of the congress at Philadelphia.

17. In all the colonies, the enactments and resolutions of congress were observed with the utmost respect and obedience. Every preparation was now making for war. Military stores, arms, ammunition, &c., were provided in all the colonies. The people began to train themselves in the use of the sword and musket. Massachusetts, especially, pursued a decided course in opposition to the governor, and in preparation for conflict.

18. General Gage,* who had been appointed governor by the king, took possession of all the fortifications around Boston. An army was quartered in the city, ready to march at any moment, according to his orders. But with all this array of force, he could not suppress the combinations of the people. An assembly was called, consisting of delegates from all the towns in the province. Measures were taken to raise an army of 12,000 men, and a strong force was kept in readiness to march at a moment's warning.

19. Matters were now fast approaching to a serious crisis. Nothing had been done in England to satisfy the colonies.

16. What effect did their addresses produce ?

17. What did the people begin to do ?

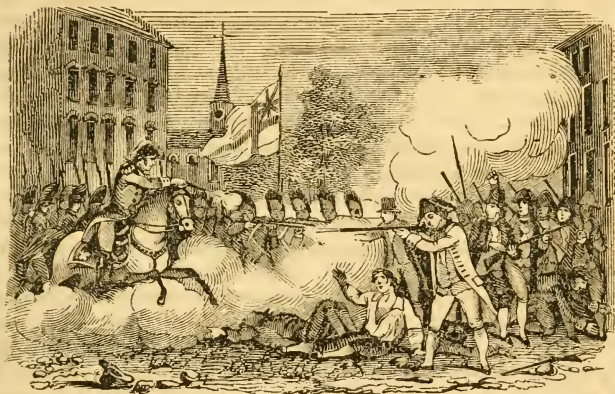
18. Who was now appointed governor of Massachusetts by the king ? What was called in Massachusetts at this time ? What measures were taken by this assembly ?

19. What was now evident ? What is said of the Americans ?

* Thomas Gage, the last governor of Massachusetts appointed by the king, was an officer of some distinction in the British army. He arrived at Boston, May 13, 1774, and began that course of illegal and oppressive acts which hastened on the war of the Revolution. In Oct. 1775, he was recalled to England, and was succeeded in the command by Sir William Howe. He died in 1787.

The Americans were reproached in parliament as "cowardly, undisciplined, feeble," &c. It was evident, too, from the strong force which had already arrived from England, that she designed to compel the colonists to submit to her unjust laws. But the Americans, except a small party, who were courting the favor of the king, were united and firm in their determination, weak as they were, to maintain their rights against the strongest nation in the world.

WAR OF THE REVOLUTION.



BATTLE OF LEXINGTON.

1. At Concord, the colonists, by authority from the provincial congress, had collected a quantity of provisions and military stores. These, General Gage resolved to destroy. For this purpose he despatched from Boston a body of 800

1. What had the people collected at the town of Concord? Where is Concord? *Ans.* It is 18 miles northwest of Boston. How many men did General Gage send to destroy these stores? Why did he wish to destroy them? Did these troops meet with any opposition? Where? Where is Lexington? *Ans.* It is eleven miles northwest of Boston. Describe the battle of Lexington.

troops on the evening of the 18th of April. News of this design was immediately sent to Lexington and Concord, and early next morning the militia of these towns had assembled in arms for defense. Bells and signal guns soon spread the alarm. When the British troops came to Lexington, they found the militia assembled near the meeting-house. Major Pitcairn, commander of the British, rode up to them and cried with a loud voice, "Disperse, disperse, you rebels; throw down your arms and disperse." His orders not being obeyed, he discharged his pistol, and commanded his men to fire upon them. After returning a few shots, the militia fled, This was the first battle in the war of the Revolution.

2. The British proceeded to Concord, and destroyed the greater part of the military stores. But the militia of the neighboring towns were fast collecting, and opening a deadly fire upon them, and they were obliged to retreat with all possible haste. But they did not escape without great loss. A galling fire was poured upon them from behind the fences, trees, and stone walls, along the entire road. When they arrived at Lexington, exhausted by their march, they were saved from total destruction by Lord Percy, who, with 900 men, and two pieces of cannon, had been sent from Boston to meet them.

3. On their way to Boston, they were incessantly harassed by the provincials, who kept up a well-directed fire from both sides of the road. During the day the British lost 273 men; the loss of the Americans was 88 killed and wounded. This battle was the signal of war. Intelligence of it flew like lightning. Couriers, beating a drum, galloped in every direction, shouting in thrilling tones, "To arms! to arms! liberty or death!" The whole country was in a blaze. All ranks and conditions were aroused, and seizing their weapons, hastened to the scene of action. In a few days, the British forces in Boston were surrounded by twenty

2. What did the British now do? After this, what were they obliged to do? Describe their return to Boston.

3. How many did the British lose in their excursion to Concord? How many the Americans? What expedition was undertaken shortly after the battle of Lexington?

thousand men. Every exertion was made to secure ammunition, arms, and fortifications for the provincials. Shortly after this, Colonel Ethan Allen* of Vermont, and Colonel Benedict Arnold,† of Connecticut, at the head of a company of volunteers, marched against the forts at Ticonderoga and Crown Point, on the western shore of Lake Champlain, commanding the entrance into Canada.

4. On the night of the 10th of May, 1775, Allen arrived at Ticonderoga, and with 83 men pressed his way into the fort while the garrison were asleep. Three huzzas aroused them from their slumbers. Allen rushed to the apartments of Capt. De Laplace, and with a drawn sword over the half awakened commander, demanded a surrender of the fortress. "By what authority do you demand it?" inquired the as-

4. In whose name did Allen demand a surrender of the fort? When was Crown Point taken? What did they find in these forts?

* Ethan Allen was born in Roxbury, Litchfield county, Connecticut. At an early age, he emigrated to Vermont, and about 1770, he took an active part in favor of the "Green Mountain Boys," as the settlers were then called, in opposition to the government of New York. When called to take the field, he showed himself an able leader and an intrepid soldier. The same year that he took Ticonderoga, he was taken prisoner near Montreal, in an attempt to reduce that city. He was now placed in irons and sent to England, with an assurance, that he would meet with a halter on his arrival there. He was, however, after a few months, brought back to Halifax; and after being kept there five months, he was removed to New York. He was kept a prisoner here one year and a half, and then exchanged for Colonel Campbell. While a prisoner at New York, as he was standing on the deck one day, a British officer said to him, "Allen, if you will quit the '*rebel service*,' and join us, we will make you an officer in our army, and give you all the land you can see off there, in New Jersey." "You make me think," said Allen, "of an account I read in a good old book that I have at home, how the devil once promised our Saviour all the kingdoms of the earth, if he would fall down and worship him; when the rascally old knave did not own a foot of land in all creation." He returned to Vermont in 1778, and died at his estate in Colchester, in 1789.

† Benedict Arnold, at the commencement of the war, lived in New Haven. There is some doubt as regards the place of his birth. He embraced with enthusiasm the cause of the colonies, and, on account of his daring courage, was at once promoted to office in the provincial army. He exhibited great skill and bravery in most of the battles in which he was engaged. In his marches and attacks, he usually acted on the maxim, "In war, expedition is equivalent to strength." He often surprised the enemy by the boldness of his plans, and the rapidity of his movements. His daring courage may excite our admiration, but his character presents little to be commended. He was vicious, extravagant, cruel, vain, fickle, luxurious, and mean. After he had turned traitor to his country, and joined the British, he committed the most enormous barbarities. On a certain occasion, he said to an American captain whom he had taken prisoner, "What do you suppose the Americans would do with me if I should fall into their hands?" "They would cut off the leg," replied the officer, that was wounded while you were fighting the battles of freedom, and bury it with the honors of war, and then hang the remainder of your body in gibbets." After the close of the war, he went to England, and received 30,000 pounds sterling, as a reward for his villany. He died in London, in 1801, detested by all who knew him.



ALLEN DEMANDING THE SURRENDER OF THE FORT.

tonished Laplace. "I demand it," said Allen, "in the name of the great Jehovah, and of the Continental Congress." This summons could not be disobeyed. It was too high authority to be disputed, and the fort was at once surrendered. The following day, Crown Point was taken without resistance. In these two forts the Americans found more than a hundred pieces of cannon, and a large quantity of other military stores.

5. The noise of war soon alarmed all the colonies. Many had not expected open hostilities. But the blow was no sooner struck, than they all resolved to join heart and hand with New England in the desperate struggle. On the 10th of May, the Continental Congress again assembled at Philadelphia. John Hancock, of Massachusetts, was chosen president. A petition was sent to the king, and an address to the people of England. Yet vigorous measures were employed to sustain the war. Articles of confederation were adopted under the title of the UNITED COLONIES. They voted

5. When did congress again assemble? Under what title did they enter into articles of confederation? How large an army did they vote to raise? Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the American forces?

to raise an army of 20,000 men, and appointed George Washington, who was one of the delegates from Virginia, commander-in-chief of the American forces. He soon repaired to Cambridge, and took command of the army, July 3, 1775.

6. A solemn declaration, showing the causes and necessity of taking up arms, was prepared by congress, to be read before the army and the people of the colonies, closing as follows: "Our cause is just, our union is perfect. Our internal resources are great, and if necessary, foreign assistance undoubtedly may be obtained. With hearts fortified by these animating reflections, we most solemnly declare, that the arms we have been compelled by our enemies to assume, we will, in defiance of every hazard, with unabating firmness and perseverance, employ for the preservation of our liberties; being with one mind resolved to die freemen, rather than to live slaves." For the purpose of defraying the expenses of the war, congress issued bills of credit to the amount of three million dollars, and pledged the faith of the United Colonies for their redemption.

7. The troops of New England were already in arms, and had besieged the British army in Boston. The heights of Charlestown, Breed's hill, and Bunker hill, command the city. The Americans having received information that the enemy intended to occupy these heights and advance into the country, Col. Prescott was sent, in the evening of the 16th of June, to form an entrenchment on Bunker hill. Finding, on his arrival, that though this hill was the most commanding position, it was too far from the enemy to annoy their shipping and army, he determined to fortify Breed's hill, which is nearer the city, and began the work soon after midnight. By daylight they had constructed a redout eight rods square, in which they could shelter themselves.

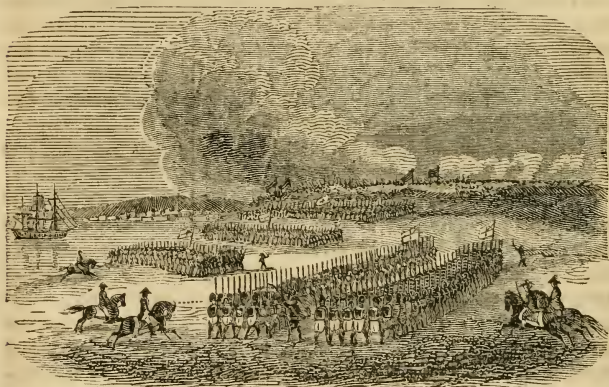
8. Early in the morning, the British discovered with as-

6. What did congress prepare to be read to the army and people?

7. What heights command the city of Boston? What was Col. Prescott ordered to do on the evening of the 16th of June? Did he do as he was ordered? Why not?

8. What did the British do on the morning of the 17th of June? Describe the battle of Breed's hill; or, as it is usually called, Bunker hill.

tonishment the works of the Americans, and immediately opened upon them an incessant fire from the ships in the harbor, and from their fortifications on the Boston side. The roar of cannon soon alarmed the inhabitants of the city and adjacent towns, and soon the steeples, the roofs of the houses, and all the surrounding hills, were crowded with anxious spectators, who were awaiting with deep and silent emotion the event of the day. The Americans, heedless of the iron storm that rattled around them, toiled on unceasingly, and before noon had nearly completed a trench to the Mystic river. As nothing was effected by the cannon of the British, about 3,000 regular soldiers, under Generals Howe and Pigot, were landed at Moreton's Point, and arrayed at the foot of the hill.



BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL.

9. These advanced to the charge in two divisions, resolved to carry the height by assault. The Americans,

9. What did General Putnam say to the American soldiers, as the British were advancing to the first attack? *Ans.* "Boys," said he, "keep cool—keep cool; don't fire a gun till you can see the whites of their eyes; and then bore it into them." Describe the first assault. Why did the Americans remain in silence and reserve their fire? Had they any ammunition to waste at that time? What was the effect of the fire of the Americans?

prompted by the boldness and zeal of General Putnam and other brave officers, were eager for the combat. But, in obedience to their orders, they waited in silence the advance of the enemy, and reserved their fire till they were within a few rods of the breastwork, and then poured upon them a deluge of balls. The British fell by hundreds; ranks fell upon ranks, columns were broken, and the whole line fled in confusion to the shore.

10. The officers, fearing the disgrace of a defeat, rallied their troops, and urged them on, at the point of their swords, to a second attack. In the mean time Charlestown had been set on fire by the enemy, and six hundred houses wrapped in flames added an awful sublimity to the scene. Again the columns pressed gallantly forward, hurrying on over their dead and wounded companions who had fallen in the first assault. The Americans waited their approach in silence, and then received them with the same deadly fire of musketry as before. Whole ranks were swept away, the line was broken, and again they fled for the shore. The sure aim of the provincials cut down the British officers, so that General Howe, deserted by his flying troops, was now left almost alone on the field.

11. At this moment, General Clinton, who was watching the progress of the battle from Boston, considering the honor of the British nation at stake, immediately crossed over with reinforcements, and with great difficulty led up the troops to a third charge. The provincials met them again with undiminished courage; but their powder being exhausted, and having no bayonets, they fought with the butt end of their muskets. After a bloody contest, the Americans re-

10. Describe the second assault. Why did the British burn Charlestown?
Ans. They hoped the smoke would cover the heights, and thus confuse the Americans and prevent their deadly aim, and aid in their defeat. But the smoke and flame at first ascended perpendicularly, then inclined to the south, leaving the battle-field clear and unobscured.

11. Describe the third assault. What distinguished general fell? General Joseph Warren was a physician in Boston. He was early distinguished as one of the most vigilant and energetic friends of American rights. He was appointed a major-general in the American army, four days previous to this battle; but in order to encourage the soldiers, he joined them as a volunteer, and fought in the ranks. He was killed in the thirty-fifth year of his age.

treated down their intrenchments, and although exposed to the raking fire of the British ships, they effected their escape over Charlestown neck without any considerable loss. It was during this retreat that the brave Gen. Warren was slain.

12. In this memorable battle the English lost, out of 3,000, more than 1,000 men. The Americans had only 1,500 in the contest, and their loss was about 450. Though they were defeated, it was considered a glorious defeat. They had met England's bravest troops, and had shown them that Americans were neither "cowardly nor feeble." Thousands awaited the event of the struggle with the most painful solicitude.

13. Hostilities had also commenced in the southern colonies. Lord Dunmore, governor of Virginia, forcibly seized a quantity of military stores belonging to the colony. Patrick Henry,* with a company of militia, proceeded against him, and demanded the stores, or their value in money. The money was immediately paid. To strengthen his forces, Dunmore basely offered freedom to all slaves who would take up arms against their masters, and join the royal party. Not long after, a body of his black and white troops assembled at Yorktown, and attacked the colonists. But the royalists were soon defeated, and Dunmore was obliged to

12. What was the loss of the English in the battle of Bunker hill? The loss of the Americans?

13. What did Lord Dunmore do? Who was John Murray Dunmore? *Ans.* He was the last governor of Virginia appointed by the king. In his zeal to assist the English, he tried to injure the colony by all the means in his power, and acted the part of a pirate and plunderer. He died in England in 1809. Who proceeded against him? Did they get the stores?

* Patrick Henry, a most eloquent orator, was born in Virginia, in 1736. He was the first man that proposed to the colonies hostile measures against Great Britain. On a certain occasion, as he was speaking in the assembly of Virginia, respecting the oppressive and arbitrary measures of the British government toward America, he became much excited, and in the warmth of his feelings added, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third"—"Treason!" cried the Speaker—"Treason! treason!" was echoed from every part of the house. Henry faltered not for an instant, but taking a loftier attitude, and fixing on the Speaker an eye of fire, he finished his sentence with the firmest emphasis—"may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it." He was the first governor of Virginia after the declaration of independence, and a member of the old congress. He was a natural orator of the highest order. He died in 1799, aged 63.

leave the city. Soon after, he ordered Norfolk to be set on fire, by which a large amount of property was destroyed.

14. Similar scenes occurred in the Carolinas. The people of South Carolina, being in want of ammunition, twelve persons, authorized by the committee of supplies, sailed from Charleston, and captured a British vessel near St. Augustine, with 15,000 pounds of powder on board. About the same time the people of Georgia, who had now joined the confederacy, seized a vessel lately arrived from London, with 13,000 pounds of powder, and other stores. The same year, four other vessels, laden with military stores for the British army, were captured by Captain Manly, of New England. These stores were of vast importance to the Americans, who had not then the means of manufacturing extensively the munitions of war. Before the close of the year, congress voted to build immediately thirteen ships of war. Thus was commenced the American navy.

15. The colonists soon turned their attention to Canada. The people of that province were mostly of French origin, and though they had been earnestly solicited by congress, they had not taken any part in the opposition against the British government. Fearing an invasion from that quarter under Sir Guy Carlton, the governor of that province, two expeditions were planned; one by the way of Lake Champlain, under the command of Gen. Schuyler, aided by Generals Montgomery* and Wooster; the other by the way of the Kennebec river, under the command of Gen. Arnold. In consequence of illness, Gen. Schuyler was prevented from going to Canada, and the whole command of the expedition devolved on Montgomery.

14. By whom was a British vessel taken near St. Augustine? How much powder was there on board? What did the Georgians do? How many vessels were taken during the year?

15. To what did the colonists soon turn their attention? Who was sent with an army to Canada?

* Richard Montgomery, a major-general in the army of the United States, was born in the north of Ireland, in 1737. He served under Wolfe at Quebec, in 1759; but on his return to England, he left his regiment and removed to America, and settled in the colony of New York. His military talents were great. His measures were taken with judgment, and executed with ability. His death was deplored by friends and foes.

16. He passed up Lake Champlain, and on the 10th of September reached St. John's, the first British post in Canada. A small detachment was sent against Fort Chamblee, a few miles above, which defeated the garrison, and took possession of a large quantity of powder, and other stores found in the fort. St. John's was also surrendered shortly after. On the 12th of November, Montgomery marched against Montreal, which immediately submitted. Quebec was now the only remaining stronghold in Canada.

17. Montgomery hastened forward, and on the 1st of December arrived at Point-aux-Trembles, twenty miles above Quebec, where he found Arnold awaiting his arrival. Arnold's march through the wilderness, at the head of more than a thousand men, was one of the most difficult and hazardous exploits in the annals of war. He ascended the Kennebec, crossed the mountains, and descended the Chaudiere, and arrived at Point Levi, opposite Quebec, November 9th. Such was the consternation of the inhabitants, that, could he have crossed the St. Lawrence without delay, he might probably have taken immediate possession of the city.

18. On the 13th, he was enabled to procure about forty birch-bark canoes. With these he crossed the St. Lawrence in the night, and boldly led his troops up the Heights of Abraham, where the gallant Wolfe ascended, sixteen years before, to the field of his fame and his grave. Finding the garrison ready to receive him, and not being strong enough to carry the place by assault, he withdrew his troops to Point-aux-Trembles, and awaited the arrival of Montgomery. On the arrival of the latter, their united forces were not more than a thousand men. They immediately marched to Quebec and began the siege, which continued for nearly a month without any prospect of success.

19. They now resolved upon a desperate assault. To conceal their real design, two divisions were sent to alarm

16. Where did he land? What was the result? What other fort was taken? What was found in the fort? What city did he take?

17. Who was sent to assist Montgomery in taking Quebec?

18. Describe their attempts to take the city.

19. Describe the death of Montgomery.

the upper town, while Arnold and Montgomery commenced a violent attack upon the opposite sides of the lower town. Before light on the morning of December 31st, the signal was given, and the troops rushed forward to the charge, amid a violent snow-storm, which concealed them from the sight of the enemy. The guard of the first barrier fled, and while Montgomery was forcing his way over piles of ice and a picket fence, one of the guard ran back, and seizing a match, discharged a cannon, and killed Montgomery and two other valuable officers. The troops at once retreated.

20. On the other side of the town the battle was more furious. Arnold was wounded in the leg on the first assault. But his troops under Captain Morgan pressed on beyond the first barrier, scaled the battery, and made the guard prisoners. Bewildered amid the darkness and snow, they rested until light, when they advanced against the second barrier. While attempting to scale the barricade, they were repulsed with great slaughter by the incessant fire of the British garrison. Benumbed with cold, and unable to retreat, some were obliged to surrender.

21. Not less than 400 men were lost in this engagement. The death of Montgomery was universally lamented. The most powerful speakers in the British parliament displayed their eloquence in praising his virtues, and lamenting his fall. Arnold, with the remainder of the army, retired three miles below Quebec, and continued the blockade during the winter. Thus far the Americans had experienced terrible hardships. During the siege, the small-pox broke out in the camp. Many were very poorly clad for a severe winter. Far from their affectionate families, amid sickness, want, and cold, the soldiers sighed for the comforts of the domestic fireside. But their love of liberty carried them through the struggle.

22. As soon as the condition of the northern army was

20. Describe the battle on the other side of the town. Where was Arnold wounded? What was the result of the battle?

21. How many were lost? What did Arnold do? What was the situation of his soldiers?

22. What did congress do? What force had the British at Quebec in May, 1776? Who succeeded Montgomery?

known to congress, large supplies and additional forces were ordered on to Quebec. But early in the spring of 1776, the British army was greatly strengthened by a reinforcement from England. In May, the whole force at Quebec was estimated to be 13,000 men. General Thomas, who had been appointed to succeed Montgomery, arrived on the first of May. But he found himself at the head of less than 2,000 men, more than half of whom were sick, or unfit for duty.

23. He was attacked soon after, and the sick and stores of his camp were taken by the English. The sick, however, were kindly treated, and when they recovered, were released. The Americans now retreated on their way to New York. General Thomas was seized with the small-pox and died; and General Sullivan succeeded to the command. About this time, at a place called the *Cedars*, forty miles above Montreal, a detachment of American troops was attacked by a party of the enemy, mostly Indians. Owing to the cowardice or bad management of Colonel Bedell and Major Butterfield, about 500 of the troops were lost. By the 18th of June, 1776, Canada was entirely deserted by the Americans.

24. General Washington, soon after his appointment to the command of the army, repaired to Cambridge, Mass. He arrived there July 2d, and took command the next day. He found the troops, about 14,000, posted on the heights around Boston, almost destitute of means necessary for a vigorous siege, and very poorly supplied with clothing and provisions. His first object was to render the army comfortable, and furnish a good supply of arms and ammunition. But notwithstanding his constant exertions, night and day for several months, he was not able to procure the necessary supplies.

25. But there was another more serious difficulty which

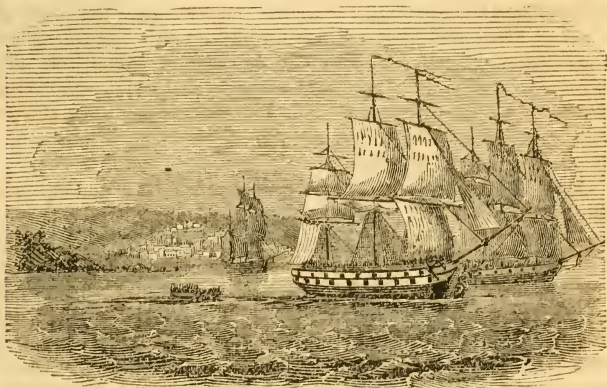
23. With what did General Thomas die? Who succeeded him? What happened at the Cedars? When was Canada deserted by the Americans?

24. What is said of General Washington? In what condition did he find the army? What was his first object? What difficulties had he to contend with?

25. What was his regular force?

he had to contend with. Many of the American soldiers had enlisted only for a short time, and when their time expired, left the service. A new army was then to be formed. Against these and many other discouragements, he contended till spring, without an attack upon the city. His regular force now amounted to 14,000 men, besides 6,000 militia of Massachusetts. Washington had several times proposed to a council of war, an assault upon the enemy. But his plans were rejected.

26. About the first of March, he commenced a severe cannonade upon the city. On the night of the 4th, a de-



RETREAT OF THE BRITISH IN BOSTON.

tachment took possession of Dorchester heights, and before morning threw up a line of fortifications which threatened both the town and the enemy's ships in the harbor. The British beheld with amazement these extensive works, which had sprung up in a single night. Three thousand troops were immediately ordered to embark against them. But a violent storm prevented the boats from proceeding. Howe,

26. What were his first attempts to drive the enemy out of the city? What was done on the 4th of March? How did this affect the British? What was the result?

the British general, now found it necessary to leave the city without delay.

27. On the 17th of March, General Howe, with the whole British army, in 78 ships and transports, set sail for Halifax, and Washington, with his army, entered Boston in triumph. This event produced a thrill of joy throughout the country. Congress passed a vote of thanks to Washington and his troops. Suspecting that the enemy had repaired to New York, the army left Boston for that city.

28. The next important event was an attack upon Charleston, South Carolina, June 28th, by a British fleet, under Sir Peter Parker. As the fleet was attempting to pass the fort on Sullivan's island, the garrison, under the command of Colonel Moultrie, opened a terrible fire upon it. After a hot engagement of ten hours, in which the ships were severely shattered, the British left the harbor. They lost more than 200 men, while the loss of the Americans was only thirty-two. In honor of the commander of the fort, it was afterward called Fort Moultrie.

29. The thirteen colonies were now all in arms against the mother country. Hitherto they had contended only for their just rights, as loyal subjects of Great Britain. But now they were forced to contend, as independent states, against a foreign foe. A motion for declaring their independence was therefore made in congress, by Richard Henry Lee,* of Virginia, June 7, 1776. After a full discussion, and some warm opposition, it was carried by a unanimous vote. A DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE† was drawn up, adopted, signed by all the members of congress, and published to the world on the 4th of July, 1776. It was received in all the colonies with joy and public celebration. The nation now assumed the title of the UNITED STATES of America.

* Richard Henry Lee was born in 1732. From his earliest youth, he devoted his talents to the service of his country. He supported through life the character of a philosopher, a patriot, and sage; and his name will be remembered with gratitude, as one of the most conspicuous actors of the Revolution, so long as Americans enjoy the blessings resulting from that event. He died at Chantilly, in Virginia, 1794.

† On the 11th of June, a committee was appointed to prepare a *Declaration of Independence*, consisting of Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston. Mr. Jefferson was requested to draw up the paper, which he did, and it was reported to the house after receiving a few alterations from Dr. Franklin and Mr. Adams.



SIGNERS OF THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

New Hampshire.

JOSIAH BARTLETT,
WILLIAM WHIPPLE,
MATTHEW THORNTON.

Massachusetts Bay.

JOHN HANCOCK,
SAMUEL ADAMS,
JOHN ADAMS,
ROBERT TREAT PAINE,
ELBRIDGE GERRY.

Rhode Island, &c.

STEPHEN HOPKINS,
WILLIAM ELLERY.

Connecticut.

ROGER SHERMAN,
SAMUEL HUNTINGTON,
WILLIAM WILLIAMS,
OLIVER WOLCOTT.

New York.

WILLIAM FLOYD,
PHILIP LIVINGSTON,
FRANCIS LEWIS,
LEWIS MORRIS.

New Jersey.

RICHARD STOCKTON,
JOHN WITHERSPOON,
FRANCIS HOPKINSON,
JOHN HART,
ABRAHAM CLARK.

Pennsylvania.

ROBERT MORRIS,
BENJAMIN RUSH,
BENJAMIN FRANKLIN,
JOHN MORTON,
GEORGE CLYMER,

JAMES SMITH,
GEORGE TAYLOR,
JAMES WILSON,
GEORGE ROSS.

Delaware.

CESAR RODNEY,
GEORGE READ,
THOMAS M'KEAN.

Maryland.

SAMUEL CHASE,
WILLIAM PACA,
THOMAS STONE,
CHARLES CARROLL.

Virginia.

GEORGE WYTHE,
RICHARD HENRY LEE,
THOMAS JEFFERSON,
BENJAMIN HARRISON,
THOMAS NELSON, JR.,
FRANCIS LIGHTFOOT LEE,
CARTER BRAXTON.

North Carolina.

WILLIAM HOOPER,
JOSEPH HEWES,
JOHN PENN.

South Carolina.

EDWARD RUTLEDGE,
THOMAS HEYWARD, JR.,
THOMAS LYNCH, JR.,
ARTHUR MIDDLETON.

Georgia.

BUTTON GWINNETT,
LYMAN HALL,
GEORGE WALTON.

The pen with which these signatures were made, is now in the cabinet of the Massachusetts Historical Society.

HISTORY
OF
THE UNITED STATES.



SITUATION OF THE COUNTRY A.D. 1776.

PERIOD III.

COMPRISES THE EVENTS THAT OCCURRED FROM THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, TO THE ADOPTION OF THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION, OR PRESENT SYSTEM OF GOVERNMENT, 1789.

1. At the commencement of this period, the condition of the country was in the highest degree interesting. The progress of improvement had changed the forest and the glen into fruitful fields, and flourishing towns had sprung up

What events does period third embrace?

1. What was the condition of the country at this time? What was the population? What was the effect of the Declaration?

on every side. The white population had increased to about three millions. The luxury and wealth of the old world were fast becoming the portion of the new. But a spirit of freedom and bold enterprise characterized the whole people. The *Declaration of Independence*, while it frightened the cautious and timid, nerved all true patriots with an energy of purpose, which alone prepared them for the desperate conflict. The attitude of the nation excited the admiration of all Europe. For a feeble colony just struggling into existence, without ships, without a regular army, without munitions of war, to enter into open combat with the most powerful nation on the globe, was an anomaly in the history of the world; and the friends of liberty every where watched with deep anxiety the progress of the unequal contest.

2. Soon after the British troops left Boston, Washington, believing they would endeavor to get possession of New York, repaired thither with the principal part of his army, and exerted every means in his power for its defense. On the 28th of June, Gen. William Howe, with the army which had evacuated Boston, arrived from Halifax off Sandy Hook. On the 2d of July, he took possession of Staten Island. Being soon after joined by his brother, Admiral Howe from England, and by the forces under Clinton and Cornwallis from the south, he found himself at the head of an army of 24,000 of the best troops in Europe. The American army was in a very bad state to meet such a force. It consisted of about 27,000 men, chiefly undisciplined militia. About one-fourth of these were invalids, and another fourth very poorly provided with arms.

3. On the 22d of August, the British landed without opposition on Long Island, near the Narrows. It was then seen that they designed to approach the city across the island. Washington anticipating this, had previously posted a body of about 5,000 troops at Brooklyn, under Generals Putnam,

2. What took place about the first of July? State of the American army? Their number? What did General Washington do? Where is Brooklyn?
Ans. Opposite to New York city, across the East river, three quarters of a mile distant. Where was Washington at this time?

3. State what the British did. The result? Suppose Clinton had not passed the eastern defile, what then?

Sullivan, and Sterling. This position was secured by a chain of intrenchments and redouts from Wallabout Bay to Gowannus Cove. Between Brooklyn and the place where the British landed was a range of hills, called "The heights of Gowannus," covered with thick woods and crossed by three roads, or passes. It was important that these passes should have been thoroughly guarded. Yet, Gen. Clinton, on the morning of the 27th, led the right wing of the British army through the most eastern of these, without resistance, and gained the rear of the Americans. The action now commenced, and soon became general; but the Americans being placed between two fires, there was no safety but in retreat. An awful scene of butchery took place. Some escaped to the woods, others broke through the ranks of the enemy and regained the American lines at Brooklyn; but most of them were either killed or taken prisoners. This was the most bloody and disastrous defeat of the whole war. The battle was fought against the advice and wish of Washington, and but for his great skill and energy, the whole army would have been lost. In the heat of the action, he passed over from New York to Brooklyn, and beheld with inexpressible anguish the destruction of his best troops; but he was unable to relieve them.

4. About 2,000 of the Americans were killed, wounded, or taken prisoners. The loss of the British was about 400. The English advanced, and began to fortify themselves near the American lines, and resolved on a more decisive battle the next day. But in the night, Washington, knowing his men were fatigued and dispirited by the defeat, withdrew with his army, unperceived by the enemy, across the river to New York. The militia were disheartened, and some regiments, fearing that the British would cross the East river, deserted and returned to their homes. Washington, wishing to avoid a regular battle with the enemy, on the 12th of Sept. retired with his whole army to the heights of Harlem, nine miles north of the city.*

4. What did Washington do that night?

* NATHAN HALE.—After the famous retreat of the American army from Long Island, Washington, anxious to adopt some means of gaining information concern-

5. General Howe entered New York on the 15th of September, and soon after, marched up along the East river, and encamped his troops north of the Americans, in order to cut off all communication with New England. Washington, perceiving this movement, left a strong garrison at Fort Washington in the northern part of New York island, and marched as far as White Plains. Here the armies met on the 28th of October, and after a short engagement, the Americans were forced to retreat. About 300 men were lost on each side.

6. The British general now returned to New York. His design was first to take Fort Washington, and then cross the Hudson and attack Fort Lee, which prevented the British fleet from passing up the river. On the 16th of November, Fort Washington was furiously assailed at four different points. The garrison made a brave defense, and mowed down the Hessians with terrible slaughter. At length, however, their ammunition began to fail, and they were obliged

5. When did General Howe enter New York? What took place on the 28th of October?

6. What on the 16th of November?

ing the strength, situation, and future movements of the enemy, applied to Colonel Knowlton, for a discreet, intelligent, enterprising, and bold officer, who would dare penetrate the enemy's camp, and bring him the desired information. Knowlton at once fixed upon Capt. Nathan Hale, as possessing the necessary qualifications in an eminent degree. Accordingly he made known the wishes of Washington to him, but Hale shrunk with instinctive horror at the thought of being a spy. But reflecting that it was Washington who required this service, and his country that was to be benefited, he gave up all scruples, and prepared for the adventure. He passed in disguise to Long Island, in the character of a schoolmaster, examined every fort of the British army, and obtained all the requisite information. As he was returning, he was met by a tory in the British service, recognized, apprehended, and taken before Sir William Howe. Hale finding every thing was known to the enemy, boldly, and without equivocation, confessed his character and his object. Howe, without a trial, or without even the form of a court-martial, doomed him for execution the next morning! This sentence was executed in the most unfeeling manner. He was denied a Bible, and even the attendance of a clergyman was refused him. The letters, full of fortitude and resignation, which he wrote to his mother and sister, a short time before his death, were destroyed. He was hung, regretting "that he had only one life to lose in the cause of his country, the cause of liberty, and the rights of man." The untimely end of this promising, but unfortunate young man, resembled that of Major Andre, in the circumstances which led to it; but the celebrity of the two has been widely different. The memory of Andre has received every honor, not only in his own country, but likewise in this. His monument stands in Westminster Abbey, among those of sages and heroes; while the memory of Hale hardly survives in his native state. His grave is not even marked by a stone, or an inscription. It is with pleasure, however, that I add, that our general government are about (1836) to erect a suitable monument to his memory in the public burial place, in Coventry, Connecticut, his native town.

to make an honorable surrender. The American loss was about fifty killed and 2,818 prisoners. The British lost about 1,000 men.

7. The loss of this fort was severely felt by the Americans. The garrison at Fort Lee immediately abandoned their post and joined the detachment under Washington, which was now at Newark in New Jersey. The troops were at that time in a most pitiable condition. They were without tents, without blankets, poorly clad, and exposed to the cold blasts of winter. In this wretched state they were driven by the close pursuit of the enemy from Newark to Brunswick, from thence to Princeton, and finally across the Delaware.

8. At that time Washington had not more than 3,000 men with him, and this number was daily decreasing. Such were the sufferings of the troops, that as soon as their term of service expired, they returned to their comfortable homes. A dark cloud now seemed to be cast over all the bright hopes of the Americans. Pardon was offered by the British general to all who would join the royal standard. Many, despairing of success, deserted the cause of Liberty and accepted the pardon, among whom were Mr. Galloway and Mr. Allen, who had been members of the continental congress.

9. The city of Philadelphia being in danger from the enemy, congress adjourned, Dec. 12th, to Baltimore. They now gave to Washington "entire control of the operations of war." To strengthen his exhausted army, he sent orders to General Lee, to leave his post on the Hudson, and come to his assistance without delay. Lee left the Hudson, but did not hasten his march. One night he carelessly took quarters at a house, three miles from his army, where he was seized by a corps of British cavalry. In consequence

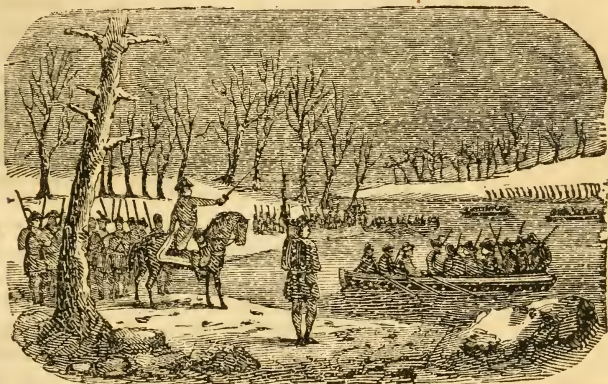
7. What did the garrison of Fort Lee do?

8. What was the condition of our army at that time? What was offered by the British general?

9. To what place did congress adjourn? Why? What power did they confer upon Washington? What did he do? State the capture of General Lee. Do you suppose Lee wished to be taken? Who succeeded Lee? What did General Sullivan do?

of this, the command fell upon General Sullivan,* who marched the troops directly to the camp of Washington, increasing his army to about 7,000 men.

10. The British general, instead of crossing the Delaware, scattered his forces in several towns on the Jersey side, for winter quarters. Washington, knowing the situation of the enemy, determined, if possible, to strike a blow in favor of his sinking cause. On the night of the 25th of



WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE.

December, he crossed the Delaware nine miles above Trenton, with about 2,500 men, and marched down upon that place, where, the next morning, he attacked the enemy, killed about twenty, and took about 1,000 prisoners. Six field-pieces and a thousand stand of arms, were also taken.

10. What did the British general do? What did Washington do on the night of the 25th of December? The 26th?

* John Sullivan was born in 1741. For some time previous to the revolutionary war, he practised law in New Hampshire. In 1776, he was appointed a major-general in the American army. He was in many engagements, and conducted several hazardous expeditions, and ever displayed great military skill, firmness, and resolution. After the close of the war, he resumed the practice of law; was afterward a member of congress; and in 1786, '87, and '89, president of New Hampshire. He died at Durham in 1795.

Of his own men two were killed, two frozen to death, and several wounded. He immediately re-crossed the river. This was the state of affairs at the close of the year 1776.

EVENTS OF 1777.

1. This last bold movement of Washington alarmed the British. Lord Cornwallis collected his forces at Princeton, and watched the motions of his vigilant foe. The American general, having received some fresh recruits from Pennsylvania, crossed the Delaware again, about the first of January, and stationed his army at Trenton. The British forces soon marched with high hopes against him. Washington arrayed his army on the side of a small stream which divides the town, and strongly guarded all the fords and bridges.

2. Cornwallis marched up his troops, and commenced a cannonade upon the Americans, and attempted, without success, to cross the river. Washington, knowing the superior force of the enemy, and that a defeat would probably decide the fate of the war, conceived another daring, but successful exploit. As soon as it was dark, the fires of the camp were lighted up as usual. But when all was quiet, Washington moved off his army unperceived, and next morning, January 3d, attacked the enemy at Princeton. The contest was warm, but soon decided in favor of the Americans. Of the British, 100 men were killed and 300 taken prisoners. The loss of the Americans was 100. Among the slain was the lamented General Mercer, and among the wounded was Lieutenant James Monroe,* since President of the United States.

1. What did Cornwallis do? When did Washington again cross the Delaware?

2. Describe the movements of the armies. The retreat of Washington. What did Washington do, January 3d, 1777? The result?

* James Monroe was born in Westmoreland county, Virginia, on the 28th day of April, 1758. He joined the ranks of the army in 1776, and was engaged in several of the principal battles of the Revolution, among which were those of the Brandywine, Trenton, and Monmouth. In 1780, at the request of Mr. Jefferson, then gov-

3. The American general designed, after taking Princeton, to push on his march to New Brunswick, and take the magazines and baggage of the enemy deposited there. But Cornwallis, on hearing the cannonade from Princeton, and suspecting his plan, had hastened his march from Trenton, and was fast approaching the Americans. The exhausted and destitute state of the army, induced Washington to relinquish his design of going to Brunswick. He therefore retired, January 6th, to winter quarters at Morristown, where his army were inoculated with the small-pox. The enemy retired to New Brunswick.

4. Thus closed this severe campaign. Considering the circumstances of the American army, its achievements were highly honorable. The bold and successful movements of Washington excited the admiration of both Europe and America. Joy and hope now began to revive the drooping spirits of the nation. The people every where hailed Washington as the *Savior* of his country.

5. Amid all the calamities which threatened the nation, congress displayed the dignity and firmness of true patriotism. In the mean time, having returned to Philadelphia, it made every exertion to supply the wants of the suffering army, and for obtaining aid from foreign powers. For the purpose of inducing the French to espouse the American cause, three commissioners were appointed to the court of France—Dr. Franklin,* Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee. They were

3. To what place did Washington repair for winter quarters? Where is Morristown? *Ans.* In New Jersey, 28 miles west of New York. To what place did the enemy retire? Where is New Brunswick? *Ans.* It is situated on the Raritan river, in New Jersey, 33 miles southwest of New York.

4. With what feelings was Washington regarded?

5. What was the conduct of congress at this time? Who did congress send to France? What foreign nation warmly espoused the American cause?

error of Virginia, he visited the army of the south, under Baron de Kalb, as military commissioner; in 1783, at the age of twenty-four, he was elected member of congress; a senator of the United States in 1790; appointed minister to France in 1794; governor of Virginia in 1799; again minister to France, with Mr. Livingston, in 1803; in the same year minister to Great Britain, and to Spain in 1804; to Great Britain again in 1806; governor of Virginia in 1811; appointed Secretary of State by President Madison in 1814, and raised to the presidency in 1817; re-elected unanimously in 1821; and died in the city of New York, on the 4th of July, 1831.

* Benjamin Franklin was born in Boston, 1706, and died in Philadelphia in 1790. He was one of the greatest men of any age or nation. See the Life of Franklin.

instructed to solicit a loan of ten million francs, to procure arms and ammunition, &c., and, if possible, to prevail on the French government to recognize the Independence of the United States.* Although the French government at first were not disposed to act openly, a strong sympathy was felt, and individuals warmly espoused the American cause. Among these was the young Marquis de Lafayette,† who hired a ship at his own expense to bring him over to America; and who afterward became a distinguished officer in the army, and the bosom friend of Washington.

6. The soldiers in the American army had enlisted to serve only one year. This circumstance caused the utmost derangement in the plans and wishes of Washington. Sometimes a whole regiment would leave the ranks or the camp in a single day. A new army was now raised, to serve three years, or during the war. Such was the state of the American forces after Washington retired to Morristown, that nothing of importance was attempted till spring. During the latter part of the winter, the prisoners at New York suffered extremely from the inhuman treatment of the British. They were stowed together in prison-ships, churches, and other buildings. Many of them starved to death, and others were suffered to die of loathsome diseases, or to perish with cold.

6. What embarrassments did Washington experience during the winter? What were the sufferings of the soldiers?

* France acknowledged "THE INDEPENDENCE OF THE UNITED STATES," Feb. 6th, 1778. Holland in 1782. Sweden and Denmark in February, 1783. Spain in March, 1783. Russia in July, 1783.

† Gilbert Mottier, Marquis de Lafayette, was born in France, in 1757. He was descended from distinguished ancestors, and inherited a princely fortune. Such was his ardor in the cause of liberty, that no sooner did he learn the situation of the American people, than he resolved to leave his native country, and assist them in their glorious struggles for freedom. He made known his intention to Dr. Franklin, who was compelled to confess to him that his government was so destitute of means and credit, that it could not furnish him with a conveyance. "Then," said he, "I will fit out a vessel myself," and he did so. He arrived in the United States at 19 years of age, and joined the army under Washington. He was appointed a major-general, and by his skill and services, he gained the esteem and the affection of the whole American people. In 1824, he visited the United States, and made a tour through the country. He was every where received with the highest marks of gratitude and respect. He returned to France in 1825, where he died May 20th, 1835. The wondrous scenes, both in the New and Old World, in which the name of Lafayette was prominently distinguished, are among the most remarkable in the annals of mankind.

7. Early in the spring, several detachments from the British army were sent out on excursions to cut off the supplies for the Americans. On the Hudson, they were successful in taking several places where flour and provisions were deposited. The town of Danbury, Connecticut, was burned, and a large quantity of military stores destroyed. During their retreat, they were assailed by detachments of militia under Generals Sullivan, Arnold, and Wooster, and before they regained their shipping they lost about 300 men. Soon after this, Col. Meigs of Connecticut attacked the British at Sag Harbor, on Long Island, where they had collected large magazines of forage and grain, killed six of the enemy, took ninety prisoners, burned twelve vessels loaded with provisions, and returned to Connecticut without losing a man.

8. In May, Washington commenced operations with 10,000 men. He left Morristown, and strongly posted his troops at Middlebrook. The enemy advanced against him; but unwilling to attack him in this position, General Howe removed his army to Staten Island, and there formed a plan for taking Philadelphia. He embarked with his army, and near the end of August sailed up Chesapeake bay and landed 18,000 troops near the head of Elk river in Maryland, and commenced his march toward Philadelphia.

9. Washington immediately crossed the Delaware, and met him at Brandywine creek, in Delaware, where a destructive battle was fought, Sept. 11. The enemy crossed the creek at different places, and attacking the American army on the right and left, soon threw the line into confusion. Washington perceiving the disorder of his troops, ordered a retreat. In this engagement he lost about 1,000 men. General Lafayette was among the wounded. The loss of the British was about 500. The next day the American army retreated to Philadelphia.

10. In the mean time, affairs of great interest had been

7. What did the British do in the spring of 1777? What town was destroyed in Connecticut? What did Colonel Meigs do?

8. What is said of Washington? Howe?

9. Describe the battle of Brandywine.

10. What were the English attempting to do in the north at this time?

going on in the northern department. Arnold, soon after his retreat from Canada, had prepared a small fleet to keep the enemy in check on Lake Champlain. But in a severe battle he lost a part of his fleet, and was obliged to burn the remainder to prevent its falling into the hands of the enemy. The English had now forced their way down to the Hudson. Their plan was to unite their forces in Canada with those in New York, and thus cut off all intercourse between New England and the southern states.

11. General Burgoyne, with an army of 10,000 men, left Quebec in the spring, on this important enterprise. He sent a detachment to Oswego, with orders to proceed from that place and meet him at Albany. British agents were sent out, who succeeded in persuading thousands of Indian warriors to join their army. On the first of July, Burgoyne arrived at Ticonderoga. The garrison, under the command of General St. Clair,* unable to defend the fort, left it by night and crossed the lake. They were unfortunately overtaken by the enemy at Hubbardton, July 7, and in several skirmishes were routed with a loss of 800 men. About 200 of the enemy were killed.

12. The scattered troops that escaped at length arrived at Fort Edward on the Hudson, the head-quarters of the northern army. The progress of the British forces spread terror and dismay through the country. But General Schuyler † made every possible exertion to interrupt their

11. What did Burgoyne do? When did he arrive at Ticonderoga? Can you show me Ticonderoga on the map?

12. What American general tried to interrupt their march?

* Arthur St. Clair was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, in 1734. He came to this country in 1755, with Admiral Boscawen. He was a lieutenant under Wolfe at the taking of Quebec. At the close of the French war, he settled in Pennsylvania. In the revolutionary war, he espoused the cause of the colonies, and was appointed by congress a major-general, Feb. 19, 1777. At the termination of the war, he returned to Pennsylvania, and in 1784 was sent a delegate to congress from that state. In 1787, he was chosen president of congress. In 1789, he was appointed governor of the "territory northwest of the Ohio," and held the place till 1802. In 1791, he was appointed commander-in-chief of the forces to be employed against the Indians. In November of the same year, he met with his memorable defeat near the Miami villages, and was succeeded by Gen. Wayne. He died at Laurel hill, Pennsylvania, 1818.

† Philip Schuyler was born at Albany, New York, in 1731. He was early distinguished for his talents and bravery, and in 1775, congress appointed him a major-general in the American army. The evacuation of Ticonderoga by St. Clair, occa-

march. He pulled up bridges, and cut down trees to obstruct the roads. But the British, after great fatigue and difficulty, appeared at Fort Edward. Schuyler, having not more than 4,400 troops, unable to resist the enemy, retreated across the Hudson, and after several removes, posted his army on the island at the mouth of the Mohawk river.

13. About this time news came that Fort Schuyler, situated where Rome now stands, was besieged by a detachment which Burgoyne had sent against it under Col. St. Leger. General Herkimer, with a band of 800 militia, had marched to relieve the garrison, but falling into an ambuscade near Oriskany, lost more than half of his men. Arnold, with three regiments, was immediately sent to raise the siege. The enemy no sooner perceived his approach, than they fled in great haste, leaving their baggage and stores, and retreated to Canada. The Americans had long felt indignant toward the British for employing the sanguinary Indians as their allies. The atrocities they committed, and especially the shocking death of Jane M'Crea,* greatly inflamed the people, and the militia of all the surrounding country now began to assemble to the aid of the American forces.

14. Gen. Schuyler's army increased rapidly, and just as

13. What did General Herkimer do? Arnold?

14. Who was appointed to the chief command? Why? Who was sent to Bennington? What happened?

sioning unreasonable jealousies in regard to Schuyler in New England, he was superseded by General Gates in August, and an inquiry was directed by congress to be made into his conduct. He was afterward, though not in the regular service, very useful to his country in the military transactions of New York. He died in 1804.

* Miss Jane M'Crea was a lovely young lady, engaged to be married to David Jones, a royalist and an officer in Burgoyne's army. At the time of this tragical event she was visiting at the house of Mrs. M'Neil, about half a mile from Fort Edward. She had been reminded by the people of the fort of her danger in so exposed and unprotected a situation. But it seems she had promised her lover to remain in that place until the approach of the British troops, when she would join him in company with her friend, Mrs. M'Neil. But Jones, anxious for her safety, sent two Indians with a letter and a horse to conduct her to the British camp; and agreed to give them a barrel of rum, provided they brought her in safety. It is stated that they were met on the way by a party of Indians who, anxious to obtain the promised reward, strove to get possession of her, and had nearly succeeded, when one of the two, to prevent her falling into their hands, killed her with his tomahawk. Her death produced a lively impression throughout the country, and Burke, in one of his most celebrated speeches in the British parliament, made the story of Jane M'Crea familiar to the European world.

he saw himself sure of a glorious victory, he was superseded by Gen. Gates,* who was appointed by congress to the chief command of the northern army. Burgoyne was now making all possible exertions to prepare his army to advance against Albany. He found immense difficulty in transporting provisions from Lake George to the Hudson river. He sent Colonel Baum, with 600 troops to Bennington, Vermont, to take a large quantity of provisions which the Americans had deposited there. But when Baum approached that place, he learned that a large force of militia had just arrived from New Hampshire. Alarmed for their safety, the enemy at once intrenched themselves.

15. Next day, Aug. 16, the militia, under General Stark,† attacked them, killed many, and took a large number of prisoners. Col. Baum was mortally wounded. Before night a reinforcement of 500 Germans arrived from the British camp, under Col. Breyman. They were immediately assaulted by the militia, and totally routed. In the two engagements the enemy lost about 800 men, mostly prisoners,

15. Who commanded the American militia at Bennington? What reinforcement arrived? State the result of the battle of Bennington. Where did Burgoyne post his army? Where did the American army encamp?

* Horatio Gates was born in England, in 1729. He entered the British army in early life. He was with Braddock at his defeat in 1755, and was shot through the body. When peace was concluded, he purchased an estate in Virginia, where he resided until the commencement of the revolutionary war, 1775, when he was appointed general in the army of the United States. After the close of the war he retired to his farm in Virginia. Though gentlemanly in his manners, he was cold, selfish, and ever wanting in that noble spirit which belongs to a true man. The victory at Saratoga was achieved by Arnold, yet Gates received the honors of it. In a word, he was a vain, ambitious, weak man, greatly inferior, in all the higher qualities of mind, to Schuyler, and, in the noble daring, skill, and true courage, to Arnold.

† John Stark was born at Londonderry, New Hampshire, in 1728. He served in the French war. When the news of the battle of Lexington reached him, he was engaged at work in his saw-mill. Instantly seizing his musket, he hastened to Cambridge, where our little army was then encamped. He was in the battle of Breed's hill, at the head of the New Hampshire troops. He was in some of the principal engagements previous to the battle of Bennington. When Baum was sent to get possession of the stores at Bennington, Stark was fortunately at, or near that place, on his way to the main army, with 1,400 militia, most of whom were denominated "Green Mountain Boys." As he led on these brave fellows to the attack, pointing to the enemy, "Boys," said he, "you see our foes. We shall beat them; or my wife will be a widow to-night." It was enough; and the result showed that his troops were animated by the same spirit as their leader. For this brilliant achievement, he was appointed brigadier-general. He died in 1822. He was an excellent soldier, and a citizen of unblemished character.



BATTLE OF BENNINGTON.

and the Americans about one hundred. The Americans took from the enemy 1,000 muskets, 900 swords, several pieces of cannon, and a large quantity of baggage. The militia, well equipped from these spoils, marched on to join the regular troops at the mouth of the Mohawk. Burgoyne at length crossed the Hudson, and posted his army at Saratoga. The American general soon after marched up the river, and encamped at Stillwater, a few miles from the enemy.

16. On the 19th of September, a battle commenced at first between scouting parties, but soon both armies became engaged. The thunder of cannon and the noise of conflict continued till night, when the Americans retreated to their camp, and the British slept on their arms. The loss of the enemy was over 600 men; that of the Americans about half that number. The next day the British general intrenched his army. He was now in great distress. His provisions began to fail, and his horses were already starving for want of fodder. His Indian forces began to desert him, and no assistance arrived from New York as he expected.

17. In this condition he resolved to risk another battle. On the 7th of October he drew out a part of his men, and made an advance toward the left wing of the Americans, when a furious attack was made by Col. Morgan with his riflemen. Arnold, with his usual impetuosity, led on the troops, and soon put the right of the British to rout, seized their cannon, and drove them into their intrenchments. The whole American line now assailed the enemy with desperate bravery, and before night stormed their intrenchments, and compelled them to fall back to a stronger position, with a loss of 400 killed and taken, and a large quantity of baggage. Among the slain were Gen. Frazer and several other valuable officers of the British army. The American loss was about eighty men.



DEATH OF GENERAL FRAZER.

18. Burgoyne, now convinced that he could not advance, resolved to retreat without delay to Fort Edward, and thence to Canada. But it was too late. He found himself sur-

17. What took place on the 7th of October? What distinguished British general was killed?

18. What did Burgoyne now resolve to do? What happened while he and his officers were sitting in council? When did Burgoyne surrender his army?

rounded by the Americans, and all the passes strongly guarded. He was destitute of provisions, his troops were exhausted, and a destructive fire from the enemy was constantly pouring in upon his camp. While he, with his officers, was holding a council, a cannon-ball crossed the table around which they were seated. In this state of distress it was resolved to surrender the whole army. Burgoyne immediately opened a negotiation with the American general, and articles of stipulation were agreed upon on the 17th of October. The British were to deliver up all their arms, baggage, and stores to the Americans, and return to England, on condition of not serving against the United States during the war. The whole number surrendered, including officers and men, was 5,791.* The loss of the British since the siege of Ticonderoga amounted to about 9,000 men. General Gates, in honor of this great victory, received the thanks of congress and a gold medal.†

19. In the mean time, Sir Henry Clinton had sent an army of 3,000 men, under Gen. Vaughan, up the Hudson; but instead of hastening to the relief of Burgoyne, he spent his time in plundering and burning the villages along the river. As soon as he heard of the surrender of the British army, he retreated to New York. The glorious success of the northern army spread universal joy through the nation, and the large quantity of arms, ammunition, &c., taken from the enemy, well supplied the Americans with the means of prosecuting the war.

20. We now return to the affairs of Washington's army.

19. What had Sir Henry Clinton done in the mean time? What did Vaughan do?

20. When did the British take possession of Philadelphia?

* The trophies obtained by this capitulation were, 42 brass field-pieces, 7,000 muskets with 6,000 dozen cartridges, a vast supply of shot, shells, &c., a great number of tents and military stores, with clothing for 7,000 men.

† Gates was not on the field, nor, indeed, did he leave his encampment during either of the battles of Stillwater and Saratoga, or, as they are often called, "Bellemus heights." During the battle of Saratoga he was quietly sitting in his room, conversing with Sir Francis Clark, a British officer, then a prisoner. "It is a curious fact," says Sparks, in his life of Arnold, "that an officer, who really had no command in the army, was the leader in one of the most spirited and important battles of the Revolution." Though the victory was mainly achieved by the bravery and military abilities of Gen. Arnold, Gates, in his report of it to congress, made no mention of his services, or the brave Morgan's.

Soon after his retreat to Philadelphia, he again marched out his troops to give battle to the enemy, but a violent storm, which unfitted their arms for use, prevented. Washington, with a part of his army, crossed the Schuylkill, and soon after, the other division under Gen. Wayne* was attacked and defeated. It was now impossible to prevent the march of the enemy into Philadelphia. The inhabitants had already removed the magazines and public stores; and congress had adjourned to Lancaster. On the 26th of September, the British took possession of the city.

21. A part of the British army remained in the city, and the remainder took post at Germantown. Washington, taking advantage of the divided situation of the enemy, on the night of October 3d, sent several divisions to attack the British at Germantown, in front and rear. Next morning two detachments assaulted the enemy on the right and left. But the other divisions which were to attack them in the rear did not arrive in time; so that the troops were divided, and vigorously repulsed by the enemy. In their confusion many were killed, and many taken prisoners. The loss on the American side was about 1,200; that of the enemy, 500.

22. The Americans at this time had strong garrisons in Fort Mercer at Red Bank, and in Fort Mifflin on Mud Island—at opposite sides of the Delaware river. These were repeatedly assaulted by the British; and after the loss of 500 men, they succeeded in taking them, Nov. 18th. The Americans lost thirty-two men. The British fleet could now come quite up to the city. The condition of Washington's troops was truly distressing. By their frequent marches they had worn out their shoes and clothing. They might

21. Describe the attack on the British at Germantown.

22. Where was Red Bank? *Ans.* On the Jersey side of the Delaware river, seven miles south of Philadelphia. Where is Mud Island? *Ans.* It is seven miles below Philadelphia, in the Delaware river. It is strongly fortified. What was the condition of Washington's army? To what place did they retire for winter quarters? Where did the British winter?

* Anthony Wayne, called "Mad Anthony," was born in Easton, Pennsylvania, in 1745. He was appointed brigadier-general in 1776. He was engaged in numerous battles, and was ever distinguished for bravery, skill, and intrepidity. In 1792, he succeeded St. Clair in the command of the army employed against the Indians. It is said of him that his name was a host. He died in 1796.

have been tracked, it is said, by the blood of their feet. The American army at length retired to winter quarters at a place called Valley Forge, about twenty-five miles from Philadelphia. The British army was quartered in the city.

EVENTS OF 1778.

1. The defeat of Burgoyne, and the surrender of his army, struck all Europe with astonishment. The people of England were exceedingly mortified and indignant. Their national pride was humbled. Complaints and reproaches were constantly poured forth against the ministry and parliament. A plan of reconciliation was at once proposed, and commissioners sent to restore peace between the revolted colonies and the mother country. France, who had hitherto hesitated, now openly acknowledged the Independence of the United States, and entered into alliance with them. A fleet was soon sent to America, to aid in the war against Great Britain. Other nations of Europe soon acknowledged the national character of the United States.

2. The members of congress had found it necessary to frame a league, by which their power might be increased and their authority enforced. For this purpose they adopted "Articles of Confederation,"* which were approved by each state. By these, congress was authorized to declare war, to conclude peace, contract alliances, and act as a sov-

1. What effect did the defeat of Burgoyne produce in Europe ?

2. What power did the "Articles of Confederation" confer on congress ? Who was elected inspector-general ? *Ans.* The Baron Steuben. He was a native of Prussia, and had served many years in the armies of Frederick the Great. He came to America in 1776, and by his knowledge of the military tactics of Europe, rendered the most essential service to the army. He died at Steubenville, in the State of New York, in 1794.

* These "Articles of Confederation" amounted to little more than a league of friendship between the states. The plan was first proposed by Dr. Franklin, in the summer of 1775. But at that time nothing was done. Congress appointed a committee, June 11th, 1777, to prepare a plan of confederation. In July a plan was reported, and after various changes, was adopted by congress, Nov. 15th, 1777. These were finally approved and ratified by all the states. Maryland was the last to adopt them, March 1st, 1781. This confederation was defective, but remained the basis of union until the adoption of the present constitution, in 1789.

oreign head to the nation. Congress now took more vigorous measures to improve the order and discipline of the troops. Baron Steuben was elected inspector-general to superintend the tactics of the army.

3. In the spring, commissioners arrived from England, and offered terms of reconciliation. In a word, the British ministry offered to give the Americans what they asked for before the commencement of the war. But congress was firm in the purpose to maintain the independence of the nation. The motto of the people was, "Independence now, and Independence forever." The commissioners, bent on the accomplishment of their object, resorted to bribery. An offer of ten thousand pounds sterling was made to General Reed, if he would bring about a reconciliation. He replied, in the true spirit of freedom, "I am not worth purchasing, but such as I am, the king of Great Britain is not rich enough to buy me."

4. The American army, while in winter quarters at Valley Forge, suffered great extremities. The soldiers several times nearly perished with hunger, and Washington having no means of relieving their necessities, permitted them to seize on the provisions of the neighboring farmers. Half naked and half starved, many fell sick and died, for want of the necessaries of life. But spring opened; and Washington, after incessant exertion, found his army again in comfortable circumstances. The British army still occupied Philadelphia. In May, Gen. Howe resigned his command, and was succeeded by Sir Henry Clinton. The English ministry, expecting that France would now take an active part in the war, and deeming Philadelphia an unsafe position, being too far from the sea and liable to be blockaded, ordered the troops to leave and repair to New York. On the 18th of June they left Philadelphia, crossed the Delaware, and proceeded through the Jerseys toward Sandy Hook.

3. Who arrived in the spring of 1778? What offer did they make to Gen. Reed? His reply? Would you have done as he did?

4. What was the condition of Washington's army at Valley Forge? When did the British leave Philadelphia?

5. The British had no sooner left Philadelphia, than Washington commenced a pursuit. He came up with them not far from Monmouth court-house, where a severe but indecisive battle was fought. During this engagement Washington had occasion to reprove General Lee,* for not strictly obeying his orders. At this Lee was greatly offended, and afterward wrote to Washington, demanding an apology. The case was submitted to a court-martial, and Lee being convicted of misconduct, was deprived of his office for one year. In this battle the British lost about 350 men; the Americans about 200. Many of the German troops during the winter had married in Philadelphia, and allured by the charms of wedded life, about one thousand deserted the camp of the British. Washington continued to harass the enemy in their march through New Jersey. The British having entered New York, Washington conducted his army to White Plains. Congress now returned to Philadelphia.

6. When Great Britain learned that France had formed an alliance with the United States, she immediately declared war against that nation. In July, a large French fleet, under Count d'Estaing, arrived in Chesapeake bay. This excited joy and hope throughout the nation. A plan was soon concerted in congress for attacking the British at Newport in Rhode Island. For this purpose, Gen. Sullivan, with

5. When was the battle of Monmouth fought? This place is now called Freehold. It is sixty-four miles from Philadelphia. Who was reprov'd by Washington? The decision of the court-martial?

6. When and where did a French fleet arrive? What plan was concerted? What took place on the 9th of August, 1778? What prevented a battle between the fleets?

* Charles Lee was born in Wales. He entered the army at an early age. He traveled through several kingdoms of Europe, and came to America in 1756. He was engaged in the attack upon Ticonderoga, July, 1758, when Abercrombie was defeated. He afterward returned to Europe, and served under Burgoyne, in Portugal, and soon after entered into the Polish service. After this, he rambled over all Europe, and returned to America in 1773. He soon traveled through the country, animating the colonies to resistance. In 1775, he was appointed a major-general in the American army. He was learned, and possessed vigorous powers of mind; and, as an officer, he was brave, able, and did much toward disciplining the American army. After he was sentenced by the court-martial to be suspended one year from his office, he retired to an estate he had purchased in Virginia, and never afterward joined the army. In 1782, he went to Philadelphia, and took lodgings at an inn. After being there three or four days, he was seized with a fever, which terminated his life, October 2d. The last words which he uttered were, "Stand by me, my brave grenadiers, stand by me."

a detachment from Washington's army, and with reinforcements from New England, amounting in all to 10,000 men, proceeded thither, and on the 9th of August, took a position on the north end of Rhode Island. The French fleet and the army were to begin the attack at the same time. On the 9th of August, the British fleet appeared off the harbor. The French seeing this, immediately weighed anchor and commenced a chase. But a violent storm came on, which prevented a battle, and greatly damaged the fleets.

7. Owing to this disaster, the French admiral was obliged to repair to Boston to refit his ships. The army had already commenced the siege of Newport; but discouraged by the ill success of the fleet, the troops at length retreated. The British pursued, and on the 28th of August attacked them in the northern part of the island; but they were repulsed with the loss of 260 men. The loss of the Americans was 210. Soon after this, the French fleet left the coast of New England, and sailed to the West Indies.

8. The enemy spent the rest of the summer in plundering expeditions. At New Bedford, Fair Haven, Egg Harbor, and other places, a vast amount of public and private property was seized, and much wantonly destroyed. The inhabitants were sometimes left in a state of abject wretchedness.

9. Several instances of shocking barbarity occurred during the summer. A regiment of cavalry under the command of Colonel Baylor, called the Washington Light-Horse, while asleep in a barn at Tappan, were surprised by the British, and about half of them killed. General Grey, who commanded the enemy, ordered his men to give "the rebels" no quarter. They fell upon them with their bayonets, and notwithstanding their intreaties for mercy, pierced them through and through. About forty were saved by the compassion of the soldiers, contrary to the orders of the general.

10. But a tragedy still more horrid was acted at Wyom-

7. What did the army do? The British?

8. How did the enemy spend the rest of the summer?

9. What happened at Tappan? Where is Tappan? *Ans.* On the Hudson, or North river.

ing. This was a happy and flourishing settlement on the Susquehanna, in the northern part of Pennsylvania. At that time it contained more than 1,000 families, most of whom were from Connecticut. Industry and frugality had added to their prosperity; and intelligence and morality had awakened in them the love of liberty and human rights. They entered zealously into the war, and furnished about 1,000 soldiers for the army of Washington. Still, there were a few tories, or loyalists, among them; and these, incensed at the views and measures of the great majority, went to the



MASSACRE AT WYOMING.

neighboring tribes of Indians, and there plotted measures for the destruction of the whole settlement. On the 1st of July about 1,600 men—Tories, British, and Indians—under Col. Butler, the tory commander, and an Indian chief, fell upon the inhabitants, set fire to the houses, cut the men to pieces, and left women and children to perish in the flames. The whole settlement was ravaged and laid waste; crops destroyed, fruit trees torn up, and cattle killed. All was ruined except the farms of the tories, which appeared like islands in the midst of the surrounding desolation.

10. Describe the massacre of Wyoming. What is the meaning of massacre?

11. The British now determined to change the theater of action from the north to the south. Accordingly 2,000 men, under the command of Col. Campbell, were sent from New York to invade Georgia. There were only 1,200 Americans in that state to oppose them. They landed near Savannah on the 29th of December, and after defeating a small body of troops under Gen. Robert Howe, they took possession of the city. Gen. Howe retreated with his men, and crossed the river into South Carolina. In the mean time, Gen. Prevost, with the British forces from Florida, having taken the fort at Sunbury, the only remaining military post in Georgia, marched to Savannah, and took the chief command of the southern British army. About this time, Gen. Lincoln* received orders to take command of the southern forces, and Washington retired with his army into winter quarters, near Middlebrook in New Jersey. Thus ended the campaign of 1778; the least important since the beginning of the war.

EVENTS OF 1779.

1. The population of the southern states was much more scattered than that of the northern; and many of the people were tories, whose influence over the negroes and neighboring Indians was very dangerous to the true lovers of liberty. Taking advantage of this state of things, the British hoped to make an easy conquest of the south.

11. What did the British now resolve to do? Who was sent to Georgia? How many Americans were there to oppose them in Georgia? When did the British take Savannah? Where is Savannah?

* Benjamin Lincoln was born at Hingham, Massachusetts, in 1733. He had few advantages of education, and was employed in agricultural pursuits till he was more than forty years of age. At the commencement of our revolutionary struggle, he held the office of lieutenant-colonel of militia. In 1776, he was appointed major-general, and in October, joined the main army at New York. In 1778, he was appointed to the command of the army in the southern states; and he arrived in Charleston in December. Although constrained to capitulate, May 12, 1780, his reputation as an able, prudent, and brave officer, was untarnished. He was at the siege of Yorktown, and appointed to receive the submission of the captured troops. In 1781, congress elected him secretary of war. In 1787, he was elected lieutenant-governor of Massachusetts. In 1789, he was appointed commissioner to make peace

2. General Lincoln, who had been appointed to the command of the southern army, in April, left South Carolina, and marched against the British in Georgia. Arriving at the Savannah, he sent a detachment of 2,000 men, under Gen. Ash, across the river, to take post at Brier creek. Here, on the 3d of March, Ash was surprised by Prevost and totally defeated, with the loss of 450 men, while that of the enemy was but twenty-three. This victory gave the British full possession of Georgia. They now, in turn, prepared to invade South Carolina. But not being able to cross the Savannah river, they attempted to get possession of the island of Port Royal; but in this attempt they were defeated by the Carolinians under Gen. Moultrie, with severe loss. At length the British general crossed the Savannah, and marched against Charleston. The inhabitants of that city made every preparation for defense, and notified Lincoln of their danger. The British, not able to force their way into the city, retreated and took post on the island of St. John's, and Stono ferry, on the mainland opposite.

3. A company of tories from the interior of South Carolina, while marching to join the British forces, were attacked, Feb. 14, by a body of militia under Col. Pickens, and totally defeated. Col. Boyd, their commander, was killed, and seventy of the prisoners were condemned to death as traitors to their country. But only five, the principal leaders, were executed.

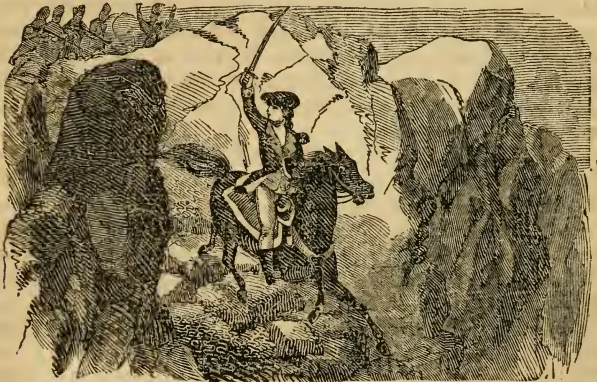
4. The British at the north were occupied, most of the

2. Who was appointed to the command of the American army in the southern department? Describe the attempt of the British to invade South Carolina. To take Charleston.

3. Describe the defeat of the company of tories. How many were executed? How many do you think ought to have been executed?

with the Creek Indians. An incident occurred while on this mission, which, as it portrays in lively colors the shrewdness of the Indian, and the treatment he has received of the whites, is here inserted. One of the chiefs of the Creek nation asked Gen. Lincoln to sit down on a log. He was soon after desired to *move a little*, to make room for an Indian to sit down. In a few moments he was requested to move still further. The request was repeated until the general had got to the end of the log; when the chief asked him to move a little further. Lincoln at once replied, "I can not, unless I get off the log." "Just so it is with us," said the chief; "you have moved us back, and moved us back, until we have got to the end of the land—the edge of the water; and now you ask us to move further." Gen. Lincoln died at Hingham, in 1810.

year, in various predatory excursions; ravaging the coasts, plundering the country, and slaughtering the inhabitants. Washington could do little to prevent these barbarities. He dared not divide his small army, stationed on both sides of the Hudson, in the immediate vicinity of the enemy, as he would then subject the whole to be destroyed. In May, Virginia was invaded by a band of British plunderers. At Norfolk, Portsmouth, and other places, a large quantity of public stores and private property was carried off or destroyed, to the amount of two and a half million dollars. Soon after, the coast of Connecticut was laid waste by the enemy. New Haven was plundered; Fairfield and Norwalk were reduced to ashes.



OLD PUT'S ESCAPE AT HORSENECK.

5. As the British approached Horseneck, Gen. Putnam,* with a band of 150 men, and two pieces of cannon, took his

4. What places were plundered—laid waste—burned?

5. What happened at a place called Horseneck? What and where is Horseneck? *Ans.* It is a village in Greenwich, Fairfield county, Connecticut. The precipice that Putnam plunged down had about one hundred steps made in it, for the use of foot passengers.

* Israel Putnam was born in Salem, Massachusetts, in 1718. He was a distinguished soldier of the French and Indian wars; and subsequently acted a very con-

station on a high hill by the meeting-house. From this position he poured a raking fire upon the enemy; but at length perceiving that his little force was in danger of destruction, he ordered his men to retreat into a neighboring swamp, while he himself put spurs to his horse, and rushed down a steep precipice at full gallop. A musket-ball, it is said, passed through his hat; but he escaped without injury.

6. One of the most daring and brilliant feats of the war, was the recapture of Stony Point* on the Hudson. It had been taken from the Americans and strongly fortified by the British, and was then garrisoned by 600 men. On the evening of the 15th of July, Gen. Wayne with 1,200 men silently approached the fortress. Having divided his force into two columns, about midnight a furious assault was made at opposite points. The garrison opened upon them a tremendous fire of musketry and grape-shot; but nothing could stop their progress. They opened their way with the bayonet, scaled the fort, and the two columns met in the center of the works. The loss of the British was sixty killed and 540 taken prisoners, besides a large amount of military

6. Describe the capture of Stony Point—Paulus Hook. By what name is Paulus Hook now called? *Ans.* Jersey City. It is situated in New Jersey, opposite to New York.

spicuous part in the war of the Revolution. Being intended for a farmer, he received only a common education. He had a strong mind, a vigorous constitution, great bodily strength, enterprise, and activity. He removed to Pomfret, in Connecticut, in 1739, and in 1757 was promoted to the rank of major by the legislature of that state. Putnam received the intelligence of the battle of Lexington as he was plowing in the middle of a field. He left his plow there, unyoked his oxen, and without changing his clothes, set off for the scene of action. Learning the situation of things, he returned to Connecticut, levied a regiment, and marched to Cambridge. He was now appointed a major-general, and acted a very important part during the war. After the loss of Fort Montgomery, situated in the highlands on the Hudson, Washington determined to build another fortification, and he directed Putnam to fix upon the spot. To him belongs the praise of having chosen West Point. On a certain occasion, a tory from the British army was detected in Putnam's camp. Governor Tryon claimed him as a British officer, threatening vengeance if he was not restored. General Putnam wrote the following pithy reply:

"Sir,—Nathan Palmer, a lieutenant in your king's service, was taken in my camp as a spy,—he was tried as a spy,—he was condemned as a spy,—and he shall be hanged as a spy.

"P. S. Afternoon. He is hanged."

ISRAEL PUTNAM.

In 1779, he was seized with a paralytic affliction, which impaired the activity of his body, and put an end to his military career. He spent the remainder of his days in retirement, and died at Brooklyn, Connecticut, May 29th, 1790.

Stony Point is a high, rocky point on the west bank of the Hudson, about forty miles north of New York, nearly opposite to Verplank's Point.

stores. The Americans lost about 100. The British garrison at Paulus Hook was surprised, July 19th, by Major Lee, who stormed the works, killed thirty, and took 160 prisoners.

7. During the summer, several successful attempts were made against the Indians. One was made by Col. Clarke, of Virginia, who, with a brave band of 130 men, penetrated the Indian territory, and took the British fort at St. Vincennes, on the Wabash. To effect their object, the troops had to endure great hardships. For several miles they were obliged to wade through swamps, where the water was up to their arms, with their muskets and baggage on their heads. When they arrived, the enemy surrendered without resistance.

8. An army of 4,000 men, under the command of General Sullivan, was sent against the savages on the frontiers of Pennsylvania and New York. The Indians every where were routed, from Wyoming to the Genessee. Their forts were taken, their villages burned, their fruit trees and corn fields destroyed; no vestige of human industry was permitted to exist. This severe but necessary punishment kept the savages in check for some time after.

9. Spain, anxious to recover Florida, Jamaica, and Gibraltar, declared war against Great Britain during the summer, and soon after, a large French and Spanish fleet appeared on the coast of England; but nothing was accomplished. Early in the fall, the French fleet, under D'Estaing, arrived on the coast of Georgia, with 6,000 troops on board, and soon after captured three British frigates and a fifty-gun ship. A plan was immediately concerted for the siege of the British at Savannah. Gen. Lincoln marched his army from Charleston, and united with the French soldiers in besieging the city, on the 23d of September. The enemy were soon closely pressed. But D'Estaing, the French commander, desirous of returning to the West Indies, proposed

7, 8. What took place during the summer? There are two precepts very similar in language, but dissimilar in import—viz., 1. "Do to others as you wish others to do to you;" 2. "Do to others as others do to you." Upon which did Sullivan act in his treatment of the Indians?

9. When did a French fleet arrive on the coast? What plan was concerted? What did Lincoln determine to do?

to raise the siege. Instead of this, Lincoln determined to take the city, if possible, by storm.

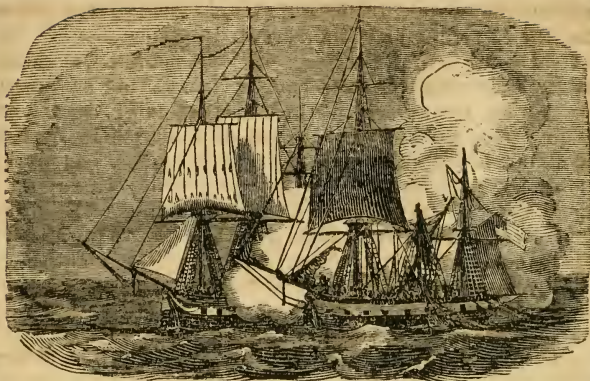
10. On the 9th of October a vigorous assault was made, and the out-works were soon carried. But as they advanced, the garrison opened upon them with such fury, that the assailants were defeated with a loss of 1,000 men. Among the slain was Count Pulaski, a brave Pole, who had served in the American army for several years with distinguished zeal. But no one fell more universally lamented than the heroic Sergeant Jasper.* Soon after this defeat, the French left the coast, and the American forces retired to Charleston.

11. About this time a naval engagement took place.

10. Describe the attack on Savannah.

11. Describe the engagement between the *Serapis* and *Bon Homme Richard*.

* Jasper was one of the many youth whose memory should be warmly cherished by every American. He first distinguished himself in the defense of Fort Moultrie, in South Carolina. Says one who was present, "A ball from one of the enemy's ships carried away our flag-staff. Scarcely had the stars of liberty touched the sand, before Jasper flew and snatched them up, and having fixed them to the point of his spontoon, or spear, he leaped up on the breastwork amid the storm and fury of the battle, and restored them to their daring station, waving his hat at the same time, and huzzaing, '*God save liberty and my country forever!*'" Jasper had a brother who had joined the British; and, though a tory, he loved him with warm affection. In company with his particular friend, Sergeant Newton, Jasper went to visit this brother at Ebenezer, a British post near Savannah. While there, his brother showed him ten or twelve American prisoners, who had been taken as deserters, and were to be sent immediately to Savannah, and probably executed. Among them was a lovely young woman, wife of one of the prisoners, with her child, a sweet little boy about five years old. Their pitiable condition moved Jasper and Newton to tears, and they retired, resolved to rescue them or die in the attempt. The prisoners, under a guard of ten men, were soon sent off for Savannah. Taking leave of his brother, Jasper and his friend departed, and by a circuitous route came up with them, and pursued for several miles, watching for some favorable moment to effect their object. Just as all hope began to fail, it occurred to Jasper, that possibly they might stop at a famous spring about two miles from Savannah. They pushed on, and concealed themselves in the bushes near the spring. Soon the guard and prisoners appeared, and a halt was ordered. Hope again inspired the heroes in ambush. All but four left their arms by the side of the road, and proceeded to the spring. Two were ordered to keep guard, while the other two armed men were commanded to give the prisoners drink. These two set their guns against a tree, and advanced to the spring, drank themselves, and filled their canteens for the prisoners. At this moment Jasper and Newton burst forth from the thicket, seized the muskets standing against the tree, and shot down the two men who were keeping guard. They now rushed on, and with the butt end of the muskets leveled two others, who had sprung forward to seize the guns of the fallen guard. They now ordered the rest to surrender at the point of the bayonet, which they instantly did. Jasper now broke off the handcuffs of the prisoners, and giving each one a musket, marched them off to the American camp, to the inexpressible joy and admiration of all. On the day of his death Jasper performed a feat of similar daring, but in which, unfortunately, he received a mortal wound. He died like a Christian soldier, in full hopes of a better life



BATTLE BETWEEN THE BON HOMME AND SERAPIS.

John Paul Jones,* a Scotchman by birth, having distinguished himself in taking prizes at sea, was appointed by congress a captain in the American navy. On the 14th of September, he sailed from a port in France, and soon after, off the coast of Scotland, fell in with the Serapis, a British ship of 44 guns. The name of his own ship, which carried 40 guns, was Bon Homme Richard. The attack was made in the evening, and an hour after the battle commenced, the ships approached so near each other, that Jones threw his grappling-irons aboard the Serapis, and lashed them fast together.

12. A terrible slaughter now ensued. An incessant discharge of cannon swept their decks, and frequently both frigates were on fire. Amid the darkness of night, the scene

12. What was the result? What did Jones receive for his success?

* John Paul Jones was born at Arbington, in Scotland, 1747. After being engaged some time in the merchant service of Great Britain, he came to America at the commencement of the Revolution, and received a commission in the navy of the United States. He took many prizes, and annoyed the enemy's merchant vessels in every sea. After the peace, he was for a time in the service of Russia. He died at Paris in 1792. He was a man of signal talent and courage, but impetuous, irritable, and harsh in the exercise of his authority.

was awfully sublime. After a bloody battle of three hours, the British frigate was surrendered. Jones perceiving that his own ship was fast filling with water, ordered his men on board the Serapis. Soon after she sunk to the bottom. For his success on this occasion, Jones received a golden sword from the king of France, and a golden medal from the American congress.

EVENTS OF 1780.

1. During the winter, the American army endured great hardships from the want of food and clothing. This suffering resulted mostly from the circulation of what was called "continental money." To pay off the soldiers, and to meet other expenses, congress was obliged to issue a vast amount of this money. At this time it had lost almost all its value. Thirty dollars of this paper was not worth more than one dollar in silver. The troops, whose wages were paid in this money, could buy neither food nor clothing with it. So great was the distress, that some regiments revolted and left the army. But Washington, by his intreaties with congress, and appeals to the people in all parts of the country, saved his army from total destruction.

2. The British army, during the past year, had been reinforced by fresh troops from England; and Sir Henry Clinton now determined to invade South Carolina with a powerful force. Accordingly he left New York, entered the port of Charleston, and on the first of April commenced the siege of that city. The American army under Gen. Lincoln was small, compared with that of the enemy, which amounted to 9,000 men.

3. But every exertion was made to save the city. Communication with the country was kept open for some time by a detachment stationed at Monk's Corner. This post was soon taken, and the garrison of the city found them-

-
1. Did you ever see any continental money? What can you say about it?
 2. What did Sir Henry Clinton do?
 3. What was Gen. Lincoln obliged to do? What did Col. Tarleton do?

selves closely pressed on all sides. With no hope of success against a force so much superior, on the 12th of May, Lincoln capitulated, and he and his troops became prisoners of war. Charleston fell; and South Carolina lay open to the victorious troops of the enemy. Clinton's object now was to make himself master of the whole state. Three expeditions which he sent into the country were highly successful. Georgetown and Ninety-Six were seized; and Tarleton* spread terror and death wherever he passed. A body of 400 Americans, under Col. Buford, the last fragment of the southern army, was attacked by Tarleton, defeated, and, after they had laid down their arms, were entirely cut to pieces, while crying for quarter. All further resistance now was hopeless, and the whole state submitted to British authority. Early in June, Clinton, with a large body of troops, embarked for New York, leaving Cornwallis, with an army of 4,000 men, to complete the conquest of the southern states.

4. Although the people were obliged to submit to royal authority, they were ready, on the first favorable opportunity, to seize their arms in defense of their country. Col. Sumter,† with a band of devoted patriots, attacked and defeated several detachments of the enemy. At length an army of

4. What is said of Colonel Sumter?

* Col. Tarleton was born in Liverpool, England. He was brave, fearless, and often cruel to those who fell into his power. In the battle of Cowpens, Col. William Washington commanded the cavalry, and contributed much to the victory. In the flight of Tarleton's troops, Washington was foremost in the pursuit. He and his men cut down great numbers of the enemy, and even Tarleton received a severe wound in his hand by a blow from Washington's saber. Tarleton could never bear to hear him praised after this. On a certain occasion, he observed, "I am told that Colouel Washington is a poor, ignorant fellow, and can neither read nor write." "Be that as it may," said a lady present, "you will allow, Colonel, that he can make his mark," pointing at the same time to Tarleton's wounded hand. When some ladies in Charleston were eulogizing Colonel Washington, "I would be very glad," said Tarleton, "to get a sight of him. I have heard much talk of him, but have never yet seen him." "Had you looked behind you at the battle of Cowpens," said one, "you might have enjoyed that pleasure." Tarleton returned to England after the war, and was for some time a member of parliament.

† Thomas Sumter was born in 1735. He was ever devoted to the freedom of his country, and the enterprises which he conducted were for the most part crowned with brilliant success. "I shall be glad," says Cornwallis in a letter to Tarleton, "to hear that Sumter is in no condition to give us further trouble. He certainly has been our greatest plague in this country." He died in 1832, near Camden, South Carolina.

4,000 men, a part of whom had marched from New Jersey, assembled in North Carolina, under Gen. Gates. This force advanced toward the enemy as far as Clermont. The British army was then at Camden, under Cornwallis and Rawdon.

5. The two armies, each making an attempt to surprise the other, on the 15th of August met, in the darkness of the night, about eight miles from Camden. Next morning the British made a furious charge upon the militia, and soon put them to flight. The continentals, or the regular American troops, stood the charge with great bravery, and fought with desperation, led on by Baron de Kalb; * but at length they were pressed in front and rear, and their ranks being broken, they fled in disorder. The brave De Kalb fell in this engagement with eleven wounds. The loss of the Americans was supposed to be about 1,000 men; that of the enemy 325.

6. Sumter, who had been very successful against the enemy, when he heard that Gates was defeated, fled with the prisoners and booty he had taken. But he was pursued by the furious Tarleton, and being surprised in the night, his forces were killed or scattered, and the prisoners retaken. Sumter, with a few men, escaped into North Carolina. In another part of the state, Gen. Marion,† a determined patriot,

5. What happened on the 15th of August?

6. What did Gen. Marion do?

* Baron De Kalb was born in Germany, in 1717. When young he entered into the service of France, and came here as a French officer in 1777. He offered his services to congress, and was soon made a major-general. After the surrender of Lincoln, De Kalb was sent with 2,000 continentals to operate against the British; and had he been left alone, he would have given a good account of those noble troops. But congress hurried off the envious and jealous Gates, who at once changed the cautious and skillful course of De Kalb, and spurning his advice, rushed into the arms of the British, and had his army cut to pieces. That day De Kalb was a host, and his men fought worthy of such a leader. While they were sustaining the shock of the whole British army, Gates put spurs to his horse, and left the field. The brave, the noble De Kalb, on foot, at the head of his men, again and again led them to the charge. But at length he fell, pierced with eleven wounds. Noble, generous, and frank—De Kalb had the heart of a lion, in a breast where dwelt every generous emotion.

† Francis Marion was a brave and able officer. He was born near Georgetown, South Carolina, in 1732. He died in 1795. While General Marion was in camp, near Georgetown, a British officer was sent to him, to make some arrangements about the exchange of prisoners. Instead of finding Marion, as he expected, "some stout figure of a warrior, of martial aspect and flaming regimentals, he beheld in our hero a swarthy, smoke-dried little man, with scarce enough of threadbare homespun to cover his nakedness! And in place of tall ranks of gayly dressed soldiers,

with a brave party of horsemen, defeated many scouting parties of the enemy. To furnish his troops with swords, he cut up the saws of the saw-mills, and by concealing his men in the swamps and thickets, he avoided a regular engagement with the British forces.

7. In this state of things at the south, many of the people turned tories, and joined the British army. A large body of these men, under Major Ferguson, a British officer, having committed the most atrocious excesses, was attacked by a select band of mounted riflemen, October 7th. The battle was fought on the top of King's Mountain, where Ferguson had posted his men. The attack was furious, and the enemy defended themselves with great bravery, till their leader fell, and then threw down their arms. About 300 were killed or wounded, and 850 taken prisoners. The Americans lost about 200.

8. About this time, General Gates, on account of his ill success, was superseded in his command at the south by

7. What took place on the top of King's Mountain?

8. By whom was General Gates succeeded?

he beheld a handful of sun-burned, yellow-legged militiamen, some roasting potatoes, and some asleep with their black firelocks and powderhorns lying by them on the logs!" After every thing was settled to his satisfaction, the officer took up his hat to retire. "Oh no!" said Marion, "it is now about our time of dining; and I hope, sir, you will give us the pleasure of your company to dinner." The dinner to which he alluded was no other than a heap of sweet potatoes, that were very snugly roasting under the embers, and which the servant Tom, with his pine-stick poker, soon liberated from their ashy confinement; and having cleansed them of the ashes, partly by blowing them with his breath, and partly by brushing them with the sleeve of his old cotton shirt, he piled some of the best on a large piece of bark, and placed them between the British officer and Marion. "I fear," said the general, "our dinner will not prove quite so palatable to you as I could wish; but it is the best we have. I suppose it is not equal to your style of dining." "No, indeed," said the officer; "and this, I imagine, is one of your accidental dinners. In general, no doubt, you live a great deal better." "Rather worse," replied Marion, "for often we don't get enough of this." "Heavens!" rejoined the officer. "But probably what you lose in *meal* you make up in *malt*; though stinted in *provisions*, you draw noble *pay*." "Not a cent, sir," said the general, "not a cent." "Heavens and earth! then you must be in a bad box—*all fighting and no pay!* and *no provisions but potatoes!*" "Why, sir," replied Marion, "these things depend on feeling; the *heart* is all: when that is much interested, a man can do any thing. Many a youth would think it hard to indent himself a slave for fourteen years. But let him be over head and ears in love, and with such a beauteous sweetheart as Rachel, and he will think no more of fourteen years' servitude than young Jacob did. Well now, this is exactly my case. I am in love; and my sweetheart is LIBERTY. Be that heavenly nymph my companion, and these wilds and woods shall have charms beyond London and Paris in slavery." The young officer was so struck with Marion's sentiments, that he never rested until he threw up his commission, and retired from the British service.—*Life of Marion.*

Gen. Greene. The army was now at Charlotte, N. C., and poorly supplied with food and clothing. Greene soon devised plans for harassing the enemy, and cutting off their stores; but no general engagement took place till after the commencement of another year.

9. We must now turn to the affairs of the northern department. Washington's army was still lying in camp, watching the movements of the enemy, at New York. A French fleet had arrived in New England with an army of 5,000 soldiers. But a more powerful fleet from England prevented any combined operations against the British forces. At this time the prospects of the country were truly alarming. Defeat disheartened the American forces at the south, and poverty and wretchedness at the north.

10. In this gloomy state of affairs, the treachery of Arnold came to light. After the evacuation of Philadelphia by the British, in 1778, Arnold, not having fully recovered from his wounds at Saratoga, was stationed there as military governor. Soon after, he married Miss Shippen* from one of the tory families in that city. His bravery and success in battle had given him a great reputation in the army and nation, and hitherto he had been one of the most intrepid defenders of American liberty. He now hired a splendid mansion, and, by a course of luxury and excess, soon involved himself deeply in debt. To support his extravagance, he appropriated the public money to his own use. He was accused of this, tried by a court-martial, and sentenced to be reprimanded by the commander-in-chief.

11. At this his pride was wounded, and he resolved on revenge. Some time afterward, concealing his purpose, he applied to Washington for command of the very important

9. What were now the prospects of the country?

10. What was the conduct of Arnold in Philadelphia?

11. What important post was placed under his command? What did he propose to the British general? Who was sent to mature the plan for the surrender of West Point?

* Miss Shippen was the daughter of Edward Shippen, a loyalist or tory, but highly respectable, and afterward chief justice of Pennsylvania. Miss Shippen was but eighteen years old, beautiful, gay, attractive, and ambitious. She had been admired and flattered by the British officers, and was intimately acquainted with Major Andre. She corresponded with him after the British army had gone to New York.

station at West Point.* His wish was granted, Aug. 3d, and he immediately wrote to Clinton, the British general, and proposed to deliver the post into his hands. To accomplish this object, Major Andre† left New York, sailed up the Hudson, and in the night, near West Point, held a private interview with Arnold, and received from him a full description of the fort, the garrison, and the plan to be pursued. It was agreed that Arnold should receive 30,000 pounds sterling, and the rank of brigadier-general in the British army.

12. When Andre was ready to return, he found that the *Vulture*, the vessel in which he came, had been compelled to move down the river. He now endeavored to reach New York by land. Having received a pass from Arnold, he assumed the name of *John Anderson*, and set out to return under the disguise of a traveler. Having safely passed all the American posts or guards, just before he reached New York, he was stopped by three militiamen, whom he supposed to be a British guard. Apprehending no danger, instead of showing his passport, he confessed himself a British officer on important business, and wished to proceed on. He was immediately arrested, Sept. 23d; and finding himself in the hands of the Americans, he offered his purse, his watch, and any reward they might ask, if he might be permitted to pass.

13. Unwilling to betray their country for gold, they began to search his person, and finding papers in his boot, they led him prisoner to Col. Jameson, who was stationed on the American lines. By the urgent request of Andre, Jameson, suspecting no treason, immediately made known to Arnold that *Anderson* was taken prisoner. Arnold, aware

12. What was the result? By whom was Andre stopped? What were their names? *Ans.* John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Vanwert.

13. What did Arnold now do?

* West Point, a village of New York, and military post on the west bank of the Hudson, or North river, where it passes through the Highlands, 53 miles by water above New York, and 100 below Albany. During the revolutionary war this point was strongly fortified, and deemed one of the most important fortresses in America. Most of the former works are now in ruins. A military academy was established here in 1802. The term of study is four years. The number of cadets, or scholars, is limited to 250.

† See National Preceptor, Lesson 29.



CAPTURE OF MAJOR ANDRE.

of his danger, fled from his post, and joined the British army. Andre was tried as a spy by a court-martial at Tappan, convicted, and hung, October 2d. He was a young man of fine talents, and of a noble, ingenuous disposition. It is said that Washington even wept when he saw him led forth to be executed. Sir Henry Clinton exerted all his power to save his life. But the safety of the country demanded his death. Great exertions were made to arrest Arnold, but without success.*

* This hazardous enterprise was undertaken by an officer, under General Lee, by the name of JOHN CHAMPE, a native of Virginia, and a man of great courage and perseverance. To accomplish his object, it was necessary for him to desert the American camp, go to New York, and join the British. Having matured the plan with Major Lee, Champe mounted his horse about eleven o'clock at night, and stealing silently away, set out for New York. As he was passing the lines, one of the patrol hailed him; but putting spurs to his horse, he made his escape. The captain of the guard immediately waited on Lee, and informed him that one of the dragoons had deserted the camp. Lee, wishing to conceal the flight of Champe, made as much delay as possible in furnishing written orders for the pursuit. About an hour after Champe had started, a company of pursuers set off on the chase. By frequently examining the road they kept on his track, and in the morning, a few miles from New York, they descried the deserter about half a mile distant. Champe, who was on the lookout, perceived his pursuers at the same time. A close pursuit now continued for several miles, till Champe, fearing he should be overtaken, drew near to the Hudson, threw himself from his horse, lashed his valise to his shoulders, and calling loudly to some British in boats at no great distance, he plunged into the river. After a few shot upon his pursuers, the British took him on board, and soon carried him to New York. When the pursuers returned to head-quarters

14. Arnold published an address to the American army, in which he reproached congress, and endeavored to induce the soldiers and officers to join the ranks of the enemy. But his address was regarded with the utmost contempt. His character was now branded with infamy, and detested wherever it was known. He stands alone, among all the officers of the Revolution, as a *traitor* to the cause of his country.

15. The American soldiers in their winter quarters again suffered all the miseries of famine and nakedness. Their wants were not supplied till they had revolted and threatened to desert the camp. One body of 1,300 Pennsylvania troops, rendered desperate by their sufferings, left their quarters at Morristown, and set out for Philadelphia, to demand redress of their wrongs. One officer, in attempting to oppose their designs, was killed. At length Gen. Wayne appeared in front of the line, and presenting his pistol, threatened to fire. They charged their bayonets and said, "We love and respect you; but if you fire, you are a dead man. Do not mistake us. We are not going to the enemy. On the contrary, were they now to appear, you should see us fight under your orders with as much resolution and alacrity

14. How was his address regarded by the Americans?

15. What was the situation of the soldiers in their winter quarters? How many started off in a body for Philadelphia? Why? What did General Wayne do?

with Champe's horse, the agony of Major Lee, for a moment, was past description, lest the faithful, honorable, intrepid Champe had fallen. But his fears were soon removed, and he hastened to inform Washington of the success, thus far, of his plan. Champe, shortly after his arrival in New York, enlisted into Arnold's legion, and by careful observation, soon became well acquainted with the habits of the general. He discovered that it was his custom to return home about twelve every night, and that before going to bed, he always visited the garden. Having found two companions, who entered fully into his plans, Champe proposed to seize Arnold in the garden, gag him, convey him through the alleys and streets to a boat, which should be in readiness to carry him across the river to Hoboken; and in case of being questioned, represent Arnold as a drunken soldier, whom they were carrying to the guard-house. Champe communicated his plan to Lee, who, on the night appointed, repaired to Hoboken, ardently hoping to meet his friend there with the traitor. But unfortunately it happened, that on the very day preceding that night, Arnold had removed his quarters to another part of the city, and that Champe, with the other soldiers, had been ordered on board of the fleet destined for the invasion of Virginia. Nor did he escape from the British service till months afterward. At length, seizing a favorable opportunity, he deserted the camp of the enemy, and returning to the American army, was received by Lee and by Washington with many marks of gratitude and honor.—*Lee's Memoirs*.

as ever. But we will be amused no longer. We are determined to obtain what is our just due." Saying this, they proceeded on their march.

16. When they arrived at Princeton, three emissaries from Clinton met them, and tried to hire them to join the British army. They at once seized them as spies, delivered them over to Wayne, and they were immediately executed. The soldiers were soon met by a committee from congress, who satisfied their demands, and persuaded them to return to the camp. They received their wages in specie, and exhibited great manifestations of joy.* For a long time the Dutch had been jealous of the naval superiority of Great Britain, and had encouraged and protected American privateers. In consequence of this, the British government declared war against Holland, Dec. 20th, and thus became involved in war with three powerful nations of Europe—France, Spain, and Holland. Thus closed the events of 1780.

EVENTS OF 1781, AND CLOSE OF THE WAR.

1. Soon after General Greene† took command of the American forces at the south, he sent out General Morgan

16. What was the result of this movement? What war was declared?

1. What did Gen. Greene do? Who was sent in pursuit of Morgan?

* It is difficult for us, at this time, to realize the wretched condition of the American army. Without pay, without proper clothing and food, they felt that their sufferings were intolerable. This mutiny aroused the attention of congress to the wants and privations of the troops, and measures were taken for their relief. The most efficient aid at this crisis was derived from the exertions of ROBERT MORRIS, a wealthy merchant of Philadelphia. He was the great financier of the Revolution. By his advice taxation was resorted to; and in 1781, the Bank of North America, the oldest moneyed institution in the United States, was established by a charter from congress, under the supervision of Robert Morris. This bank exerted a highly beneficial influence upon the currency and upon public credit. To him the army—the nation—was greatly indebted; for he used his own ample private fortune, and his personal credit, to sustain the government. He issued his own notes to the amount of ONE MILLION FOUR HUNDRED THOUSAND DOLLARS, which were all paid. These were the sinews of war, without which Cornwallis would not have been captured. It is said the Americans owed as much to his financial operations as to the negotiations of Franklin, or even the arms of Washington.

† Nathaniel Greene was born in Warwick, Rhode Island, in 1741. While a boy, his fondness for learning was such that he devoted all the time he could spare to its acquisition, and spent all the money he earned in purchasing books. He was early distinguished for natural talents, and in such estimation was his character held, that he was elected a member of the state legislature. In 1776, he was appointed a

with about 1,000 men, to check the devastations of the Tories and British in the western parts of South Carolina. Cornwallis perceiving this movement, sent Tarleton, with 1,100 men, in pursuit of him. Morgan,* finding his antagonist superior in force, retreated as far as Cowpens,† where, finding himself closely pursued, he put his men in readiness to meet the enemy.

2. On the 17th of January, Tarleton, confident of victory, drew up his troops, and led them on to the charge. Morgan's militia broke and fled. His regular troops stood the shock, and fought with great ardor. Soon the enemy pressed on, and Morgan ordered a retreat. In the pursuit, the British were thrown into disorder, and the Continentals turning upon them, cut them down with great slaughter. The enemy were defeated with a loss of 300 killed or wounded, and 500 taken prisoners, with all his artillery and baggage. Of the Americans only twelve men were killed, and sixty wounded. This was one of the severest conflicts during the war. The result was in the highest degree mortifying to Tarleton, and surprising to Cornwallis.

3. Immediately after this victory, Morgan set off with his

2. Describe the battle of Cowpens.

3. Describe the movements of Morgan and Cornwallis.

major-general, and distinguished himself in the battles of Trenton, Princeton, and Germantown. After the disasters which attended the American arms in South Carolina, he was appointed to supersede General Gates. He took the command in the southern department, December 4th, 1780. The ability, prudence, and firmness which he here displayed, have caused him to be ranked, in the scale of our revolutionary generals, second only to Washington. After the close of the war, he returned to Rhode Island, and in 1785, removed with his family to Georgia, where he died, in 1786.

* Daniel Morgan was born in New Jersey, in 1737, and removed to Virginia in 1755. He was wounded in Braddock's defeat, and in the commencement of the revolutionary war, he was appointed by Congress captain of a rifle company, with which he marched to Boston. He was with Montgomery in the memorable expedition against Quebec, in 1775, and no officer distinguished himself more on this occasion than Morgan. He was with Gates at Saratoga, and contributed materially to the glorious triumph obtained over General Burgoyne, though Gates neglected to speak of his merit. He afterward served under Gates and Greene in the campaign at the south. After the battle of Cowpens, Morgan differed in opinion with Greene as to the route to be taken in his retreat; but yielding to the wishes of the commander, when the two divisions of the army united at Guilford court-house, he left the service—it is said, in disgust—and devoted himself to the improvement of his farm in Virginia. He was afterward a member of Congress, and died at Winchester, Virginia, in 1799.

† Cowpens, a town in the northern part of South Carolina, in Union county.



BATTLE OF COWPENS.

trophies on a rapid march toward Virginia. Cornwallis, enraged at so great a loss, determined to cut them off before they had crossed the Catawba river. For this purpose he destroyed all his superfluous baggage, and then, on the 19th of January, commenced his remarkable pursuit of Morgan. For twelve days the chase was so close, that the Americans crossed the river Catawba only two hours before the British arrived, and encamped on the opposite side. Before the next morning a heavy rain fell, which made the ford impassable. Three days after, Cornwallis crossed the river and continued the chase.

4. Greene, hearing of Morgan's victory, and of the pursuit of Cornwallis, left the main body of his army on the Pedee, under Gen. Huger, with orders to march toward Virginia, and rode 150 miles across the country, and joined Morgan Jan. 31st. He now took the chief command, and continued the retreat; but before his army had all crossed the river Yadkin, the British appeared and cut off part of his baggage. That night a flood of rain made this river also impassable. The Americans now thought themselves spe-

cially favored of Heaven. But soon the enemy forded the river, and recommenced pursuit. The race was now for the river Dan, more than 100 miles distant. The last twenty-four hours the Americans marched forty miles, and their boats had scarcely reached the northern shore, when the foe appeared on the opposite side.

5. The British, vexed and worn out with fatigue, now gave up the chase, and retired to Hillsborough, N. C. During this retreat the Americans were in great distress for want of food and shoes. Their bare feet marked the frozen ground with blood;* and even their general was glad to receive a crust of bread from a common soldier. In Virginia the army was recruited, and strengthened with a force of militia.

6. As soon as Greene had rested his troops, he returned to North Carolina with an army of 4,500 men. Soon after several bands of tories were surprised and cut to pieces. On the 15th of March, Greene reached Guilford court-house,† and on the same day was attacked by Cornwallis. The battle was desperately fought for two hours, when the Americans fell back several miles. The loss of the Americans, in killed and wounded, was about 400, while that of the British was 600. Although Cornwallis claimed the victory, he retreated, closely pursued by Greene for some distance, when the latter filed off toward South Carolina, for the purpose of driving the British from their posts in that state. Greene at length reached Hobkirk's hill, about one mile from Lord Rawdon's post at Camden. Here he was attacked on the 25th of April, and at first the Americans were successful; but the Maryland regiment falling into confusion by a vigorous charge of the enemy, Greene was obliged to draw off his forces. The loss was about 250 on each side.

5. What is said of the Americans during this retreat?

6. Where were battles fought?

* About this time, as General Greene was passing a sentinel who was barefooted, he said to him, "I fear, my good fellow, you suffer much from the severe cold." "I do very much," said the soldier; "but I do not complain. I know I should fare better, had our general the means of getting supplies. They say, however, in a few days we shall have a *battle*, and then I shall take care to secure a pair of shoes."

† Guilford court-house, now Greensboro', in Guilford county.

7. About this time the brave patriots, Sumter and Marion, took several important posts from the enemy in South Carolina. Fort Watson, Fort Motte, Fort Granby, Georgetown, and Orangeburg, were all subdued by the Americans, and the garrisons taken prisoners. Augusta was taken by Col. Lee; and the strong post of the British at Ninety-Six* was besieged by the American army. Hearing that Lord Rawdon was advancing with a strong reinforcement, Greene, on the 18th of June, made a violent assault upon the fort, but was repulsed with some loss.

8. Various marches and maneuvers followed, but no general engagement again occurred till the 8th of September, when a most bloody battle was fought at Eutaw springs. The British at first were put to route, and compelled to fly. The victory would have been entirely on the side of the Americans, had not the enemy, in their flight, thrown themselves into a large brick house, from which they cut down their pursuers with terrible slaughter. The number of killed and wounded was in all 1,400, or about 700 on each side. Victory was claimed on both sides. The enemy soon abandoned the open country, and retreated to Charleston.† These events ended the campaign in the Carolinas.

7. What places were taken by the Americans? What did Gen. Greene do on the 18th of June?

8. Describe the battle of Eutaw springs. Where are Eutaw springs? *Ans.* Near the Santee river, about fifty miles north of Charleston.

* Ninety-six was about 150 miles northwest of Charleston, near the Saluda river. It was a place of great natural strength, and strongly fortified.

† While the British were at Charleston, an event occurred, which excited universal sympathy and indignation. This was the execution of Col. Isaac Hayne, of South Carolina. On the capitulation of Charleston, May 12, 1780, Hayne was taken prisoner, but was allowed to return home on parole, under an engagement not to bear arms. In 1781, he was required to bear arms, or return to Charleston. He did the latter, and was there threatened with close confinement unless he subscribed a declaration of his allegiance to the British king, with an engagement to bear arms in support of the royal government. He subscribed the declaration, but objected to the clause requiring him to bear arms, affirming that *he never would bear arms against his country*. He was assured that *this* would not be required. He then returned to his family, sick with the small-pox. One of his children was dead, and his wife soon expired. He continued to reside privately on his estate, observing his promises to the British government with the strictest fidelity, until he was summoned—after the success of General Greene over the English—to repair immediately to the British standard. This was a violation of the agreement in which it was stipulated that he should not be called upon to bear arms against his country; and consequently, finding himself released from all obligation of observing it on his part, he hastened to the American camp. After some time he was made a prisoner,

9. The achievements of Greene, with his brave but feeble army, astonished his friends, and mortified his enemies. With a force far inferior to that opposed to him, he had recovered the whole of Georgia and the Carolinas, except the seaports of Savannah, Charleston, and Wilmington, and the posts of Ninety-six and Eutaw springs. His brave men had endured the most complicated sufferings with a degree of fortitude worthy of all commendation. But alas! distress was not confined to the army alone. The rage of party feeling throughout the south divided the people, and drove men of the same village, and often of the same family, to arms against each other. The death of one man inspired hundreds with the spirit of revenge, and led them to plunder, burn, and murder, without restraint. Thus the whole community were carried away with a spirit of mutual jealousy and deadly strife.

10. Virginia was invaded, in the month of January, by a strong British force under Gen. Philips and the traitor Arnold. They immediately began a course of plunder, in which they destroyed much valuable property. In May, Cornwallis arrived from North Carolina with additional forces, and took the chief command. At this time Lafayette was at Richmond with an army of 3,000 men. Cornwallis, having a much greater force, now desired to meet him in battle. But Lafayette skillfully avoided him, till he was joined by General Wayne, and then advanced against the enemy. Cornwallis immediately retreated, and strongly fortified his army at Yorktown.

11. While these affairs were going on at the south, Wash-

9. What is said of party feeling at the south?

10. When and by whom was Virginia invaded? When did Cornwallis arrive? Why did Cornwallis retreat to Yorktown? Where is Yorktown? *Ans.* It is in Virginia, on York river, eleven miles from its mouth.

taken to Charleston, tried "for taking arms against the British government after he had become a subject," and sentenced to be hung. This unjust and merciless sentence was put in execution on the 4th of August, 1781. Thus fell, in the bloom of life, a brave officer and good citizen. Hayne was either a prisoner of war or a British subject. If a prisoner of war, he could not be executed for his lawful conduct in the exercise of arms; if a British subject, he had a right to a formal trial. The court of inquiry was not a court of trial; and he was not a spy who might be forthwith executed. The effect of his execution was to sharpen, by pity and revenge, the swords of the Americans.

•

ington had formed the plan of attacking Clinton in New York, in conjunction with the French fleet expected on the coast in August. On the 6th of July, he was joined by the French army from Rhode Island, under Count de Rochambeau, at Kingsbridge, about fifteen miles from New York. Hearing, soon after, that a large French fleet, commanded by the Count de Grasse, was on its way to the Chesapeake, Washington determined to march against Cornwallis in Virginia.

12. Clinton, who still commanded the British forces at New York, had intercepted letters from Washington, by which he discovered his design of besieging that city. He at once made preparations for a vigorous defense. But while he was thus engaged, Washington seized a favorable opportunity to commence his march against Cornwallis, and had crossed the Delaware before Clinton suspected his design.

13. To arrest the march of Washington, and call him back to the north, Clinton sent the traitor Arnold with a strong force on a plundering expedition against Connecticut. Arnold landed near New London, and dispatched a part of his force to attack Fort Griswold, which stood nearly opposite to that city, and guarded the river Thames. The brave garrison made a gallant defense, but were soon overpowered. When all resistance had ceased, a British officer inquired, "Who commands this fort?" Col. Ledyard, presenting his sword, replied, "I did, sir, but you do now." The officer seized the sword, and plunged it into Ledyard's breast. Then followed a horrid massacre, in which 120, nearly all the garrison, were literally butchered. Arnold now entered New London; and after burning the city, and destroying a vast amount of property, hastily returned to New York.

14. In the mean time, Count de Grasse, with his whole

11. What was Washington doing at this time?

12. What did Clinton do? Why did Washington determine to march against Cornwallis in Yorktown?

13. Who was sent against New London? What was done at Fort Griswold? If the British officer who commanded the troops that took the fort had been a brave and honorable man, how would he have treated Col. Ledyard?

14. When did the French fleet arrive in the Chesapeake? What happened on the 5th of September?

fleet, entered the Chesapeake, after a partial engagement with a British fleet under Admiral Graves, off the Capes. He had also been joined by the Count de Barras, with the French squadron from Newport. This gave the French fleet full command of the Chesapeake.

15. Washington, with the combined American and French army, reached Williamsburg, the head-quarters of Lafayette, on the 25th of September. He found the French fleet and soldiers ready to co-operate with him in besieging the enemy. Cornwallis had a force of 10,000 men, and occupied two points of land, Gloucester and Yorktown, each side of York river. Washington, with the French forces, now mustered an army of 16,000 men, and had a good supply of cannon and ammunition. On the 30th of September, a strong detachment was stationed, in guard of the enemy, on Gloucester point, while the main body laid siege to Yorktown.

16. Several batteries were soon completed, and on the 9th of October the roar of artillery began. For two days an incessant fire continued, which greatly shattered the enemy's works. On the night of the 11th, advancing within sixty rods, the besiegers threw up a second line, and opened a still more tremendous fire. This line was exposed to a raking discharge from two redouts of the enemy, in advance of their line of battery. Washington ordered his men to take these by storm. They were soon carried at the point of the bayonet, and the cannon in them turned against the British line.

17. Cornwallis now began to devise some mode of escape. He prepared boats to transport his army across the river to Gloucester, intending to proceed from thence to New York. But a violent storm defeated his plan. The besiegers were now fast advancing upon him, and his own batteries were tottering under their cannonade. In this hopeless state he was obliged to submit; and on the 19th of October he surrendered his whole army, amounting to 7,000 men, to Wash-

15. How many men had Cornwallis? Washington?

16. When did the Americans and French commence cannonading the English?

17. When did Cornwallis surrender?



SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS.

ington, and all the shipping in the harbor, with the seamen, to Count de Grasse.

18. Cornwallis and his army received the same honors as were granted to the Americans at the surrender of Charleston. On *that* occasion, Lincoln resigned his sword to Cornwallis; now, Cornwallis, by the appointment of Washington, resigned his to Lincoln. This ceremony was performed on the camp ground of the victorious army. The news of this event spread universal joy throughout the country. All hearts united in praise and thanksgiving to God for this signal blessing, which, it was confidently expected, would terminate the struggle for their independence. Washington ordered divine service throughout the army. Congress proceeded in solemn procession to the house of God, to acknowledge its grateful sense of this special favor. Five days after the surrender of Cornwallis, Clinton arrived at the mouth of the Chesapeake with an armament of 7,000 men; but hearing of the fate of the British army, he returned to New York.

18. Who received the sword of Cornwallis? Why? What effect had this victory on the nation? To whom was praise rendered for this blessing?

19. The capture of Cornwallis and his army was indeed the final blow ; for it limited the British power almost entirely to the cities of New York, Charleston, and Savannah. The voice of the whole British nation now called loudly for the immediate termination of the war. The king was obstinate, but the people demanded peace. The next spring, just eight years after the battle of Lexington, peace was proposed by Great Britain, and hostilities ceased. John Adams,* Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, and Henry Laurence, were appointed agents for the United States to conclude terms of peace. On the 30th of November, 1782, preliminary articles were signed at Paris, and on the 19th of April, 1783, a formal proclamation of the cessation of hostilities was made through the army. The remnants of the British troops soon after began to leave the country. In November the American army was disbanded.

20. New York was evacuated by the British troops on the 25th of November, 1783. On the same day, Washington entered that city, and there, soon after, took an affectionate leave of his officers. He thence proceeded to Annapolis, where congress was then in session, and on the 25th of December, with true dignity and deep feeling, resigned his commission as commander-in-chief. Thus did Washington, instead of assuming the power of a military despot, retire to the peaceful enjoyment of private life.

19. How did the English nation feel about the continuance of the war? Who were appointed agents for the United States to conclude terms of peace? When and where were preliminary articles signed?

20. When was New York evacuated? What is the meaning of evacuated? When did Washington enter New York? When did he resign his commission as commander-in-chief of the American army?

* John Adams was born at Baintree, Massachusetts, in 1735, graduated at Harvard college 1755, and commenced the practice of law at Quincy, 1759. He boldly opposed the encroachments of Great Britain upon the rights of the colonies, and took an active part in the events that led on to the Revolution. He was elected to the first continental congress, which met September 5, 1774. To a friend who strove to dissuade him from taking his seat in that body, saying that the power of Great Britain was irresistible, and would involve him and his associates in destruction, he replied,—"The die is now cast. I have passed the Rubicon. Sink or swim—live or die—survive or perish with my country—is my fixed, unalterable determination." He was actively engaged during our revolutionary struggle, either as a member of congress, or commissioner to foreign courts; also in forming and establishing our present system of government. In 1789, he was elected vice-president, and in 1797, president, of the United States. He died the 4th of July, 1826.

21. The enemy had now left the coast of America. The public mind was relieved from the excitement of defending the country, and each individual began to reflect upon his own private calamities. Many had been ruined by the devastations of the war; many had loaned all their wealth, on the credit of government; but now public and private credit had sunk together, under the general poverty of the country.

22. Congress had found, during the war, that the power conferred by the federal compact, or "articles of confederation," was totally inadequate to the wants of a national government. It gave no power to congress to levy a tax upon the people, or provide for a public revenue. Although the nations of Europe had acknowledged the independence and national character of the United States, yet congress had no power to enter into commercial treaties with these nations. In this state of affairs, the commercial interests of New England were almost entirely destroyed. Insurrections broke out, and the people by thousands armed themselves against public authority.

23. It was now evident to all the patriotic statesmen of that period, that a great change must be effected in the general government; that there must be a closer union of the states, and more power conferred upon congress. In Sept., 1786, commissioners from six states assembled at Annapolis, for the purpose of establishing a better system of commercial regulations; and, after deliberating some time, proposed to congress that a general convention of delegates from all the states should be called, for the purpose of revising the articles of confederation.

24. Accordingly, in May, 1787, delegates from all the states except Rhode Island, assembled at Philadelphia, and

21. What was the situation of the United States at the close of the war?

22. Was the federal compact adapted to the wants of the nation? In what was it deficient?

23. When did commissioners assemble at Annapolis? From how many states? From which states? *Ans.* New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and Virginia. What did they propose to congress?

24. When and where did delegates meet? Who was elected president of the convention? What did they do? What did congress do? How many

unanimously elected General Washington president of the convention. This august body, after four months' deliberation, agreed upon a *new constitution*, and, on the 17th of September, presented it to congress, which body soon after sent it to the several states for their consideration, and provision was made that it should go into operation as soon as nine states should agree to accept it. The supreme power of the nation, according to the new constitution, was to be placed in the hands of a president, senate, and house of representatives, to be chosen by the people of the several states. Some of the states adopted the constitution immediately, without hesitation. But in others it met with violent opposition. It was, however, adopted by eleven states,* and was ratified by congress, Sept. 13th, 1788. The 4th of March, 1789, was fixed on as the time when the new system of government should go into operation. Representatives and senators were chosen in the different states to constitute a congress, and electors appointed to choose a president and vice-president under the new constitution.

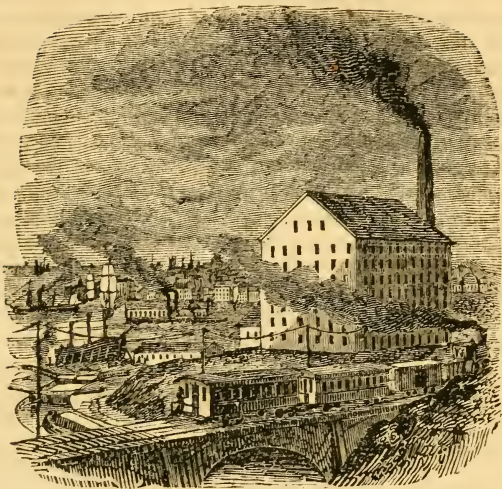
states accepted the new constitution? What were those called who accepted it? *Ans. Federalists.* Those who opposed it? *Ans. Anti-federalists.* When was it ratified by congress? How many states were there at that time?

* The following table shows the time the constitution was adopted in each state :

Delaware,	Dec. 7, 1787,	Without amendments.
Pennsylvania,	" 12, " "	" "
New Jersey,	" 18, " "	" "
Georgia,	Jan. 2, 1788,	" "
Connecticut,	" 9, " "	" "
Massachusetts,	Feb. 7, " "	Amendments recommended.
Maryland,	April 28, " "	Without amendments.
South Carolina,	May 23, " "	Amendments recommended,
New Hampshire,	June 21, " "	" "
Virginia,	" 27, " "	" "
New York,	July 26, " "	" "
North Carolina,	Nov. 21, 1789,	" "
Rhode Island,	May 29, 1790,	" "

It will be seen by this table, that ELEVEN STATES adopted the constitution before it was ratified by congress. The act for the ratification of the constitution was reported in congress, July 14th, 1788, and was passed by that body on the 13th of Sept. following. Thus the grand point of a federal union was achieved. In most of the states, at first, the constitution met with strong opposition. Many believed that the powers it conferred upon the rulers, were too extensive, and would be dangerous to the liberties of the people. Those in favor of the constitution, were called *Federalists*; and those opposed to it, *Anti-federalists*. Its adoption gave stability to the government, confidence to the people, and has been the source of unexampled prosperity to the nation.

HISTORY
OF
THE UNITED STATES.



SITUATION OF AMERICA AT THE PRESENT TIME.

PERIOD IV.

COMPRISES THE EVENTS THAT OCCURRED FROM THE ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION TO THE PRESENT TIME.

1. By this time the United States had taken an honorable rank among civilized nations. The old world had watched her progress with the deepest interest, and beheld,

What events are comprised in the fourth period?

1. How did the old world regard the affairs of this country? What was expected of Washington? Beloved as Washington was by the whole army, do you think it would have been difficult to have established himself as a sovereign over the nation?

with the highest admiration, the conduct of Washington. Many expected that the man who held the hearts of the American people would, like other conquerors before him, establish himself as a sovereign over them. But Washington, who had served his country, not from ambition, but from the promptings of the purest patriotism, claimed no other rights or powers than those of a private citizen.

2. In the spring of 1789, the members of the new congress assembled at New York, and when the votes were counted, it was found that George Washington had been unanimously elected president of the United States. The inauguration took place on the 30th of April, in the presence of a vast multitude, who were delighted to see the highest office of the nation conferred on the illustrious hero of the Revolution. John Adams was chosen vice-president.

3. Congress now imposed duties on imported goods, and upon the tonnage of vessels, for the purpose of establishing a revenue for the support of government and the payment of the national debts. The president, with the concurrence and assent of the senate, appointed Thomas Jefferson* secretary of state; Alexander Hamilton,† secretary of the

2. Who was elected the first president? Vice-president? When did their inauguration take place?

3. What did congress do to establish a revenue? What secretaries were appointed? How were they appointed? What other department was organized? Of how many judges did the supreme court of the United States consist at its organization? *Ans.* Of one chief justice and five associate judges. John Jay, of New York, was appointed chief justice; John Rutledge, of South Carolina, William Cushing, of Massachusetts, R. H. Harrison, of Maryland, James Wilson, of Pennsylvania, and John Blair, of Virginia, associate judges.

* Thomas Jefferson was born at Shadwell, near Monticello, Virginia, 1743. In 1769, he was a member of the legislature of Virginia, and so continued till the revolution. He took his seat in congress, June 21, 1775. As a member of congress he made few speeches. He remarks: "I served with General Washington in the legislature of Virginia, before the revolution; and during it, with Dr. Franklin in congress. I never heard either of them speak ten minutes at a time; nor to any but the main point, which was to decide the question. They laid their shoulders to the GREAT POINTS, knowing that the *little ones* would follow of themselves." In 1801, he was chosen president. In this high office he continued 8 years; retiring in 1809 to Monticello. There he passed the remainder of his days, devoting the last years of his life to the establishment of the University of Virginia at Charlottesville, about 4 miles from Monticello. He died July 4, 1826. He was a zealous cultivator of literature and science, and his name is one of the brightest in the revolutionary galaxy. See the Life of Thomas Jefferson.

† Alexander Hamilton was born in the island of St. Croix, in 1757. He came to

treasury; and General Knox,* secretary of war. A judiciary department was also organized. John Jay was appointed chief justice, and Edmund Randolph attorney-general. Several amendments to the constitution were proposed, and afterward adopted.

4. Washington, soon after congress adjourned, visited the New England states. Never was a *king* received with such unfeigned applause and sincere affection. Multitudes traveled many miles to enjoy the pleasure of seeing the man whom all acknowledged to be the *father* of his country. The officers and soldiers of the "patriot army" wept tears of joy at the sight of their beloved general. Washington felt for them a sort of parental regard, and sought, in many ways, to reward their services in behalf of their country.

5. At the opening of the next session of congress, the president strongly recommended that some effectual measures should be adopted for establishing public credit. Mr. Hamilton, in his able report on the state of the treasury, proposed a plan for this object. He estimated the public debt of the United States, *foreign* and *domestic*, at fifty-four millions of dollars. The foreign debt, due to France and Holland, was about twelve million dollars. Besides this, debts amounting to more than twenty millions had been contracted by the several states in support of the war. Hamilton proposed that these debts should all be funded, or assumed by the general government, and paid out of the public treasury.

4. When did Washington visit the New England states?

5. What did the president recommend at the opening of the next session of congress? What did Mr. Hamilton propose?

New York in 1773. At the commencement of the revolution, he joined the army, was aid-de-camp to Washington, and continued in the service till the close of the war. He afterward commenced the practice of law in New York, and rose to the highest eminence in the profession. He was killed in a duel with Colonel Aaron Burr, 1804. This occurrence produced a wonderful sensation throughout the country. His transcendent abilities were acknowledged by men of all political parties; and he was regarded as an able statesman and financier.

* Henry Knox was born in Boston, 1760. He was promoted to the rank of a brigadier-general. He was actively engaged during the whole war. In 1785, he succeeded General Lincoln as secretary of war, and continued in the office till 1794. He died at Thomastown, Maine, in 1806. He was distinguished for his military talents, and possessed, in an uncommon degree, the esteem and confidence of Washington.

6. Provision for the payment of the foreign debt of the nation, was cordially and unanimously made; but respecting the full payment of the domestic debt, and the assumption of the state debt, much division prevailed in congress. It was contended that men had taken advantage of the low state of public credit, and bought up, for a small price, certificates of security against the government, and that the present holders were not justly entitled to receive more than they had paid. To this it was answered, that the government originally promised to pay the whole, and the reason why these securities had depreciated, was owing to its neglect to fulfill this promise; and now, to preserve the public faith, the whole must be paid. For the general government to assume the debts contracted by the states, it was said, would be dangerous to the sovereignty of the states. But these objections were ably answered; and after some debate, the plan, with some modifications, was adopted. The whole debt was about seventy-five millions of dollars. Upon a part of this three per cent. interest was to be paid, and upon the remainder six per cent.

7. The country throughout soon felt the good effect of these measures. Money became plenty; public and private credit was again restored; business of all kinds began to flourish. Agreeably to a recommendation of Alexander Hamilton, in 1791, a bill was introduced into congress for establishing a national bank, called "the Bank of the United States," with a capital of ten millions of dollars. This was strongly opposed, on the ground, principally, that

6. Why was it contended that the present holders of certificates should not receive the full amount mentioned in them? Do you think they ought to have received the whole amount?

7. In what year was the first bank of the United States chartered? What is necessary for a bill to become a law? *Ans.* It must pass the house of representatives and the senate by a majority of votes—must be engrossed, or copied in a large, fair hand—and signed by the presiding officers. It is then sent to the president, and, if he approve the bill, he signs his name to it, and it then becomes a law. If he disapprove of it, he sends it back to the house in which it originated, without signing it, with his reasons for so doing. This is called *vetoing* the bill. For what length of time was the old United States Bank chartered? *Ans.* Its charter extended to the 4th of May, 1811.

congress had no constitutional right to charter such an institution; but, after a lengthy debate, the bill was passed by a majority of nineteen votes. During the same session, an act was passed, after strong opposition, laying duties, or a tax, upon spirits distilled within the United States, and upon stills. This was very unpopular in many of the states, especially at the south and west.

8. In 1791, March 4th, Vermont was admitted into the Union as an independent state. In 1724, the people of Massachusetts erected a fort on the Connecticut river, as a protection against the Indians. This was called Fort Dummer, and was the first settlement within the limits of Vermont. Its territory was claimed by both New York and New Hampshire. These conflicting claims were, for several years, matter of hot contention. But in 1767, the people declared themselves independent, and formed a distinct government. During the war, the militia of this state, termed "The Green Mountain Boys," displayed great zeal in the common cause of the country. Kentucky was admitted into the Union in 1792. The first settlement in that territory was commenced at Boonsboro, in 1775, under the guidance of Colonel Daniel Boon. Although the inhabitants suffered greatly from the hostility of the Indians, it increased rapidly in population, and, in less than twenty years from its first settlement, was made an independent state.

9. The amount of revenue in 1791, was 4,800,000 dollars. The amount of imports was twenty millions, and of exports about nineteen millions. At this time the condition of the country was rapidly improving. The stability of government, and the increase of population, encouraged the spirit of enterprise in every department of business. According to the census, which was completed that year, the number of inhabitants in the United States was nearly four millions.

8. What state was admitted into the union in 1791? What is requisite for a territory to be admitted into the union as an independent state? *Ans.* It must contain 60,000 inhabitants, form a state government, and adopt the constitution of the United States. When was Kentucky admitted into the union?

9. What did the revenue amount to in 1791? What was the population?

10. But the country was not yet entirely free from the calamities of Indian warfare. The tribes northwest of the Ohio, which could bring into the field five thousand warriors, were still harrassing the frontier settlements. An army of fifteen thousand men, under General Harmer, was sent against them. But, in two engagements, his troops were defeated, and compelled to retreat. Not long after, General St. Clair, with two thousand men, marched against the savages. On the 5th of November, 1791, his camp was suddenly surrounded, about the break of day, and a destructive fire poured upon his men. His troops were soon arrayed for defense; but the enemy, concealed behind trees and rocks, could not be resisted by a regular charge.

11. This unequal contest continued for several hours. At length St. Clair, fearing that his men would be entirely cut off, ordered a retreat. The enemy pursued for some time, and then returned to plunder the camp of the whites. Before the engagement, St. Clair's forces had been reduced to about fourteen thousand men. Of these, more than nine hundred were killed, or wounded, by this fatal assault. Congress was now alarmed lest a general war should spread along the whole frontier. A bill was passed for enlisting a regular army of five thousand men, and the command given to General Wayne.

12. The constitution provides that the president shall hold his office four years. His term having expired, Washington was unanimously re-elected to that office in 1793. Mr. Adams was re-elected vice-president in opposition to George Clinton, who was supported as a rival candidate. Party spirit now began to prevail, and divide the people in all parts of the country. But such was the confidence of the nation in the wisdom and integrity of Washington, that all parties were unanimous in supporting him. Mr.

10. Give some account of the Indian wars at this time.

11. In view of these hostilities, what bill was passed by congress?

12. How long does the president hold his office? When was Washington re-elected? How were the people divided? By what names were these parties known? *Ans. Republican and federal.* Who stood at the head of the republican party? Who at the head of the federal party?

Hamilton stood at the head of the Federal party, and Mr. Jefferson at the head of the Republican. Each party accused the other of designs against the true interests of the country. The federalists were reproached as the enemies of liberty, and as being in favor of a monarchy and a titled nobility; and the republicans were denounced as the friends of anarchy, and opposed to all good institutions whatever. But, in both parties, there were, doubtless, good men and zealous patriots.

13. At this time, France was undergoing the horrors of a bloody revolution. That nation had become dissatisfied with their regal government, and, inspired by the success of the American revolution, the people had risen in a mass to throw off the shackles of monarchy, and establish over themselves a republican form of government. Blood and carnage spread horror and gloom in all directions. The king, the queen, and many thousands of noble rank, were put to death. The friends of royalty, of whatever class, either fell by a common slaughter, or escaped from the country.

14. These excesses in France produced a strong reaction in America. Many, who had regarded with favor the struggles of that people for freedom, began to consider almost any condition of a country better than that in which all the sacred institutions of government and religion are swept away with the best blood of the nation. Yet, a strong sympathy was felt in favor of France, especially by the republican party, who were confident that these first excesses would be followed by moderation, peace, and good government.

15. In this state of excitement, the citizen, Genet, arrived, May, 1793, at Charleston, as minister of the French republic. He was every where received with enthusiastic applause, and the highest marks of attachment. Flattered by his reception, he immediately assumed the power of authorizing privateers to cruise against the enemies of

13, 14. What was France undergoing at this time?

15. Who arrived in 1793? What power did he assume? What did the president do?

France. The president at once forbid the course he was pursuing. He then appealed to the people, but soon found himself deserted, and his measures every where condemned. The party to which he was attached in France did not long retain its power, and the next year Genet was superseded by the arrival of a new minister, Mr. Fauchet.

16. General Wayne, who had been sent to prosecute the war against the Indians after the defeat of St. Clair, after many vain attempts to bring them to terms of peace, marched against them at the head of three thousand men. On the 20th of August, 1794, he met about two thousand warriors on the banks of the Maumee river. Wayne led up his men with a furious charge, drove them from their coverts, and pursued them at the point of the bayonet. The savages were completely routed, their houses burned, and their towns laid waste. This victory gave peace and security to the territory of Ohio.

17. For some time the people in the western part of Pennsylvania had made great complaints against the law imposing a tax upon spirituous liquors. Combinations had been formed, the officers of government were resisted and threatened, and several thousands conspired for the purpose of compelling congress to repeal the offensive laws. This was termed "the Whiskey Insurrection." In August, 1794, the president issued his proclamation, commanding the insurgents to disperse. This not having the desired effect, he ordered out an army of fifteen thousand men, to enforce authority. Against this force the insurgents made no resistance, and no blood was shed. The leaders were tried and convicted of treason, but were afterward pardoned.

18. About this time the tranquillity of the nation was threatened by the conduct of Great Britain. Since the peace of 1783, many things had happened to excite the hostility of the Americans. But after war was again declared between England and France, the British government had adopted measures, which greatly interfered with

16. Describe Wayne's expedition against the Indians.

17. Describe the rebellion in Pennsylvania.

18. What happened about this time? Who was sent to the British court?

the prosperity of American commerce.* Difficulties had increased to such an extent, that war seemed inevitable. Washington, desirous of peace, sent Mr. Jay to the British court, with full powers to adjust all difficulties and conclude a commercial treaty.

19. Mr. Jay having concluded a treaty, early in the spring of 1795, it was laid before the senate. It provided that the western posts, held by the British, were to be surrendered to the United States; settled other disputes growing out of the original treaty of peace; and under certain restrictions, it secured to the people of the United States a trade with the British possessions in the East and West Indies; yet, it omitted all mention of the disputed points of international law,—the rights of neutrals, &c. It was violently opposed by the republican party, and condemned in the most sweeping terms; but after a lengthy debate, although considered by Washington as defective on some essential points, but the best that could *then* be obtained,—it was ratified, and probably saved the country from the miseries and distress of another war. The western Indians, disheartened and broken by the defeat they received from Gen. Wayne, concluded a treaty at Fort Greenville, August 3d, by which they ceded to the United States a large tract of territory north of the Ohio.

19. How did the people regard Jay's treaty? How did Washington regard it? Where was a treaty formed with the Indians?

* In 1793, Great Britain, for the purpose of distressing France and shackling the commerce of the United States, passed an act prohibiting the exportation of grain to France, and authorizing the capture of neutral vessels engaged in carrying it thither, In consequence of this, a great number of American vessels were captured, and carried to England. This act was followed by another equally offensive. Her armed ships were authorized to capture all vessels laden with goods from France or her colonies, or engaged in carrying provisions or supplies to either. The Americans were indignant at these oppressive measures, and contended that "free ships made free goods;" or in other words, that all property on board neutral vessels, except contraband goods, had a right to pass free from seizure and confiscation. Another odious measure was justly complained of. Great Britain claimed the right of searching our vessels and compelling her seamen, wherever found, to serve on board her armed ships. This right of impressment was not confined to our ports, but her ships of war were in the habit of stopping vessels at sea, and taking from them such as *they claimed* were English sailors. Now, as the Americans and the English spoke the same language, and were much alike in many other respects, it would be difficult to distinguish between individuals of the two nations. Hence we see, that the right of impressment was liable to great abuse, and great numbers of American citizens were impressed and compelled to serve on board of British ships.

20. At this time the province of Louisiana was in the possession of Spain. Several unsuccessful attempts had been made to negotiate with that nation respecting the navigation of the Mississippi. The people of Kentucky, whose interests were at stake, now became clamorous in their demands on the general government, and even made preparations to invade the Spanish province. But after Spain became involved in war with France, she consented to negotiate with the United States. Thomas Pinckney was sent to Madrid, and in October, 1795, a treaty was signed, which secured to the Americans the free navigation of the great western river.

21. In the same year a treaty of peace was also concluded with the government of Algiers. These commercial treaties with the powers of Europe, soon revived the commerce of the nation, and opened a great source of wealth to our enterprising seamen. Yet fresh troubles now began to arise from the conduct of France. As the Americans had declined to join with her in the war against the despots of Europe, she became jealous of their friendship. Her ministers, however, professed the sincerest attachment, and one of them, Mr. Adet, brought over the colors of France, and presented them to the president. They were received with great pomp and ceremony; and by a unanimous vote of congress, they were deposited in the archives* of the nation.

22. Mr. Monroe, the American minister to France, was received by the French republic with the strongest marks of good will. It was decreed, "that the flags of the two nations should be entwined together, and suspended in the legislative hall, as a mark of their eternal union and friendship." In

20. To whom did Louisiana belong at that time? What did the people of Kentucky propose? When was a treaty formed between Spain and the United States? What did this treaty secure?

21. When was a treaty concluded with Algiers? What effect had these treaties on the nation? How did France begin to regard the United States? What did Mr. Adet do?

* Archives, the apartment in which records are kept,—also the records and papers which are preserved as evidences of facts.

this manner the French desired to induce the Americans to espouse their cause against the enemies of France. Finding all their attempts resisted, they adopted certain regulations respecting commerce, by which hundreds of vessels belonging to the United States were taken, and their cargoes confiscated. In 1796, the president recalled Mr. Monroe, and sent Charles C. Pinckney, to remonstrate with the French government, and to seek redress for these injuries. In this year Tennessee was admitted into the Union.

23. The second term of Washington's administration was now drawing to a close. In the fall of 1796, he published a farewell address to the citizens of the United States, in which he expressed his determination to retire from public life, and spend his remaining days in peace and quiet. He expressed for his country all the tenderness of a father's solicitude and affection; pointing out the dangers to which she would be exposed, and warning every citizen with solemn earnestness to shun the evils which already threatened the dissolution of the Union, and the downfall of the nation.

24. This address was received with that profound respect and veneration for its author, which the whole nation had been cherishing for years. The most gratifying testimonials of the affection and gratitude of his countrymen followed the hero and the statesman, as he retired at the close of his administration to the bosom of his beloved family at Mount Vernon. The two great parties of the nation now brought forward their candidates for the presidency. The federalists supported John Adams, and the republicans Thomas Jefferson. The lines between the parties were now distinctly drawn; and the contest was spirited and nearly equal. Mr. Adams was, however, chosen president, and

22. Did France try to engage the United States in a war with her enemies? How? After trying in vain, what was next done? What did the president do in 1796?

23. When did Washington publish his farewell address?

24. Who were brought forward as candidates for the presidency? By what party was John Adams supported? Thomas Jefferson? Who was elected president? Who vice-president? When did they enter upon the duties of their office?

Mr. Jefferson vice-president. They entered upon the duties of their office the 4th of March, 1797.*

ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.

1. Mr. Adams, at the commencement of his administration, found the nation involved in difficulties with France. Mr. Pinckney, who had been sent by Washington to adjust existing differences between the two republics, had been rejected by the Directory, or French government, and ordered to quit the country without delay. Depredations were frequently committed on the commerce of the United States, in direct violation of the treaties existing between the two nations. In this state of affairs, President Adams issued his proclamation, and assembled congress on the 15th of June. That body took a decided stand against the demands of the French, and authorized the president to adopt measures to raise an army, enlarge the navy, and increase the revenue of the nation.

2. As the president sincerely desired to avoid war, he appointed John Marshall and Elbridge Gerry joint envoys with Mr. Pinckney, and instructed them to secure, if possible, an honorable reconciliation with the French. But the new commissioners were also rejected, though permitted to remain at Paris. Agents of the Directory at length intimated

1. How was Mr. Pinckney received by the French government? When was congress assembled? What was the cause of our difficulty with France? *Ans.* Our refusal to assist her in her wars against England and other nations of Europe. "We have assisted you," said she, "in your war against England, and now we expect you to assist us in our wars."

2. Who were appointed envoys? How were they received?

* By examining the constitution of the United States, you will see that the president is chosen by electors appointed by the several states. Each state appoints as many electors as it has members in congress. If it has six representatives and two senators in congress it chooses eight electors. As the constitution originally stood, each elector voted for two candidates, without specifying which he intended for president, or which for vice-president. The candidate who received the highest number of votes, provided it was a majority of the whole, was elected president; and he who received the next highest number was elected vice-president. In 1804, the constitution was amended, requiring the electors to name in their ballots the persons voted for as president and vice-president.

that a "liberal grant of money" might lead to terms of accommodation. "Millions for defense," the Americans replied, "but not one cent for tribute."

3. Pinckney and Marshall were ordered to leave the country, but Mr. Gerry, who was thought to be more favorable to the French, was afterward solicited to negotiate. This he declined. In 1798, when these facts were made known in America, all parties united in calling loudly upon the government to assert the rights of the nation. Washington was unanimously appointed commander-in-chief of the American forces. The navy was authorized to cruise against the armed vessels of France.

4. The army was not called into action. But two naval battles were fought in the West Indies. The French frigate *L'Insurgent* of 40 guns, was captured by the *Constellation* of 38 guns, under the command of Commodore Truxton. The same commander also attacked another ship of 50 guns, and compelled her to strike her colors, but in the night she made her escape. The French, perceiving the determined spirit of the Americans, and not wishing to be involved in war with them, received, in 1799, commissioners appointed by the president. When they arrived in France, they found the government of the nation in the hands of Napoleon Bonaparte, with whom a treaty of peace was concluded, September 30th, 1800.

5. In the mean time, the people of America were filled with grief at the sudden death of Washington. He died on the 14th of December, 1799, after an illness of only one day. Never was a man more deeply lamented. In the house of representatives, it was resolved, "That the speaker's chair should be shrouded in black, and the members wear black during the session; and that a joint committee should be appointed to devise the most suitable manner of paying honor to the memory of the MAN first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

3. How were they treated? Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the American forces? What was our navy authorized to do?

4. What naval battles were fought? When was a treaty of peace concluded?

5. When did Washington die? What token of respect was paid to his memory in congress?

6. During the summer of 1800, the seat of government of the United States was removed from Philadelphia to the District of Columbia, Washington. Public buildings had been erected, and here congress assembled for the first time, in November, 1800.

7. The time had again arrived for electing a president. The republicans supported Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr; the federalists, John Adams and Charles C. Pinckney. The parties were nearly equal, and both engaged in the contest with uncommon ardor. Mr. Adams' course of policy had been much censured by the republican party. The *alien* and *sedition acts*,* as well as those for raising a standing army, and increasing our navy, together with those imposing a direct tax and internal duties, had rendered him unpopular, and greatly increased the strength of his political opponents. On canvassing the votes for president, it was found that Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Burr had each seventy-three votes, Mr. Adams sixty-five, and Mr. Pinckney sixty-four.

8. As the two republican candidates had each an equal number of votes, according to the constitution it became the duty of the house of representatives to decide which of these two should be elevated to the presidency. The house, however, was so equally divided that the vote was taken thirty-five times before a majority could be obtained on either side. This, however, was caused by the manage-

6. When was the seat of government removed from Philadelphia to Washington? Where is Washington? In what direction from us is it? How far from us is it?

7. Who were the candidates for the presidency? What was the result?

8. What does the constitution provide, in case there is no choice by the

* The alien and sedition acts were passed in 1798, when our difficulties with France were at their height. By the *alien act*, the president was authorized to compel aliens or foreigners, whom he should judge dangerous to the peace and safety of the United States, to leave the country, on penalty of imprisonment. The *sedition act* was intended to punish the abuse of speech and of the press. It imposed a heavy fine, and imprisonment for years, upon such as should "combine or conspire together to oppose any measure of the government"—upon such as should "write, print, utter, publish, &c., any thing false, scandalous or malicious, against the government of the United States, or either house of the congress of the United States, or the president, &c." These acts were considered by the body of the people as dangerous to, if not subversive of, the constitutional liberty of the United States.

ment of the federalists. Although unable to elect their own candidate, they still hoped to defeat the favorite object of the republicans, by preventing the election of Mr. Jefferson. Accordingly, they voted for Mr. Burr, and day after day the balloting continued, and with the same result. But at the thirty-sixth trial, the federalists of one or two states gave way, and Mr. Jefferson was elected president, and Mr. Burr, of course, became vice-president.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. On the fourth of March, 1801, Mr. Jefferson took the oath prescribed by the constitution, and entered upon the duties of his office, as president of the United States. The new administration soon began to order affairs according to its favorite doctrines. Economy became the order of the day. At the next session of congress, the judiciary* was restored to its former footing, the internal taxes were abolished, and the army and navy reduced. A bill was passed during the same session, extending the laws of naturalization.

2. According to the census which was completed in

electors or people? *Ans.* The president is *then* to be chosen by the house of representatives, voting by states, each state being entitled to one vote. See *amendments to the constitution of the United States*, article 12. How many times was the vote taken in the house before there was a majority? What was the cause of this? For whom did the federalists vote? In consequence of this, Mr. Burr, from that time, lost the confidence of the democratic, or republican party. Who was finally elected?

1. When did Mr. Jefferson enter upon the duties of his office? What oath is the president required to take before he enters on the execution of his office? See *the constitution*, article 2. What was done at the session of congress in 1801?

2. What was the population of the United States in 1801? Exports? Revenue? When was Ohio admitted into the Union?

* Toward the close of Mr. Adams' administration an act was passed reorganizing the judiciary, or United States courts, and creating sixteen new judges. In pursuance of this law, Mr. Adams, immediately preceding his retirement from office, appointed twelve new judges. These were called his "*midnight judiciary*," from the alleged fact that they were appointed at twelve o'clock on the last night of his presidential authority. The judiciary department, or supreme court of the United States, originally consisted of one chief justice and five associate justices. There are now eight associate justices.

1801, the population of the country amounted to 5,305,925. In ten years the amount of exports had increased from nineteen to ninety-four millions, and the revenue from four to twelve millions of dollars. In 1802, the state of Ohio was admitted into the Union. The first settlement within the limits of the state, was made at Marietta, in 1788. At that time Ohio formed a part of the northwest territory. Its progress was slow, until after the peace with the Indians, in 1795. Since that period, its population has increased with unexampled rapidity.

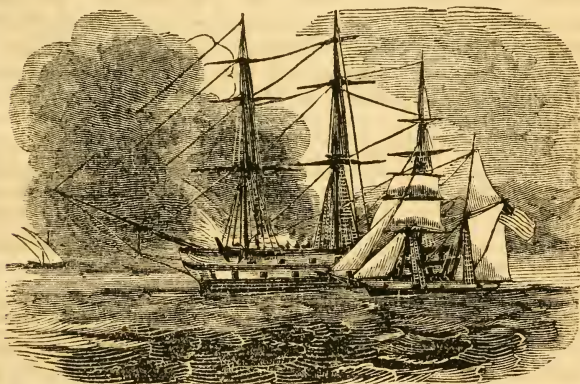
3. In 1803, Louisiana was purchased by the American government. By this purchase the territory of the United States was more than doubled, as it included all that part of the country west of the Mississippi, extending to Mexico and the Pacific Ocean. Louisiana was first settled by the French, at Iberville, in 1699. In 1762, it was ceded to Spain, and remained in her possession until 1800, when it was granted back to France. Mr. Jefferson felt that the free navigation of the Mississippi was essential to the growth and prosperity of the western states, and perceived the danger and embarrassments that must result to them if the French were permitted to take possession of this province.

4. Negotiations with France were, therefore, immediately commenced by Mr. Jefferson, for the purchase of the whole country of Louisiana. Bonaparte, involved in war with all Europe, and conscious of the difficulty of defending so distant a possession as Louisiana against the naval power of England, on the 30th of April, 1803, ceded it to the United States for fifteen million dollars. Of this sum, two and a half millions were to be retained, to satisfy the claims of American merchants for spoliations committed by the government of France. On the 20th of December the territory was duly transferred to the United States. This act of Mr. Jefferson, though severely censured by the whole

3, 4. When was Louisiana purchased? Of whom? For how much? How much did Louisiana include at the time of its purchase? It embraced, also, the small part of the state of Louisiana east of the Mississippi. By whom was this act censured? Do you think it was a wise act of Mr. Jefferson to purchase Louisiana? When, where, and by whom, was the first settlement made in the state of Louisiana?

federal party, was of the highest importance to the country. It added immensely to the security, wealth, and prosperity of the nation.

5. For a long time our commerce had been much annoyed by the piratical nations of the Barbary states, especially by the Tripolitans. Many merchant vessels had been taken, and their crews treated as slaves. In 1803, Commodore Preble was sent with a fleet of seven ships into the Mediterranean, for the purpose of protecting our commerce, and bringing those corsairs to submission. In October of the same year, as Captain Bainbridge, in the frigate Philadelphia, was chasing a small vessel in the harbor of Tripoli, the frigate ran aground, and he and his crew were obliged to surrender.



BURNING OF THE FRIGATE PHILADELPHIA.

6. According to the custom of the Tripolitans, the officers were treated as prisoners of war, but the men were reduced to slavery. Soon after the ship was surrendered, the captors got her afloat, and anchored her in the harbor

5, 6. What was done in 1803? Which are the Barbary states? *Ans.* Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, Tripoli, and Barca. What was the cause of our difficulty with these states, especially Tripoli? Can you show me Tripoli on the map? What happened in October? What was the result?

of Tripoli. In this situation, Stephen Decatur, a brave young officer, proposed to Commodore Preble, to retake or destroy her. The plan was approved; and in February, 1804, he sailed from Syracuse, in a small schooner, with a crew of seventy-six men. He entered the harbor of Tripoli undiscovered, ran his vessel alongside the frigate, boarded her, and having cleared the decks at the point of the sword, set her on fire, and escaped without the loss of a man. In reward of this gallant deed, Decatur was promoted by the president to the rank of post-captain. During the summer, Tripoli was several times bombarded by the American squadron.

7. The reigning bashaw of Tripoli, Sidi Joussof, had raised himself to that dignity by the murder of his father, and the banishment of Hamet, his elder brother. William Eaton,* our consul at Tunis, a brave and enterprising man, believed that the most successful method of terminating our difficulties with Tripoli, and gaining an advantageous treaty of peace, would be, to place Hamet on the throne.

7. What bold and singular expedition was undertaken by General William Eaton? Of how many different nations was his army composed? *Ans.* Twelve. There were eleven Americans and seventy or eighty Greeks and Frenchmen. How long were they in crossing the desert of Lybia? When did they arrive at Derne? When Eaton demanded a surrender of the place, what reply was made by the governor? *Ans.* "My head or yours." Can you show me Derne on the map? In what direction from Alexandria is it? What direction from us?

* General William Eaton was born in Woodstock, Connecticut, Feb. 23d, 1764. He graduated at Dartmouth college, in 1790, married the widow of Gen. Timothy Danielson, at Union, Conn., in 1792, and was promoted to the rank of captain in the army, under Gen. Wayne, in 1793. In 1798, he was appointed consul at Tunis. He rendered his country important services in that station, and as navy agent for the Barbary powers. In his diplomatic intercourse with those piratical nations, he adopted a tone of boldness and independence which astonished them. Being compelled by the treaty of Mr. Lear to relinquish the advantages he had gained for placing Hamet on the throne of Tripoli, he returned home, where, although public opinion was strongly in his favor, he met with mortification and disappointment. He died at Brimfield, June 1, 1811. As a writer, Eaton possessed extraordinary command of language and energy of expression, as will be seen from the following extract of a letter which he wrote, while at Tunis, to Mr. O'Brien, the American consul at Algiers:

"SIR.—The Dey will declare war against Spain. Speed to the measure; it will give us relief; Mussulmen, Catholics, assassins, thieves, beggars, pimps! In Heaven's name let them devour each other. I wish I could thunder with a voice like Jove. I would project electric bolts omnipotent among them, thicker than the stars of heaven, more irregular than the dreams of guilt, pointed with blue wrath, terrible as hell; and then, in one promiscuous labyrinth of contagious vengeance, engulf them."

For this purpose, in 1805, he repaired to Egypt, where the exiled prince then was, and explained the plan for his restoration. Hamet listened with pleasure to the proposals of Eaton, and an army was soon raised, and placed under the command of the latter. On the 6th of March they left Alexandria, and set out for Tripoli. They crossed the desert of Lybia, a thousand miles in extent. They suffered incredible hardships from hunger, thirst, heat, and fatigue. After traveling fifty days, they arrived, on the 25th of April, at Derne, a city of Barca, but subject to Tripoli. The next morning the place was taken by storm.

8. Not long after this, they were attacked in Derne, by a large number of Tripolitans, who were repulsed with considerable loss. In June, another battle was fought, in which Eaton was decidedly victorious. He was soon, however, arrested in his brilliant career, by a treaty of peace which the reigning tyrant had concluded with the American agent, Mr. Lear. By this treaty, the United States were to give sixty thousand dollars for the American prisoners, and relinquish the cause of Hamet. The brilliant exploits of the Americans during the war, by sea and by land, added great luster to the military character of the nation.

9. In 1804, Colonel Burr was supported as a candidate for the office of governor of New York. The republican party had deserted him, and he was sustained chiefly by the federalists. But Mr. Hamilton, having no confidence in the moral character of Burr, opposed his election. Being defeated, and enraged at the opposition of Hamilton, Burr sent him a challenge. It was accepted; a duel was fought, July 11th, and Hamilton fell. This event produced a deep sensation. His death was lamented by the whole community as a loss to his country; for he was looked upon by all, as a man of great talents, of powerful eloquence, and as a scholar and gentleman.

8. What was the result of Eaton's expedition? How did Eaton feel to be thus stopped when he had so fair a prospect of placing Hamet on the throne, and having the American prisoners released without ransom? *Ans.* No one can describe his grief and indignation.

9. What happened in 1804? The duel was fought at Hoboken, in New Jersey, opposite New York.

10. In 1807, Burr was arrested, and brought to trial, on a charge of high treason. From his movements, it was supposed that he designed to dis sever the Union, and establish a separate government over the western states. He had provided a great many boats, and engaged men to descend the Mississippi river. From his trial, his real design could not be ascertained; but it appeared more probable that he intended to invade the provinces of Mexico. Burr was finally acquitted. But the people having no confidence in his integrity, left him to sink into a state of wretchedness and obscurity.

11. At this time Bonaparte* was extending the dominion of France over all the nations of Europe. While he was multiplying his victories on land, England had taken full command of the ocean. As the United States were a neutral power, their ships found a very profitable trade in carrying the products and manufactures of England and France into all the ports of Europe. The British nation soon became jealous of the prosperity of American commerce. On the 16th of May, 1806, the government of Great Britain issued an "*order in council*," declaring the whole coast, from the mouth of the River Elbe, in Germany, to the town of Brest, in France, to be in a state of blockade. By this order, American vessels trading to any ports on this coast, were liable to seizure and condem-

10. What happened in 1807? What was the result of this trial?

11. Who was Napoleon Bonaparte? What was he doing at this time? What do you understand by a neutral power? In what trade were our vessels engaged? What did the British do in 1806? Napoleon?

* Napoleon Bonaparte, one of the most remarkable men of any age or nation. He was born at Ajaccio, in the island of Corsica, 1769. He commenced his military career as a lieutenant of artillery, in 1786, and soon after so distinguished himself at the siege of Toulon, and during the civil contentions at Paris, that he was promoted to the command of the army of Italy, in 1796. Here he fought a series of battles, and gained a succession of victories over the oldest and ablest generals of Europe, which astonished the world, and compelled his enemies to peace. In 1799, he was appointed *First Consul* of the republic. In 1804, he was crowned *emperor* of France. His usual success attended him, and nearly all Europe was under his control till 1812, when he invaded Russia. The destruction of Moscow compelled him to retreat with his army, and he was forced to abdicate the throne for the sovereignty of Elba, 1814. He returned to France, 1815, and was defeated in the battle of Waterloo, which terminated his political career. He threw himself upon the generosity of the English nation, and was exiled to St. Helena, where he was kept a prisoner till his death, in 1821. See the Life of Napoleon Bonaparte.

nation.* Under this act, great numbers of American vessels were taken and condemned. In November of the same year, Napoleon, to retaliate upon the English, issued his famous "*Berlin Decree*,"† declaring the British islands to be in a state of blockade. By this act several of our vessels were taken by the French, and our commerce greatly interrupted.

12. England, for several years, had found it impossible to enlist sailors enough to man her extensive navy. To surmount this difficulty, she had resorted to the arbitrary measure of impressing her seamen, and forcing them into her naval service. Her ships of war were authorized to board and search American vessels, and take all the men who appeared to be British subjects. In this way, about seven thousand American seamen were seized, and compelled to serve as British sailors. Against these outrageous proceedings, our government had frequently remonstrated.

13. In 1807, as the frigate *Chesapeake* was going out to sea, she was attacked by the *Leopard*, a British ship of superior force, on suspicion of having British sailors on board. Three of the Americans were killed, and eighteen wounded. The *Chesapeake*, not at all prepared for action, immediately struck her colors. An officer then came on board, summoned the crew together, marked four men as British deserters, and took them on board the *Leopard*. It was afterward found that three of them were Americans, who had been forced into the British service, but had afterward escaped.‡

14. This insolent assault upon a national ship, roused the

12. To what arbitrary measure did England resort to furnish her navy with sailors? What were her ships authorized to do?

13. Mention the attack upon the *Chesapeake*.

14. What effect had this upon the American people? What did the presi-

* By the laws of war, NEUTRAL VESSELS are excluded from blockaded ports.

† Under this, and subsequent decrees, the French and their allies seized a great number of our vessels, and thus enriched themselves by the plunder of American merchants. Several years afterward, our government demanded payment for the vessels and goods they had seized. Demands, or *claims*, were made on France, Spain, Denmark, and Naples. These have all been paid to the satisfaction of our government.

‡ The affair of the *Chesapeake* was settled in 1811. The government of Great Britain disapproved of the act, restored the men, and made a compensation in money to the wounded, and the families of the slain.

indignation of the whole country. The president ordered all British ships immediately to leave the coast of the United States, and sent instructions to our minister at London to demand redress, and security against future aggressions. No satisfaction being obtained, and the British government having solemnly asserted the "*right of search and impressment*," a Special Congress was called on the 27th of October, to decide what measures should be adopted. About this time, news arrived that laws had been passed in England and France, which exposed all American vessels to seizure and condemnation.

15. Several measures were adopted at this session of congress for increasing our land and naval force, and on the 22d of December, 1807, was passed the famous "Embargo" law, forbidding American vessels to leave their ports. This was regarded as a measure best fitted to the present crisis. This would preserve our seamen, ships, and merchandise from the dangers which threatened them on the ocean, and it was believed, would compel England and France to annul their obnoxious decrees, by depriving them of the benefit derived from the trade of the United States. As it put a stop to commerce, its effects were soon felt throughout our country, especially in our large cities and the eastern states. In these the embargo was very unpopular; and the federal party denounced it as an unwise, oppressive, and uncalled-for measure.

16. As the embargo did not produce the effects anticipated on Great Britain and France, it was repealed on the 1st of March, 1809, and an act prohibiting all intercourse with these two nations, was substituted in its place. In 1808, Mr. Jefferson, having declared his determination to retire

dent do? What instructions were sent to our minister at London? What was done? When was congress assembled?

15. What measure was resorted to by our government? What is an embargo? *Ans.* It is an act prohibiting or preventing vessels from sailing out of port for a limited time. Why was this act passed? When? How was it regarded by the people of the United States?

16. Where do you suppose its effects were most severely felt, in Europe or the United States? When was it repealed? What act was substituted in its place? By whom was Mr. Jefferson succeeded? How many years was Mr. Jefferson president?

from public life, was succeeded in the presidency by James Madison.* George Clinton was re-elected vice-president.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. Mr. Madison entered on the duties of his office, the 4th of March, 1809. He found the United States in a gloomy and perilous situation. England and France were still at war, and pursuing measures which threatened the entire destruction of American commerce. The affairs of the nation were in a very unsettled state, and becoming every day more and more embarrassed. British ships were constantly arriving on our coast, searching our vessels, impressing our seamen, and adding insult to injury.

2. In April, Mr. Erskine, the British minister at Washington, engaged, on the part of his government, that the *orders in council* should be revoked after the 10th day of the following June. The president immediately issued his proclamation giving notice of this fact, and also that our intercourse with Great Britain would be renewed after the time above specified. This produced great joy throughout our country, but ended in vexation and disappointment. The British ministry refused to ratify this arrangement, declaring that Mr. Erskine had no authority to make it. He was soon after recalled, and Mr. Jackson appointed to succeed him.

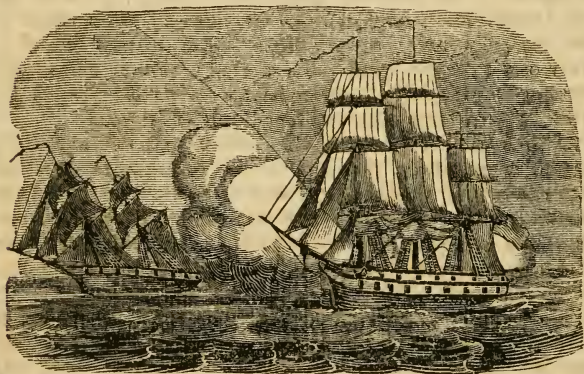
3. In a correspondence with Mr. Smith, secretary of state, Mr. Jackson insinuated that the United States government

1. When did Mr. Madison enter on the duties of his office? What was the situation of the United States at that time?

2, 3. What did Mr. Erskine do, and what was the result? Who succeeded Mr. Erskine, and what was his conduct?

* James Madison was born in Virginia, on the 17th of March, 1750, and at the age of twenty-five, was a member of the legislature of that state. In 1776, he was chosen one of the delegates to the continental congress, and assisted afterward in framing the constitution of the United States. He was a member of congress after the adoption of that instrument, for several years; was made secretary of state under President Jefferson, in 1801; and inaugurated as president of the United States, on the 4th of March, 1809. At the end of his term he was again elected, and retired to private life, in 1817. He died June 28, 1836.

knew that Mr. Erskine was not authorized to make the arrangement. The secretary at once denied this; but Mr. Jackson subsequently repeated it in a very offensive manner. He was immediately informed, by the president, that in consequence of his indecorous conduct, no further communications would be received from him. Soon after this he was recalled by his government. Thus, instead of producing a reconciliation, these movements tended only to aggravate the hostile feelings of the two nations.



THE FRIGATES PRESIDENT AND LITTLE BELT.

4. In the mean time depredations were continually committed on our commerce. British cruisers were stationed before our harbors and off our coast, who made it a point to harass, search, and examine our vessels, both those going out and those coming in. By this means the public mind was kept constantly inflamed. A novel incident that occurred about this time, served rather to increase, than to allay this state of feeling. Captain Rogers, in the frigate *President*, fell in with a vessel on the coast of Virginia, in the evening of the 11th of May, 1811. Being hailed by

4. What were the British doing in the mean time? Among the British cruisers on our coast, which was the most active in searching our vessels and

Rogers, the commander of the vessel, instead of replying, fired a gun, which struck the mainmast of the President. Upon this, Rogers poured a broadside into her, which silenced most of her guns, and killed and wounded 32 of her men. Being hailed again, an answer was immediately given that it was the Little Belt, a British sloop of war, of 18 guns, commanded by Captain Bingham. This was the first check the British commanders had received from us on the ocean. The sloop was thus justly punished for her insolent treatment of several American vessels.

5. In the midst of our difficulties with France and England, our frontiers were threatened with an Indian war. There existed at that time a celebrated chief, named Tecumseh. He was distinguished for his ambition, talents, and energy of character, but above all, for his enmity to the whites. He was determined to put an effectual barrier to the further extension of our settlements. And for this purpose, he resorted to every artifice to stir up the minds of the Indians against us. Aided by his brother, the Prophet, he formed an alliance with the northwestern tribes, and encouraged by British agents, was preparing for open hostilities against the United States. In 1811, General Harrison, then governor of Indiana, held a council* with the chiefs of several tribes, at Vincennes, at which Tecumseh was present. By his influence the council was broken up, and nothing short of war was expected to result.

insulting the crews? *Ans.* The Little Belt, commanded by Captain Bingham. What occurred on the coast of Virginia?

5. With what were our frontiers threatened? For what was Tecumseh distinguished? When and by whom was a council held?

* Tecumseh was not present when the council assembled. He entered, however, soon after, and was informed that his father, meaning General Harrison, had reserved a seat for him next himself. "My father!" said Tecumseh, "my father! The Great Spirit is my father, the earth is my mother, and upon her breast will I recline." Saying this, he seated himself upon the ground at some distance from Harrison. Tecumseh boldly remonstrated in the council against a purchase the whites had lately made from the Kickapoos and some other tribes. In a strain of wonderful eloquence, he inveighed against the encroachments of the Americans,—gave a faithful history of the progress of the settlements, from the first commencement on the Delaware, to the moment at which he spoke. When answered by General Harrison, he grasped his tomahawk, in a fit of phrensy, and boldly charged him with having uttered what was false. The warriors who attended him, twenty or thirty in number, followed his example. But Harrison had fortunately posted a guard of soldiers near, who put a stop to their fury.

6. Soon after this, every thing on the part of the Indians appeared to indicate approaching hostilities, and General Harrison was sent into their territories, with a body of troops, to demand an explanation and to put a stop to their hostile designs. As he was approaching one of their towns, situated on the Tippecanoe, a branch of the Wabash, he met several chiefs, who offering terms of peace and submission, persuaded him to encamp for the night, as it was then too late to enter upon business.



BATTLE OF TIPPECANOE.

7. Before morning, however, the savages made a furious assault upon the camp. But the whites were prepared to receive them. For Harrison, knowing the treachery of his enemies, ordered his men to sleep upon their arms, and made every preparation against surprise. After a severe struggle, and heavy loss on both sides, the Indians were finally repulsed. Harrison destroyed their towns, and erected such

6. Who was sent against the Indians? Why? What happened as he was approaching one of their towns?

7. What took place next morning? What was the result? What was this battle called? *Ans.* The battle of Tippecanoe. Was Tecumseh present at the battle? *Ans.* No, he had gone to visit the Creeks and Seminoles.

forts as seemed necessary for the protection of the frontiers, and returned.

8. The conduct of Great Britain became daily more and more grievous to the nation. Since 1803, her cruisers had captured nine hundred of our vessels, and impressed more than seven thousand of our seamen. The patience of the nation was exhausted. Congress was assembled by proclamation on the 5th of November, 1811, and the president laid before them the state of our foreign relations, and recommended that measures should be immediately adopted to maintain the honor and interests of the nation. Laws were soon after passed, authorizing the president to make preparation for war, to increase the army, to enlarge the navy, and to borrow money. On the 3d of April, 1812, congress laid an embargo for ninety days on all vessels within the jurisdiction of the United States. Although our government was busily engaged in making preparation for war, a hope was still cherished, that some change in the policy of Great Britain would render an appeal to arms unnecessary. But perceiving no prospect of such a change, congress declared war against that nation on the 18th of June, 1812.*

9. This highly important and eventful act was variously received. In some places it produced the highest demonstrations of joy; in others, especially the commercial sections of our country, it was the cause of gloom and despondency. Although a majority of the nation were in favor of the war, the federal party was opposed to the measure, on the ground that an accommodation with England might have been made, and that we were unprepared for so serious a contest;

8. What was the conduct of Great Britain? How many of our vessels had been captured? Seamen impressed? Do you think there were any just causes for war? What did congress do? When was war declared?

9. How was this act regarded by the nation? What did the "Peace Party" do?

* The bill declaring war against Great Britain passed the house of representatives, June 4th, 1812, by a majority of 79 to 49. It passed the senate, June 7th, by a majority of 19 to 13, and on the 18th, received the signature of the president. The representatives of congress, belonging to the federal party, presented a solemn protest against the declaration of war,—denying it to be either "necessary, or required by any moral duty, or political expediency."

and some even denounced it as unnecessary, impolitic, and immoral. These organized themselves under the title of the "*Peace Party*," and exerted all their influence against the operations of government. Unanimity in so important a measure was not to be expected; yet the opposition of so great a portion of the population, of the talents and wealth of the country, tended to throw embarrassments on its prosecution, which were greatly felt throughout the whole struggle.

10. In some respects, the nation was much better situated for war, than at the commencement of the Revolution. It *now* had an efficient government. Its population had increased from three to eight millions, and its pecuniary resources had multiplied in a still greater ratio. In other respects its situation was less favorable. At the commencement of the Revolution, the nation was united in the measure, and they were comparatively a warlike people; for they had been trained up in the French and Indians wars, and had able and experienced commanders. But in 1812, the situation of things was very different. The nation had enjoyed the blessings of peace and prosperity for about thirty years. During this time they had in a measure lost their military character, and there were no officers in whom entire confidence could be placed. Our oldest revolutionary heroes slept in honored graves, and those who remained were far advanced in life, and but poorly qualified for the active duties of the camp and field. Such was the situation of things at the commencement of hostilities.

11. Soon after war was declared, preparations were made for the invasion of Canada. Three armies were assembled; one at Detroit* under General Hull, then governor of Michigan territory; another at Lewistown† under General Van Rensselaer; a third at Plattsburgh‡ under General Dear-

10. Was the nation as well prepared for war as in 1775?

11. What preparations were made soon after war was declared? How

* Detroit, capital of Michigan, situated on Detroit river, between Lake Erie and Lake St. Clair.

† Lewistown, in New York, situated on Niagara river, opposite Queenstown, 7 miles below Niagara falls, and 27½ north of Buffalo.

‡ Plattsburgh, a town in New York, situated on Lake Champlain, 63 miles south of Montreal.

born, the commander-in-chief of the American army. The British had a regular army of 6,000 men in Canada; and they had formed an extensive alliance with the Indians. Tecumseh had been raised to the rank of general in the British army; and by his influence thousands of savage warriors were induced to take up arms against the Americans.

12. On the 12th of July, General Hull crossed the river Detroit with a force of 2,500 men, with the object of marching on Fort Malden,* then the British head-quarters, and from thence proceeding to Montreal. On the same day, he addressed a proclamation to the Canadians, calling on them to submit without resistance, promising protection to their persons, rights, property, &c. On the 15th, Colonel Cass,† with 280 men, defeated a detachment of the British at the river Aux Canards, 5 miles from Fort Malden, and advised Hull to march immediately against the fort. Had he done so, it would probably have fallen an easy conquest. But instead of pressing on and striking a powerful blow, he ordered Colonel Cass to return and join the army. After remaining about a month inactive in his camp, on the 8th of August, in spite of the entreaties of his officers and the indignation of his troops, he returned to Detroit.

13. The British at Malden were soon reinforced by the arrival of General Brock, the governor of Canada. He immediately marched against Detroit, at the head of 330 regulars, 400 militia, and 600 Indians, and on the 15th of August opened a heavy cannonade upon the town from the opposite bank of the river. The next day he crossed over with his troops, and advanced toward the fort in close column, and twelve deep. The Americans were judiciously

many and where were the armies assembled? Under whom? The commander-in-chief?

12. What did General Hull do on the 12th day of July? On the 8th of August? What do you think of General Hull?

13. What did the British do soon after? What did General Brock do on the 15th of August? Relate what took place next day.

* Malden, on the east bank of the Detroit river, 3 miles above its entrance into Lake Erie, and 15 below Detroit.

† Lewis Cass was born at Exeter, New Hampshire, on the 9th of October, 1782.

disposed to receive them. The militia and volunteers were so stationed as to flank the enemy. The regulars defended the fort; and two twenty-four pounders, charged with grape shot, were so planted as to sweep the whole British line. All was now silent expectation. On the enemy came, fearlessly, but apparently to certain destruction. Our troops, confident of victory, were eager for the contest.

14. They had now arrived within 500 yards of the American lines, and all were anxiously waiting the signal for the artillery to open upon them its deadly fire. But instead of this, Hull ordered the troops to retire within the fort. Here they were commanded to stack their arms, and to the astonishment of every one, a white flag, in token of submission, was suspended from the walls. The enemy were as much astonished as the Americans at this result. A capitulation was soon agreed upon, by which the army, the fort, and the whole territory of Michigan, were surrendered into the hands of the British! This disgraceful event excited the deepest feelings of indignation throughout the country.*

15. On the 13th of October, Van Rensselaer, with 1,000 troops, crossed the river Niagara and took the British fort at Queenstown by storm. While they were rejoicing over their success, General Brock arrived with 600 fresh troops. But they also were soon defeated by the Americans, and Brock himself was among the slain. The British were soon after reinforced again by 1,000 men; and Van Rensselaer now endeavored to transport all his forces across the river. But the militia utterly refused to pass the boundary

14. Do you suppose Hull possessed that energy, firmness, and decision of character, that always distinguish a brave and skillful officer? What do you think of his conduct?

15. What took place on the 13th of October, 1812? Where is Queenstown? *Ans.* It is a town of Upper Canada, situated on Niagara river, seven miles below Niagara falls. Why would not the militia cross over? *Ans.* They had learned that the constitution did not require the militia to go beyond the

* General Hull was afterward exchanged for thirty British prisoners. Soon after he was tried by a court-martial, found guilty of cowardice and neglect of duty, and was sentenced to be shot, but was recommended to mercy in consequence of his services in the war of the revolution, and his advanced age. The president remitted the punishment, but deprived him of all military command.

line. He urged, entreated, but in vain. The consequence was, that the brave troops on the Canada side were assailed by a superior force, and nearly all of them killed.

16. Van Rensselaer, having received a wound, resigned the command, and was succeeded by General Smyth. In a very boastful manner, Smyth addressed the "men of New York," complaining of the management of the former general, and calling upon them to join his standard, and march to the immediate conquest of Canada. He soon had an army of 4,500 men under his command; but such was his delay and miscalculation, that nothing was effected before they were obliged to return to winter quarters. Twice the troops embarked to cross the river, but landed without leaving the shore. His men were disgusted, and all were indignant at his base and cowardly conduct.

17. The other army, under General Dearborn, stationed near Lake Champlain, effected nothing of any importance. Thus, at the end of the year 1812, no enterprise worthy of the American arms had been accomplished. Every patriot was mortified, and every tongue filled with complaint. But, while failure and disgrace followed the movements of the army, glory and success attended the exploits of our navy.

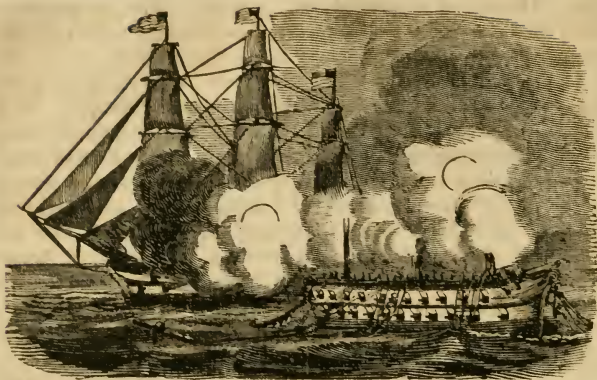
18. On the 19th of August, Captain Hull, in the frigate *Constitution* fell in with the British ship *Guerriere*. Her flags were flying in boastful defiance. On one of them, were the words, "Not the Little Belt." The *Constitution* bore down, her crew giving three cheers. The *Guerriere* now opened a heavy fire, but Hull, wishing to gain a favorable position, received it without returning a gun. The enemy attributed this to want of skill; but the wished-for moment at length arrived. The *Constitution* was brought to the station intended, and orders were given to fire broadside after broadside. Never was firing more dreadful. For fifteen minutes the *Constitution's* guns poured forth one

limits of the United States, and they possessed neither the courage nor the magnanimity to go to the assistance of their comrades. What was the consequence of their refusal?

16. What do you think of General Smyth's movements?

17. What did the army under General Dearborn do?

18. Describe the capture of the *Guerriere*.



CONSTITUTION AND GUERRIERE.

continued blaze, and their thunder roared with scarce an intermission. Every mast and spar of the *Guerriere* was shot away, and in thirty minutes, she lay an unmanageable wreck. The British loss in this action, was 15 killed and 63 wounded, while that of the Americans, was but 7 killed and 37 wounded. The *Guerriere* was so much damaged as to render it impossible to bring her into port. She was therefore set on fire and blown up. The *Constitution* received but little injury, and was ready for action the next day.

19. On the 18th of October, near the Bermuda Islands, Captain Jones, in the *Wasp*, of 18 guns, captured the *Frolic*, of 22 guns. When the action commenced the sea was exceedingly rough, and the muzzles of the guns were often under water. The *Frolic* fired as she rose on the wave, and her shot went over, doing little or no injury; but the *Wasp* fired as she sunk, and every broadside shattered the hull of her antagonist. After an action of 45 minutes the Americans boarded, but to their astonishment, they found but three officers on deck, and the seaman at the

19. Describe the capture of the *Frolic*.

wheel. The decks were slippery with the blood of the dead and the dying. Thirty had been killed and fifty wounded. The Wasp had but five killed and five slightly wounded. This was unquestionably the most severe and decisive action during the war. Shortly after the battle, both vessels were taken by a British seventy-four and carried into the Bermudas.

20. On the 25th of October, Captain Decatur,* in the frigate United States, of 44 guns, fell in with the Macedonian, of 49 guns, near the Western Islands. The enemy had decidedly the advantage, but after an action of an hour and a half, having her mizen and main-top-masts shot away, her rigging entirely cut to pieces, and nearly all her guns disabled, the Macedonian surrendered. She had 36 men killed and 68 wounded, while the United States had but 7 killed and 5 wounded. Decatur towed his prize into New York, where he was received with the highest demonstrations of joy.

21. On the 30th of December, off the coast of Brazil, Commodore Bainbridge, in the Constitution, captured the Java, one of the finest vessels of her class in the British navy. The action continued three hours. The Java was reduced to a mere wreck; her captain was slain, with 60 of the crew, and 101 wounded. The Constitution had 34 killed and wounded. Such was the glorious beginning of our naval warfare against Great Britain; and besides these victories of the navy, our privateers had taken a great number of merchant vessels. Over 500 prizes were made during the year. The British were astonished, and exceedingly mortified, at the brilliant success of our little navy, which had now added such glory to the American name.

22. Mr. Madison was re-elected president this year, notwithstanding the violent opposition of the "*peace party*,"

20. Describe the capture of the Macedonian.

21. The Java. How many prizes were taken in 1812?

22. Who was re-elected president in 1812? Who vice-president? What state was admitted into the Union?

* Stephen Decatur was born in Maryland, 1779; he fell in a duel with Commodore Barron, in 1820. See his Life.

who supported De Witt Clinton, of New York, as their candidate. Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, was chosen vice-president. During this year Louisiana was admitted into the Union. Thus closed the important events of 1812.

EVENTS OF 1813.

1. The administration now determined to prosecute the war with new vigor, and, if possible, retrieve the character of the army by the reduction of Canada. The enthusiasm produced by the success of the navy, inspired the land forces with eager desire to accomplish something worthy of the nation. The president was authorized to raise twenty new regiments, increase the wages of the soldiers, build eighteen ships of war, and to supply the great lakes with a navy of sufficient force to compete with the enemy.

2. Great enthusiasm now prevailed throughout the western states; volunteer companies were formed in every quarter, and the most active preparations made for the purpose of regaining possession of the territory of Michigan. An army of eight thousand volunteers from Kentucky and Ohio, under command of General Harrison, marched against the enemy in that quarter. He concentrated his forces at Sandusky. At the earnest request of the inhabitants of Frenchtown, a detachment of eight hundred men, under the command of General Winchester, marched to defend that place.

3. On the 22d of January, a body of British and Indians, under the command of Colonel Proctor, having crossed the Detroit river on the ice, made a furious assault upon the camp at Frenchtown. The Americans were overpowered, more than three hundred were slain, and several hundred carried prisoners to Malden. Over sixty, who were wounded

1. What did congress authorize the president to do?

2. Why were volunteer companies formed in the western states? Under whose command were they placed? Who was sent to the defense of Frenchtown?

3. State the attack upon Frenchtown, and the result.

in the battle, were left in the care of the inhabitants of the town. The next morning the savages entered the place, set fire to the houses, and murdered the wounded soldiers in the most cruel and barbarous manner.

4. Harrison marched soon after this to the rapids of the Miami, where he built Fort Meigs. Here he was besieged, on the 1st of May, by a party of British and Indians from Malden, commanded by Colonel Proctor. General Clay, with twelve hundred Kentuckians, marched to his relief. The enemy were at once attacked and put to flight; but afterward returning, they surprised the Americans, killed one hundred and fifty, and took five hundred prisoners. The remainder escaped into the fort, or fled to the nearest settlements. The enemy continued the siege till the 9th of May, when, their Indian allies having deserted, the whole force withdrew.

5. The British, by providing a respectable navy on the lakes, had great advantage over the Americans. Commodore Chauncey, after great exertions, procured a naval force on Lake Ontario, sufficient to compete with the enemy. On the 25th of April, General Dearborn, with seventeen hundred men, crossed the lake for the attack of York, the capital of Upper Canada. On the 27th, General Pike, a brave young officer, after carrying the battery of the enemy at the point of the bayonet, led on his men to the main works.

6. At the moment his troops arrived, the enemy's magazine blew up, and made terrible havoc among them. Pike was mortally wounded. and more than one hundred men were killed by this disaster. But the Americans pressed on, and soon gained possession of the town. The dying Pike smiled in triumph, when one of his men brought the flag of the enemy, and placed it under his head.

4. What did General Harrison do? What took place the 1st of May? Who marched to his relief? How many of these troops under General Clay were killed and taken prisoners? How long did the enemy continue the siege?

5. In what respect had the British the advantage on the lakes? Who was sent to prepare us a navy on Lake Ontario? When did General Dearborn cross the lake? For what purpose? What did General Pike do?

6. What happened as he led on his troops? What were Pike's last words?
Ans. "Move on, my brave fellows, and revenge your general."

7. During General Dearborn's absence on this expedition, about one thousand British troops landed, and made an attack upon Sackett's Harbor, the 29th of May. The force, at this place, amounted to about one thousand men, under the command of General Brown. A considerable part of these were militia, who fled in great confusion at the approach of the enemy. The British pressing on, soon compelled the regular troops to retreat into the houses along the road. From these coverts they poured a deadly fire upon the enemy, which checked their progress. General Brown had, by this time, succeeded in collecting a large number of the panic-struck militia, and was leading them by a circuitous route to the attack of the enemy. The British commander, supposing their object was to fall upon him in his rear, ordered a retreat to their boats. This order was obeyed with so much promptness and haste, that they left behind them all their wounded and prisoners.

8. While these affairs were going on at the north, events of great interest had occurred on the coast of the Atlantic. The success of the American navy had greatly alarmed the British nation, and Admiral Warren had been sent with a powerful fleet to line the whole coast of the United States, and interrupt all their naval operations.

9. A number of ships entered the Chesapeake bay, and made great havoc among our merchant vessels. The British landed, plundered and burned many flourishing towns. Frenchtown, Georgetown, Hampton, Havre de Grace, and Fredericktown were destroyed. An attempt was made against Norfolk, but after the loss of two hundred men, the enemy desisted.

10. While the British were blockading the Delaware, the inhabitants of Lewistown refused to supply them with

7. What happened while General Dearborn was absent? Describe the battle? Do you suppose General Brown thought of cutting off the retreat of the British? Why were the British soldiers so willing to obey their general at this time?

8. Who was sent with a British fleet to line the coast of the United States?

9. What did they do in Chesapeake bay? What places were plundered and burned?

10. In what harbor was Decatur blockaded?

water and provisions. Enraged at this, the enemy bombarded and endeavored to take the town; but they were defeated. At this time, Decatur having entered the harbor of New London with the *United States* and his prize, the *Macedonian*, was blockaded by a British squadron, under Commodore Hardy. Impatient of his situation, he sent a challenge to two frigates of the enemy, but it was not accepted.

11. But the powerful force of the British did not prevent our vessels from cruising the seas, and making captures. On the 23d of February, Captain Lawrence, in the *Hornet*, fell in with the British brig *Peacock*, of about equal force. After a fierce battle of fifteen minutes, the *Peacock* struck her colors, and raised a signal of distress. The Americans lowered their boats, but before they could get away all her crew, the brig went down, and with her thirteen of her own men, and four of the *Hornet's* men.

12. In reward for this exploit, Lawrence was appointed to the command of the *Chesapeake*. She was then blockaded in Boston harbor, by two British vessels. Captain Brock, of the British frigate *Shannon*, sent a challenge to Lawrence to meet him in single combat. The *Chesapeake* was in bad trim, and her crew raw and undisciplined. But Lawrence, inspired with hope from past success, and eager for new trophies, set sail on the first of June, and the two vessels soon came to action.

13. The battle commenced at the distance of pistol shot, and with terrible fury on both sides. The *Chesapeake* soon lost her foresail, and falling a little in the rear, was exposed to a raking fire from the enemy. Her officers were all soon killed or wounded, her chest of arms blown up, and in this condition she was boarded, and her gallant crew compelled to submit.

14. Soon after the action began, Lawrence received a

11. Describe the battle of the *Hornet* and the *Peacock*?

12. What appointment did Lawrence receive? Where was the *Chesapeake* then lying? Who sent a challenge to Lawrence? Was the *Chesapeake* and her crew well prepared for a severe engagement?

13. Describe the battle between the *Chesapeake* and the *Shannon*.

14. What were the last words of Lawrence?

mortal wound, and was carried below. But his courage held out to the last moment. Being asked if the colors should be struck, he replied, "No, they shall wave while I live." Even after his crew had been obliged to surrender, he exclaimed, in the agonies of death, "Don't give up the ship." The loss was great on both sides. Of the Americans, forty-seven were killed and ninety-seven wounded. Of the enemy, twenty-six were killed and fifty-seven were wounded. The British boasted of this victory, with the most extravagant exultation. The Americans deplored the fate of the brave young Lawrence.

15. In the month of August, the British brig Pelican captured the American brig Argus, which had made a very successful cruise against the coasting vessels of England. Another action took place on the 5th of September, between the American brig Enterprise and the British brig Boxer. The Enterprise was victorious. Both commanders were slain in the action, and buried side by side in Portland. American privateers were successful in making numerous prizes.

16. Let us now turn to the affairs of the north. Early in the season, Commodore Perry had been ordered to Presque Isle, Pennsylvania, to prepare a fleet for the purpose of meeting the enemy on Lake Erie. By the first of August, after triumphing over many difficulties, he had equipped a flotilla of nine vessels, carrying, in all, fifty-four guns. The British had a fleet on the same lake, under the command of Commodore Barclay, carrying sixty-four guns.

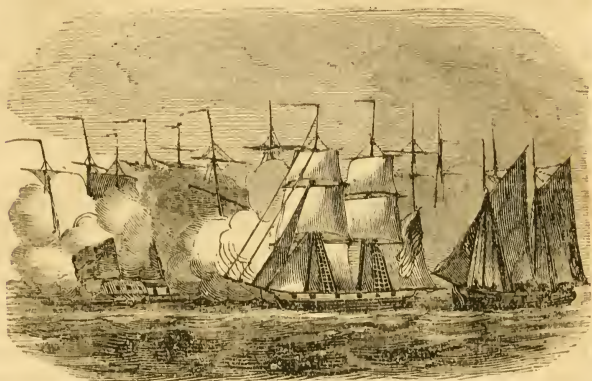
17. The two squadrons met on the 10th of September. The wind being light, they approached each other very slowly. Perry was on board the Lawrence, which, crowding all sail, had got far in advance of the other vessels,

15. When and by what was the Argus captured? What other naval action took place about this time? Which was victorious? Where and how were the commanders buried? Where is Portland?

16. At what time did Commodore Perry get his fleet prepared on Lake Erie?

17, 18. Describe the battle of Lake Erie? How did Perry describe his victory to General Harrison?

and was obliged to sustain the whole fire of the enemy. After a contest of two hours with two vessels of nearly equal size, she was completely disabled, and all her crew, except seven, were either killed or wounded.



PERRY'S VICTORY.

18. The gallant Perry now seized his flag, and passed in an open boat, exposed to the enemy's fire, to the ship *Niagara*, commanded by Captain Elliott, which had, by this time, come up. He now opened upon the British with terrible effect. Broadside after broadside was poured into the British ships with unerring aim. He broke through their line, and soon compelled one vessel after another to surrender. The whole American squadron now joining in the contest, a complete and decisive victory soon followed. At four o'clock, p.m., he dispatched to General Harrison the following laconic epistle, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours." This brilliant action occasioned great joy throughout the nation.

19. General Harrison, who was then at Fort Meigs, hearing of Perry's victory, marched at once to the lake,

19. What did Harrison now do? Did he find the enemy at Fort Malden? Where is Malden? Did he find them at Detroit? To what place had they retreated?

embarked, and crossed over for the purpose of attacking the enemy at Fort Malden. When he arrived there, however, he found that the British and Indians, anticipating his movements, had deserted that post, also Detroit, and had retreated up the River Thames to the Moravian villages.

20. Harrison, by rapid pursuit, overtook them on the 5th of October, and brought them to action. A company of mounted riflemen was placed in front of the line, and after the first fire of the enemy, they were ordered to charge. At first the horses recoiled; but soon they rushed on with irresistible fury, and breaking through the ranks of the British, compelled them to throw down their arms.

21. Upon the left, the onset was begun by Tecumseh with great fury. Colonel Richard M. Johnson, who commanded that flank of his regiment, received a galling fire, which he returned with great effect. The combat raged with increasing fury, while the Indians, to the number of twelve or fifteen hundred, seemed determined to maintain their ground to the last. The terrible voice of Tecumseh could be distinctly heard above the din of battle, encouraging his warriors, who, on this occasion, fought with more than Indian courage.

22. An incident soon occurred, however, which decided the contest. Colonel Johnson rushed toward the spot where the warriors, clustering around their undaunted chief, appeared resolved to perish by his side. In a moment a hundred rifles were aimed at Johnson, whose uniform, and the white horse which he rode, rendered him a conspicuous object. His horse and himself received a number of wounds; and his holsters, dress, and accoutrements were pierced with bullets.

23. At the instant his horse was about to sink under him, the daring Kentuckian, covered with blood from his wounds, was discovered by Tecumseh, who, having discharged his rifle, sprang forward with his tomahawk; but, at this moment, Johnson discharged a pistol at his breast,

20, 21, 22. Describe the battle of the Thames? Where is the Thames? In what direction from us?

23. What does the cut represent?



DEATH OF TECUMSEH.

and both, almost at the same instant, fell to the ground. The Kentuckians rushed forward to the rescue of their leader, and the Indians, no longer hearing the voice of Tecumseh, instantly fled. Thus fell the most celebrated Indian warrior that ever raised the tomahawk against us; and with him fell the last hope of our Indian enemies.

24. In the early part of this year, the mediation of Russia was offered to bring about peace between England and the United States. The president accepted the offer, and appointed Messrs. Adams, Gallatin, and Bayard commissioners to negotiate for peace. But Great Britain refused to treat under this mediation.

25. In order to defend the frontiers against the British and their savage allies, the American forces were divided into small companies, which were liable to be attacked by greater numbers, and entirely cut off. During the summer, battles were fought on Stony Creek and the Beaver Dams, in which the enemy were successful. On the first of August, General Proctor, with twelve hundred men, attacked Fort Stephenson, at Lower Sandusky, defended only

24. What power offered to mediate between us and England? What is the meaning of mediate?

25. What other battles were fought during the summer?

by a band of one hundred and fifty Americans, under the command of Major Croghan. The enemy, confident of victory, endeavored to carry the fort by storm; but being repulsed, with the loss of one hundred and fifty men, they thought it best to retire. The garrison had but one killed and seven wounded.

26. On the 11th of November, an action took place at Williamsburg, on the St. Lawrence, in which both parties claimed the victory. In December, the Americans blew up Fort George, and set fire to Newark, a neighboring village, on the Niagara river. In retaliation, the British crossed the Niagara, and burned all the principal towns on the American side of that river.

27. While these things were transpiring at the north, the Creeks and Seminole Indians had taken up the hatchet, and commenced a war of plunder and devastation. They had listened to the persuasions of Tecumseh, the famous chief and mighty warrior, and now began to show their hostility, by murdering several whites in their neighborhood. The people on the Alabama river, alarmed at their danger, took refuge in Fort Mims.

28. On the 14th of August, the savages surrounded the fort, cut their way through the outworks, set fire to all the buildings, butchered and burned men, women, and children. Nearly three hundred perished, and but seventeen escaped. The whites, indignant at these cruelties, resolved on vengeance. General Jackson,* at the head of thirty-five hun-

26. What took place in November? December?

27. In what new war were the United States involved this year? By whom were they instigated to hostilities?

28. What took place the 14th of August? Who marched against the Indians? Where did General Jackson defeat the Indians?

* Andrew Jackson was born in South Carolina, about forty-five miles from Camden, on the 15th of March, 1767. He was designed for the church, and commenced the preparatory studies; but these were speedily interrupted by the war of the revolution. At the age of fourteen, he, with an elder brother, joined the American army, and was soon after captured and wounded. On his liberation, he returned to his native place, and commenced studying the law. In 1788, he removed to Nashville, in Tennessee, and began to practice with great success. His first public appointment was that of district attorney, in 1790; and at nearly the same time he was named one of the members of a convention to frame the state constitution. In 1796, he was elected a representative to the congress of the United States, and senator in 1797. In 1799, he received a commission as major-general in the militia; and in 1814, two years after the declaration of war with Great Britain, was appointed to the same rank in the United States army. In March, 1821, he was made gov-

dred militia from Tennessee, marched into the Indian territory. These troops endured great hardships from the want of provisions, while traversing a gloomy wilderness. But in several battles, at Tallushatchie, Talladega, and other places, the Indians were defeated with terrible slaughter. Their villages were burned, and their country laid waste.

29. The decisive battle was fought on the 27th of March, 1814, at the Great Bend of the River Tallapoosa. Here, about one thousand of the surviving warriors had assembled, and fortified themselves. General Jackson, with a strong reinforcement, attacked this last refuge of the enemy, and after a most obstinate struggle, was completely victorious. About eight hundred of the savages, scorning to yield, fell in the battle.

30. The Indians had now suffered a terrible loss by the war. More than two thousand of their ablest warriors had fallen, and their towns were all destroyed. They now began to sue for peace.* A treaty was made with them by General Jackson, and he and his brave troops were permitted to enjoy an honorable but short repose.

EVENTS OF 1814, AND END OF THE WAR.

1. The soldiers and officers of the American army had now acquired that degree of discipline and experience which prepared them for a more arduous campaign. Peace

29. Where was fought the decisive battle?

30. Was the war any advantage to the Indians? Any injury? Why?

ernor of the Floridas, by President Monroe; again elected senator of the United States, in 1822; elevated to the presidency in 1823; and again elected, in 1832, to the same station. On the expiration of his second term of office, he retired to the Hermitage, his estate near Nashville, and spent the remainder of his active and useful life in retirement. He died, June 8th, 1845. The news of his death spread a gloom over the nation, and a united people attended as mourners at his funeral, desirous of honoring the memory of the departed hero and patriot.

* Soon after the battle of the Great Bend, Weatherford, the principal chief of the Creeks, came and surrendered himself to General Jackson, addressing him as follows: "I am in your power. Do with me what you please. I have done the white people all the harm I could. I have fought them, and fought them bravely. There was a time when I had a choice. I have none now—even hope is ended. Once I could animate my warriors, but I can not animate the dead. They can no longer hear my voice. Their bones are at Tallushatchie, Talladega, Emuckfau, and Tohopeka. While there was a chance of success, I never supplicated peace; but my people are gone, and I now ask it for my nation and myself."

having been concluded in Europe, Great Britain shipped an army of veteran troops for the invasion of the United States by way of Canada.

2. On the 3d of July, Generals Scott* and Ripley, with three thousand men, crossed the Niagara, and surprised and took possession of Fort Erie without resistance. The next day, General Brown, with the main body of the army, advanced against the enemy at Chippewa. Here he found a force equal to his own, under the command of General Riall. On the 5th, both armies met in open field. The British advanced with a furious charge, which put a part of the American line to flight. But this breach was soon repaired by the bravery of the troops under Major Jessup. The enemy was completely routed, and after a loss of five hundred men, retreated to their fortifications. This may be considered the first regular pitched battle during the war, and furnished a convincing proof that nothing but discipline was wanting to give to our soldiers on land the same excellence that our seamen had exhibited on the ocean.†

3. General Riall, soon after his defeat, retired to Burlington Heights. After a few days, he was strongly reinforced there by General Drummond, who assumed the command, and led back the army toward the American lines.

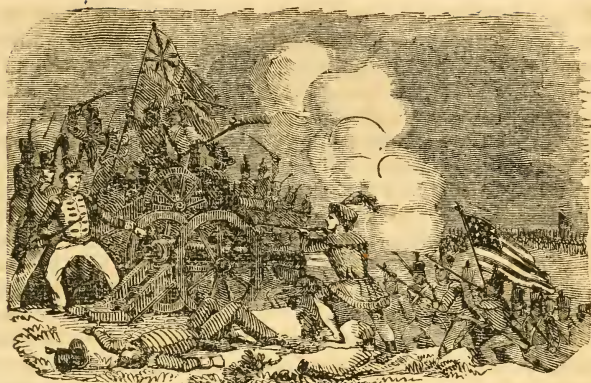
1. Why were the British enabled to send more troops to the United States at this time than at any former period?

2. When did General Brown cross the Niagara? Fort Erie is on the Canada side of the Niagara river. Describe the battle of Chippewa.

3. Describe the battle of Bridgewater, or Lundy's Lane. What question did General Ripley put to Colonel Miller? What was his reply?

* General Winfield Scott was born near Petersburg, Virginia, on the 13th of June, 1786. In May, 1808, he received a captain's commission in the army of the United States. He gradually rose from that office, by his bravery and talents, to the distinguished post of commander-in-chief of the United States army.

† It is said that Major Jessup, suspecting that his troops had expended nearly all their cartridges, passed along the rear of the line to make inquiry as to the fact. Several soldiers who lay mortally wounded, some of them actually in the agonies of death, hearing the inquiry, forgot, for a moment, in their devotion to their country, both the pain they endured and the approach of death, and called out, each one for himself, "Here are cartridges in my box, take and distribute them among my companions." A soldier in the line exclaimed to Major Jessup as he was passing, "My musket is shot to pieces." His comrade, who lay expiring with his wounds at the distance of a few feet, replied in a voice scarcely audible, "My musket is in excellent order, take and use her." It is not extravagant to assert, that an army of such men, commanded by officers of corresponding merit, is literally invincible.



BATTLE OF BRIDGEWATER.

General Brown being encamped at Chippewa, and learning that the British army was advancing, ordered General Scott, with his brigade, and Towson's artillery, to march forward with all speed, and divert the attention of the enemy, while the rest of the army was put in motion. When Scott arrived opposite the cataract of Niagara, he became apprised of the enemy's presence and force. He instantly marched on, and the two armies engaged at "Lundy's Lane," within a short distance of the Falls. For more than an hour he maintained the fight against a force seven times his number. About dark General Ripley came up, and relieved Scott's exhausted troops. The main army, under General Brown, arrived soon after, and the contest was renewed with great fury. The Americans suffered greatly from a British battery stationed on a commanding eminence. General Ripley, feeling that this battery must be silenced, or the victory lost, said to Colonel Miller, "Can you storm that battery?" "I will try, sir," he promptly replied.

4. Placing himself at the head of the 21st regiment,

4. What did Miller do? What was the result?

Miller led them up with charged bayonets to the mouth of the blazing cannon, rushed upon the artillerymen, gained possession of the battery, and turned the guns upon the enemy. The British were soon after reinforced, and made three desperate struggles to regain the eminence; but the Americans, with obstinate fury, charged them in front and rear, took General Riall prisoner, drove them from the hill, and remained in possession of the field. The battle continued until midnight, and was one of the most obstinate that occurred during the war. The British force engaged in the action was about five thousand men, and that of the Americans three thousand five hundred. Each army lost about nine hundred men.

5. Generals Brown and Scott having been wounded, the command devolved on General Ripley. After remaining on the hill a few hours, he retired to Fort Erie and there intrenched himself. General Gaines arrived soon after and took the chief command. On the 4th of August, he was besieged by General Drummond at the head of 5,000 men. On the 15th of August, the enemy made a furious assault, and endeavored to storm the batteries, but the garrison repulsed them repeatedly with dreadful carnage. They succeeded, however, in carrying a part of the outworks, but just at this moment a large magazine exploded, which made terrible slaughter among them. After a loss of 900 men, they retreated. The garrison lost only eighty-four.

6. The enemy, however, continued the siege. General Brown having taken command of the fort on the 17th of September, the Americans made a sally, and gaining the rear, charged them with so much fury that they fled from their intrenchments, leaving all their cannon and magazines in the hands of the garrison. About 1,000 of the British troops were killed, wounded, or taken, in the short space of one hour. Four days after this battle the enemy retired from the fort, and relieved the garrison from their dangers and toils.

5. Where did the American forces now retire? Describe the attack on Fort Erie? What was the result?

6. What took place on the 17th of September? What on the 21st?

7. In August, General Izard, with 5,000 men, was dispatched to the Niagara frontier to join General Brown, leaving General Macomb in command at Plattsburg with only 1,500 troops. The British in Canada resolved to improve this favorable opportunity to capture that important post. Sir George Prevost, at the head of 14,000 veteran troops—most of whom had served with Wellington—arrived at Plattsburg on the 6th of September. The Americans withdrew across the Saranac,* and for four days withstood all attempts of the enemy to cross the stream.

8. At this time Commodore M'Donough, with a small fleet, amounting in all to 86 guns, lay at anchor in the harbor. The British general had resolved to attack the fleet and army at the same time; and for this purpose he had ordered Captain Downie to enter the bay with his whole naval force, which, carrying 95 guns, was superior to that of the Americans. On the 11th, the British fleet arrived and anchored within 60 rods of the American vessels. Both parties gave three cheers, and opened their fire.

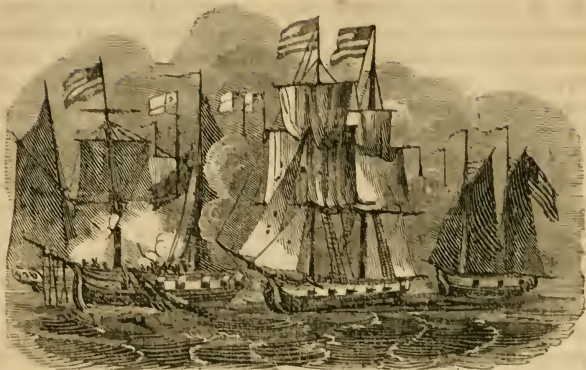
9. The roar of cannon now rolled incessantly across the calm and peaceful lake. One of the British ships had her cable shot away, and drifting into the American fleet, was soon obliged to surrender. In two hours the flag-ship of the enemy struck her colors, and shortly the whole fleet submitted to the victorious Americans. On shore the battle was equally furious, but not so decisive. The British made three desperate attempts to cross the Saranac, but were as often driven back with the loss of many men killed and wounded.

7. Where did the next considerable action take place? How many soldiers marched against Plattsburgh? When, and under whom? Who commanded the American forces?

8. Who commanded the American fleet on Lake Champlain? What was the comparative size of the two fleets? What took place on the 11th of September? How did the battle commence?

9. Describe the battle of Lake Champlain. Describe the battle on shore.

* Saranac river runs through Plattsburg and empties itself into Lake Champlain.



BATTLE ON LAKE CHAMPLAIN.

10. The shout of victory from the harbor, while it dampened the courage of the British, excited the most ardent enthusiasm along the American lines. Repulsed and disappointed, the enemy by night retreated in great confusion, leaving their wounded, baggage, and stores, in the hands of the conquerors. The loss of the day on the American side was 230 men; while that of the British amounted to 2,700; a part of this number, however, deserted from the retreating army. This decisive action put an end to the war on the northern frontier.

11. In the mean time the British had made a successful invasion of the country bordering on the Chesapeake. On the 19th of August, General Ross, with 5,000 troops, landed at Benedict, on the Patuxent, about 40 miles from Washington. The only naval force there to oppose them was a fleet of gun-boats, under Commodore Barney, which, on the approach of the enemy, was moved up the river, and burned to prevent its falling into their hands. Ross soon commenced his march toward Washington.

10. What was the result of the battles of Plattsburg and Champlain?

11. What took place on the 19th of August? Toward what city did Ross march his troops?

12. The Americans felt great alarm at the progress of this powerful army. General Winder, the American commander, could not muster more than about 1,000 regular troops, and 2,000 militia, to oppose the march of the enemy. On the 24th, the Americans were attacked at Bladensburg. At first they made a vigorous defense; but the superior force of the British soon put them to flight. In the evening of the same day the enemy marched into Washington. The inhabitants, terrified at their approach, had deserted the city. In about one hour, the capitol, president's house, and all the public buildings, were in flames. The ships in the navy-yard, and the great bridge across the Potomac, shared the same fate. On the next day the British left the city; and soon after returned to their fleet.

13. This wanton destruction of public property excited universal indignation and regret, not only throughout this country, but throughout Europe. It was every where stigmatized as a deed utterly unworthy of a civilized nation. It had the effect of rousing the whole American people to more vigorous action. The other cities of the country now made every exertion for defense.

14. About the same time a detachment of the enemy sailed up the Potomac and attacked Alexandria. The citizens, to save the town from destruction, gave up all their shipping and merchandise. General Ross now determined to attempt the capture of Baltimore. On the 12th of September, 5,000 men were landed at North Point, fourteen miles below that city. Great preparations had been made by the inhabitants for defense, and about 15,000 men were in arms ready to meet the enemy.

15. General Ross, as he was marching toward Balti-

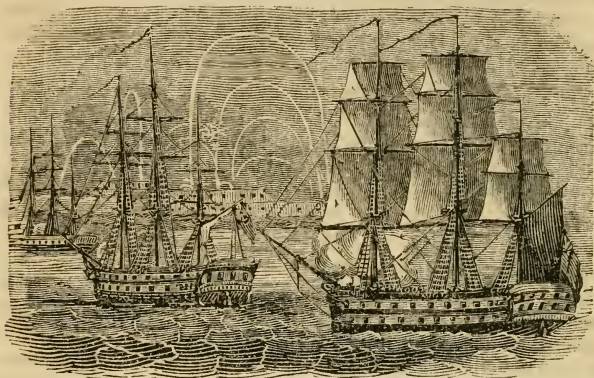
12. Who commanded the American forces? How large was his army? Describe the battle of Bladensburg. When did the British enter Washington? What did they do there? Did they act the part of an honorable foe?
Ans. They destroyed valuable libraries, works of taste, and elegant specimens of the fine arts. Was this right?

13. How was the conduct of the British at Washington regarded in America and Europe?

14. What happened at Alexandria? What did General Ross determine to do next? Where did he land his troops?

15. What happened as he was marching his troops toward Baltimore?

more, was met by a strong detachment under General Striker, and in a skirmish received a mortal wound. His troops, after a sharp action, advanced and took position within two miles of the American lines. In the mean time the British fleet had attacked Fort M'Henry, and an attempt was made to land and carry the batteries by storm, but it



BOMBARDMENT OF FORT M' HENRY.

was resisted with great bravery. After this repulse of the fleet, the army, fearing to venture a battle with the main body of the American forces, retreated; and on the 14th re-embarked, and soon after left the bay.

16. In the month of July a British squadron visited the coast of New England, and subjected the inhabitants to great losses and distress. Numerous attacks were made upon the unprotected towns and harbors, and a vast amount of property destroyed.* But while the ports of the country

What did his troops do? What was the fleet doing in the mean time? The result of the fleet? Army?

16. What happened in the month of July? Describe the capture of the Essex. What British vessels were captured?

* The British ascended the Connecticut river to Pettipaug, or Essex, a village in the town of Saybrook, and destroyed shipping to the value of more than two hun-

were blockaded by the enemy, our public vessels and privateers were successfully cruising upon the open ocean. Several battles were fought, which added new luster to the rising fame of the American navy. Commodore Porter, in the *Essex*, had made numerous prizes on the Pacific ocean. Alarmed at his success, the British sent two vessels in pursuit of him. After a most obstinate defense, in which the Americans displayed a degree of bravery and perseverance truly astonishing, the *Essex* was captured in the harbor of Valparaiso. Captain Blakely, in the sloop-of-war *Wasp*, captured two British vessels, the *Reindeer* and the *Avon*, each of greater force. The *Wasp*, with her noble crew, was afterward lost at sea.

17. In the latter part of summer, three British ships arrived on the coast of Florida,* and entered the harbor of Pensacola. The Spanish authorities allowed them to land troops, fit out expeditions, and to distribute arms and ammunition among the Spaniards and Indians. General Jackson, having remonstrated in vain with the governor of Pensacola, for affording shelter and protection to the enemies of the United States, immediately marched against the city. On his arrival, he sent a flag to demand redress from the governor, but this was fired on from the batteries. He at once led on his men, stormed the fort, took possession of the town, and compelled the British to leave the harbor.

18. Soon after this, Gen. Jackson received news that a powerful fleet had left the West Indies, with the design of

17. What vessels arrived on the coast of Florida? Under what government was Florida at that time? *Ans.* It was under the government of Spain. What did these vessels bring? What did General Jackson do? Did the Spanish governor do right in permitting the British to furnish the Indians with arms? Why did General Jackson take Pensacola?

18. What force was sent against New Orleans? What did General Jackson now do? How did he fortify the city?

dred thousand dollars. On the 8th of August, while a British fleet was lying off the coast of New London, a brig of 18 guns was sent to bombard the village of Stonington. The people were wholly unprepared for the attack. At length two 18-pounders were found, and with these, so active and well-directed a fire was kept up on the brig, that she was greatly damaged, and compelled to cut her cables, and retire, with many killed and wounded.

* Florida, at that time, was a Spanish province. In 1819, it was ceded by Spain to the United States, and in 1822 it was erected into a territorial government.

attacking New Orleans. He immediately hastened to that city, which he found in a state of confusion and alarm. He at once made every preparation for a desperate defense. His presence inspired the citizens with hope and courage, and they were ready to second every effort of a man so justly celebrated in war for activity, prudence, and good fortune. He led them forth in person, and strongly fortified every point which a vigorous foe would be likely to assail. A long extent of breast-work, constructed of cotton bales and other impenetrable materials, was soon completed, and cannon mounted so as to sweep the whole line.

19. A small squadron of gun-boats, under Lieutenant Jones, was stationed to oppose the entrance of the enemy into Lake Borgne. After a bloody conflict this force was overpowered, and the British army advanced and took post within nine miles of the city. General Jackson, wishing to cut off all intercourse with the enemy, and knowing that a great part of the citizens were foreigners, and little attached to our institutions, placed the city under martial law. On the 23d of December, the Americans sallied forth, and made a furious assault upon the camp of the enemy, and after a severe contest retired to their intrenchments, 4 miles below the city.

20. On the 8th of January, 1815, Packenham, the British general, with an army of more than 12,000 men, commenced a determined assault upon the American lines on both sides of the river Mississippi. By this time the militia from the back country, and volunteers from Kentucky and Tennessee, most of whom were experienced riflemen, had arrived in considerable numbers, and placed themselves under General Jackson.

21. The British forces advanced in two columns with the most determined bravery. When they had approached within sixty rods of the breast-works, the whole artillery

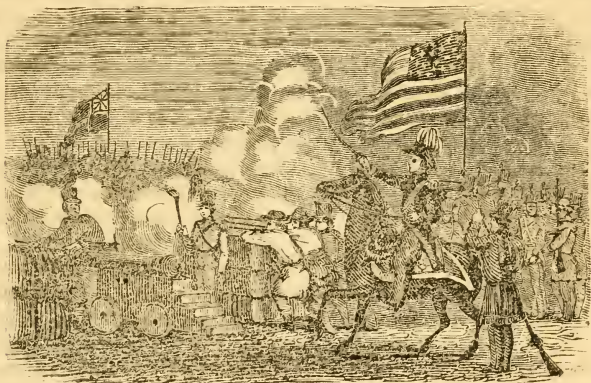
19. Why did General Jackson put the city under martial law? What took place on the 23d of December?

20. What on the 8th of January? Who arrived and placed themselves under General Jackson?

21. How did the British advance? What reception did they meet with?

opened upon them a most deadly fire. Forty pieces of cannon, deeply charged with grape-shot and musket-balls, mowed them down by hundreds. The rear ranks marching over the dead, advanced only to meet the same fate. When they came within musket-shot, a sheet of flame, like a flash of light, burst from the American lines. Ranks were cut down, whole columns swept away, and the plain soon covered with the dead and dying.

22. General Packenham was killed as he was leading on his troops to the charge. General Gibbs fell soon after, and General Keene was borne from the field severely wounded. No troops could withstand the fire of the Ameri-



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

cans. It was one continued stream pouring on the enemy an unceasing tide of death. The battle continued for one hour and a quarter with undiminished fury. But the British having lost all their principal officers, now fled in confusion, leaving more than 2,000 dead or wounded on the field. Of

22. What officers were killed? How long did the battle continue? The result? How many of the enemy were killed and wounded? How many Americans?

the Americans, only six men were killed, and seven wounded.

23. On the other side of the river the enemy were more successful. The batteries were carried by storm, and 48 of the Americans killed, and 178 wounded. But disheartened by the loss of the day, the British relinquished their design, and soon after retreated to their shipping. News of this brave defense spread rapidly through the country, and in the midst of their joy, congress received intelligence that a treaty of peace had been concluded. Commissioners of the United States had met the agents of Great Britain, and signed the treaty at Ghent, on the 25th of December, 1814. It was received in the United States, February 11, 1815, and ratified by the president and senate on the 17th of the same month.

24. Thus closed an eventful war of three years. The forbearance of the United States under the unjust and oppressive measures of Great Britain, had long been a matter of reproach in the eyes of all Europe, and the character of the American people was fast sinking into contempt. But when they saw the proud and triumphant navy of England successfully assailed by that of the United States, and her best frigates compelled to strike to an inferior force,—when they saw thousands of British merchantmen captured by our enterprising seamen, they began to look upon us with admiration and applause.

25. Unhappily, during the war a violent party spirit had prevailed, which greatly divided the strength of the nation. The federalists, generally, had been opposed to the war from the beginning; and their opposition, instead of diminishing, continued to increase. In the eastern states, where a majority of the people belonged to that party, complaints were made against the general government,—that

23. When was peace concluded? When did the news of it arrive in the United States? When was it ratified by the president and senate? The commissioners from the United States, that formed the treaty, were John Quincy Adams, Albert Gallatin, James A. Bayard, Henry Clay, and Jonathan Russel.

24. How long had the war continued? How were we looked upon by the nations of Europe at the close of the war?

it did not afford them proper protection,—that their peculiar interests, commerce and the fisheries, were disregarded, that the war was badly managed,—and it was proposed that the militia and the revenue of these states should be retained at home and employed for their own defense and protection. In October, 1814, the legislature of Massachusetts recommended that a convention from the eastern states be held at some convenient place, to inquire what ought to be done.

26. This convention met at Hartford, December 15th. It consisted of delegates appointed by the legislatures of Massachusetts, Connecticut and Rhode Island,—and two from New Hampshire and one from Vermont, appointed by county meetings. The sittings were secret. They remained in session about three weeks, and after adjourning, published an address, charging the general government with pursuing a system of measures unfriendly to the interests of the eastern states, and recommending amendments to the federal constitution. A committee was dispatched to Washington to confer with the national government; but before it reached there, the news of peace arrived, which arrested all further proceedings.

27. A great difference of opinion has existed, with regard to the motives of the members of this convention; but though their designs may have been perfectly pure and patriotic, their meeting in convention under circumstances of so much difficulty and excitement, has been generally regarded as a measure highly impolitic and unwise; and with many, to this day, "The Hartford Convention" is but a title of contempt. Although numerous evils attended the prosecution of the war, the final result of taking up arms, was in the highest degree beneficial to the nation. Since the close of this war, the United States have enjoyed a de-

26. When did the "Hartford Convention" meet? How many states sent delegates? Did this state send any? Why were their sittings, or deliberations, conducted with closed doors, or in secret? How long were they in session?

27. What was the final result of our taking up arms? What has been the condition of the United States since the close of the war?

gree of national prosperity unequalled in the history of the world.

28. Immediately after peace was established, congress reduced the army to the number of 10,000 men, and adopted other measures suited to the new state of the country. A number of our ships were still at sea, and before the news of peace reached them, several honorable victories were gained. The Constitution, after a severe battle with two British vessels, the *Cyane* and *Levant*, whose united forces were superior to hers, captured them both. Shortly after, in the month of March, the British brig *Penguin* was taken by the *Hornet*, although of superior force.

29. At this time, the Algerines were again committing depredations upon American commerce. To check their aggressions, Commodore Decatur was sent with a fleet of nine vessels into the Mediterranean. After capturing two of their armed vessels, he arrived off the harbor of Algiers. The Dey, or king, terrified at the danger of losing his scattered navy, was obliged to submit to any terms which the Americans should propose. Decatur demanded the immediate release of all American captives, and sixty thousand dollars, as a compensation for our ships which had been plundered, and that in future, no tribute should be required from the government of the United States. These terms were at once accepted, and peace was concluded.

30. In 1816, an act was passed establishing a bank of the United States, for twenty years, with a capital of 35,000,000 dollars, upon principles similar to those contained in the charter of the old bank. During the same year, Indiana was admitted into the Union. The earliest settlement in this state, was made by the French in 1694, at

28. To what number did congress reduce the army in 1815? *Ans.* In 1821, it reduced it to 6,000 men. What naval engagements took place after peace was concluded?

29. Who was sent against the Algerines? Where is Algiers? How far do you suppose Algiers is from us? In 1830 the French took Algiers, and still retain possession of it. What was the result of Decatur's expedition?

30. When was the United States Bank chartered? For what length of time was it chartered? *Ans.* For twenty years, or until the 3d of March, 1836. When was Indiana admitted into the Union? Who succeeded Mr. Madison in the presidency?

Vincennes. It formed a part of the "Territory northwest of the Ohio" until 1801, when it was erected into a territorial government. At the next presidential election, in 1817, James Monroe succeeded Mr. Madison in the presidency. Daniel D. Tompkins was elected vice-president.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. On the 4th of March, 1817, Mr. Monroe took the usual oath of office, and entered upon the duties of the presidency. During the summer after his inauguration, he made a tour through the northern and eastern states, for the purpose of giving directions respecting certain works of public interest, the fortification of the sea-coast, the increase of the navy, &c., which were under his superintendence. He was received with every demonstration of affection and respect. At the next session of congress, honorable provision was made, by government, for the comfortable support of all officers and soldiers of the revolution, whose circumstances were such as to need assistance.

2. The general peace which now prevailed throughout Europe cut off many sources of profitable trade to American commerce. Our manufacturers also found it difficult to compete with the old establishments of foreign countries. In this state of affairs, thousands who had become acquainted with the fertile lands of the west, emigrated to that region. People from the eastern and middle states, and from foreign countries, began to pour into the western country in vast numbers; and new states were added to the Union in rapid succession.

3. Mississippi was admitted in 1817. The first settlement in this state was made by the French, at Natchez, in 1716. In December, 1818, Illinois was acknowledged as a

1. When was Mr. Monroe inaugurated? What did he do shortly after this? For what class of persons did congress make provision? To what amount?
Ans. Twenty dollars a month to officers, and twelve to privates.

2. What causes tended to produce emigration?

3. When was Mississippi admitted into the Union?

sovereign state, and admitted as a member of the Union. It was first settled by the French, at Kaskaskia, in 1686. It remained as a part of Indiana till 1809, when a separate territorial government was established over it. Since it became an independent state, its population has increased with astonishing rapidity.

4. The year 1818 was distinguished for the famous *Seminole war*. The Seminoles were a tribe of Indians inhabiting the northern part of Florida. For several years, disaffected Indians from neighboring tribes, negroes, and other desperate characters, had made Florida a place of refuge. At length, great outrages were committed on the frontiers of Georgia and Alabama. The savages, influenced by motives of revenge and plunder, took up arms against the whites. General Gaines was first sent against them; but his force being insufficient, in December, General Jackson, with a body of brave volunteers from Tennessee, marched into their territory, and in several skirmishes defeated and dispersed them.

5. Convinced that the Spaniards were active in exciting the Indians to hostilities, and in furnishing them with supplies, and satisfied that the only successful method of putting an end to the war, would be to enter Florida, he marched thither, and took possession of St. Mark's, and soon after of Pensacola. Two Englishmen, by the names of Ambrister and Arbuthnot, were taken prisoners, tried before a court-martial "for exciting and aiding the Indians to make war against the United States," &c. They were found guilty of the charges, and were sentenced and executed. Having routed the Indians in several battles, and put an effectual check to their hostilities, General Jackson declared the war at an end, and returned to his residence in Tennessee.*

4. Give an account of the Seminole war. What is the meaning of the word *Seminole*? *Ans. Wild.* It is applied by the Creek Indians to all vagabonds of that nation.

5 What persons were tried and executed?

* The measures of General Jackson in the prosecution of the Seminole war, were severely censured at the time, by a portion of the American people. During the session of congress, in the winter of 1818-19, the subject was extensively debated;

6. A treaty of commerce was concluded with the British government in 1819, by which the citizens of the United States were allowed to fish on the banks of Newfoundland in common with the subjects of Great Britain. By the same treaty, the northern boundary of the United States, from the Lake of the Woods to the Rocky Mountains, was established. During the same year, Alabama was admitted into the Union. Formerly Alabama was claimed by Georgia. In 1800, the country between the Chatahoochee and Mississippi rivers, was erected into the Mississippi territory. In 1817, the western part of this became the state of Mississippi, as previously mentioned, and the eastern part, the territory of Alabama. The first settlement was made in 1703, at Mobile. Since that time the population has increased with wonderful rapidity; and from the fertility of its soil, and the value of its productions, it has become an important member of the Union.

7. In 1820, Maine, which had hitherto been connected with Massachusetts, became an independent state, and joined the Union. The next year, Missouri was admitted. On its admission, congress, and the whole country, became highly excited on the question, whether she should be admitted as a slave state. After a warm and protracted debate, it was finally settled that slavery should be allowed in Missouri, but should be entirely excluded from all the other territory of the United States, north and west of Arkansas, or north of the parallel $36^{\circ} 30'$, north latitude.

8. In 1821, Florida,* which had been hitherto under the dominion of Spain, was ceded by treaty to the United States, with all the islands adjacent, in compensation for

6. What treaty was concluded in 1819? What boundary was established by this treaty? When was Alabama admitted into the Union?

7. When did Maine join the Union? When was Missouri admitted? What question produced great excitement? How was it finally settled?

8. When was Florida granted to the United States? Why?

but his conduct met the approbation of the president, and of a large majority of the representatives of the nation.

For a long time after the discovery of Florida, by Ponce de Leon, the whole Atlantic coast of North America was known in Spanish works by the general name of FLORIDA. At a later period, it extended west to the Mississippi, and was divided into East and West Florida. With many vicissitudes of fortune, it remained in the hands of the Spaniards till 1763, when it was ceded to the British

the spoliations committed upon our commerce by Spanish vessels during the wars of Europe. To satisfy the claims of the merchants who had suffered by these spoliations, the general government appropriated the sum of five million dollars. Florida had long been the hiding-place of hostile Indians, pirates, runaway slaves, and other desperadoes, who lived by plunder and violence—in a word, it had become the theatre of every species of lawless adventure. A vigorous government was now established over the territory, under the direction of General Jackson.

9. In 1824, GENERAL LAFAYETTE arrived at New York. This event produced great joy throughout the nation. This distinguished personage had devoted a long life and an ample fortune to the cause of liberty. He had been the bosom friend of Washington, and a most faithful soldier in the war of the revolution; and now, in his old age, he had crossed the ocean, to visit once more the field of his youthful toils and sufferings. As he passed through the several states, he was every where received with the warmest enthusiasm, and with the highest demonstrations of affection and gratitude. He left the country about a year after his arrival. As a token of their gratitude, and as a partial compensation for his services to the country, congress voted him the sum of two hundred thousand dollars in money, and a township of land in the territory of Florida.

10. Mr. Monroe continued in the presidency till 1825, when four candidates for that office were brought forward, and a warm contest ensued. General Jackson, Mr. Crawford, Mr. Adams,* and Mr. Clay, each had their supporters.

9. What took place in 1824? What can you say of Lafayette? What were voted him by congress?

10. Who were the candidates for the presidency at the next election? What was the result?

government. In 1783, it was ceded back by Great Britain to Spain. On the 22d of February, 1819, a treaty was concluded at Washington, by which East and West Florida was ceded by Spain to the United States. This treaty, after much delay, was ratified by Spain, October, 1820; by the United States, February, 1821; and in July of the same year, possession was formally given to General Jackson, as commissioner of the United States and governor of the whole territory. In March, 1822, Florida was erected into a territorial government, and in 1845, admitted into the Union as an independent state.

* John Quincy Adams was born at Quincy, Massachusetts, in 1767. His life was passed almost exclusively in the public service. In 1825, he was elected president

General Jackson had the highest number of votes; but as he had not a majority of the whole, the choice was decided, according to the constitution, by the members of congress. As Mr. Clay had the least number of votes, his friends united with those of Mr. Adams, who was finally elected president. John C. Calhoun was elected vice-president.

J. Q. ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.

1. Mr. Adams took the oath prescribed by the constitution, and entered upon the duties of his office on the 4th of March, 1825. Henry Clay, of Kentucky, was appointed secretary of state; Richard Rush, of Pennsylvania, secretary of the treasury; and James Barbour, of Virginia, secretary of war.

2. In 1825, a spirit of speculation prevailed extensively throughout this country, and also in Europe; during which time, cotton, and other articles, were bought and sold for more than twice their ordinary value. After the rage subsided, thousands, both here and in other countries, who held stocks at the advanced prices, were thrown into embarrassment and ruin. The distress in England was so great, as very sensibly to check the operations of business in the United States.

3. The 4th of July, 1826, was joyfully celebrated throughout the country, as the fiftieth anniversary of American Independence. It is remarkable that, on this very day, occurred the death of the two venerable ex-presidents, JEFFERSON and ADAMS, whose wise counsels had, in no small degree, contributed to the independence and prosperity of their country. Few events of great national in-

-
1. Who were appointed secretaries under this administration?
 2. What prevailed in 1825?
 3. What was celebrated in 1826?

of the United States, and held the office for one term of four years. He still continued to take an active part in public affairs, and was soon after chosen to represent his native district in congress. He was continued in that office until his death in the capitol at Washington, February 23d, 1848.

terest occurred during Mr. Adams' administration. The spirit of internal improvement which has characterized the nation since that time, began to be manifested in different parts of the country. Peace and prosperity every where prevailed.

4. During the four years of Mr. Adams' service, a warm contest was maintained between his friends and those of General Jackson. For some time, both parties were confident of success. But, at the next election, the result of the contest proved to be greatly in favor of General Jackson, who was elected president by a large majority. John C. Calhoun was re-elected vice-president.

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. On the 4th of March, 1829, General Jackson took the oath of office, and entered upon his duties as president of the United States. At this time, the affairs of the nation were in a high degree prosperous. At peace with all the world, the country was enjoying every facility for advancing to affluence and power. Business of all kinds was vigorously and profitably carried on, and thousands were gathering a rich harvest of wealth.

2. During the session of 1831-32, a bill was brought forward in congress for re-chartering the United States Bank. Great interest was manifested in all parts of the country, on the subject of this bill. After a very warm and protracted debate in both houses of congress, it was passed by a small majority, but was vetoed by the president; and, as there were not two-thirds of congress in favor of its passage, the bill was lost.

4. Between whom was a contest maintained during this administration? How did it result? *Ans.* In the electoral colleges, General Jackson had 178 votes, and Mr. Adams 83.

1. What took place on the 4th of March, 1829? What is said of the affairs of the nation at that time?

2. When was the bill for re-chartering the United States Bank brought forward? What was the result? When did the old charter expire? *Ans.* In 1836. What is meant by *vetoing* a bill? Can a bill be passed into a law after it has been vetoed by the president?

3. In the spring of 1832, the Winnebagoes, and other Indian tribes on our northwestern frontier, commenced a war upon the neighboring inhabitants. General Scott, with a strong force, proceeded against them, and on the 27th of August captured the famous Indian chief, *Black Hawk*, and soon put an end to the war. Black Hawk, and several other Indians, were conducted to Washington, and through the country, for the purpose of giving them some idea of the extent and power of the United States, and to show them the folly of making war against the whites. After this, they were permitted to return to their tribes.

4. In 1832, congress passed a new *tariff* bill. The country had been agitated for several years with the subject of the tariff laws ; and, at length, the excitement became so great at the south, that an "ordinance" was published by a convention in South Carolina, *nullifying*, or forbidding the operation of the tariff laws of the general government in that state. This act called forth a proclamation from President Jackson, in which he clearly showed the supremacy of the laws of congress, and expressed his determination to enforce them. The sentiments of the proclamation met with a cordial response from every friend of the Union, and all united in support of the president. The laws regulating the tariff were soon after modified, and South Carolina made no further opposition.

5. In June of the same year, the CHOLERA broke out in New York. This scourge of Asia and Europe, which had swept away fifty millions of the human race in the course

3. Who commenced a war upon our northwestern frontiers ? Who proceeded against them ? Whom did he capture ? Where were Black Hawk and other Indians conducted ? For what purpose ?

4. What bill was passed in 1832 ? What is meant by tariff laws ? *Ans.* The laws which regulate the duties on foreign manufactures. As the price of labor in Europe is much less than it is in America, cloth, and other articles, can be made there and sold in this country much cheaper than we can afford to make them. If a yard of cloth, made in England, can be afforded for three dollars without duty, when a yard of the same quality can not be made here for less than five dollars, the tariff law imposes a duty or tax upon every yard of such cloth imported. The object of this is to enable our manufacturers to compete with those of other countries, by making the price of foreign manufactures higher than that of domestic, or those made in the United States ?

5. What is said of the cholera ? How many died in New York ?

of a few years, first appeared, on this side of the Atlantic, in Canada. It was imported from some of the cities in Europe, where it was then raging. A universal panic prevailed on its first appearance; and the inhabitants of our large cities were seen fleeing into the country in all directions, to avoid this "fell destroyer." In New York, three thousand people died of this horrible disease in the course of a few weeks. The malady spread in all directions, but proved most destructive in the southern and western states.

6. The candidates for the presidency, supported at the next election, were General Jackson, Henry Clay, and Wm. Wirt. Jackson was re-elected by an increased majority, and entered upon his second term of service on the 4th of March, 1833. Martin Van Buren was elected vice-president. On the 6th of June, 1833, the president started from Washington, accompanied by most of his cabinet, to visit the northern and eastern portion of the Union. He proceeded as far as Concord, New Hampshire. Throughout the whole route, at every town, village, and city, he was welcomed with lively demonstrations of respect, by citizens of all parties, who seemed to vie with each other in rendering honor to the chief magistrate of a free and enlightened people. Much excitement was created in the autumn of this year, by the removal of "the deposits," or government funds, from the Bank of the United States to the state banks. This measure was severely censured at the time, by the opponents of the administration; and the next session of congress was chiefly occupied with discussions connected with the "Bank question." The president was sustained in his course by the house of representatives, and subsequently by a large majority of the American people.

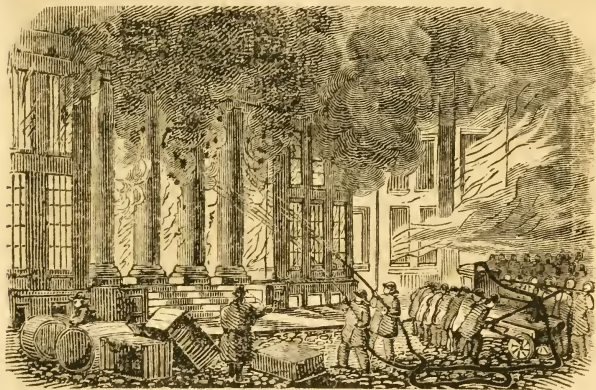
7. In 1835, serious apprehensions were felt throughout the country, of a war between the United States and France. For many years our government had urged its claims upon France for spoils upon American commerce committed

6. Who were candidates for the presidency at the next election? General Jackson had 219 votes; Henry Clay, 49; John Floyd, 11; and William Wirt, 11.

7. What claims had our government upon France at this time?

by that nation during the wars of Napoleon. These claims, to the amount of 25,000,000 francs, had been acknowledged by the French government, and stipulations made for a settlement. But for various reasons the payment was put off from time to time, till the president, considering the honor of the nation at stake, proposed certain measures, which, it was feared, would involve the two nations in war. But fortunately the amount was paid in 1836, and all differences amicably settled.

8. The most destructive fire ever known in the United States, occurred in New York, on the 16th of December, 1835. In the evening, about nine o'clock, the fire broke out in the richest part of the city, and extended in all directions



GREAT FIRE IN NEW YORK.

till it had reduced to ashes several hundred of the finest stores in the world. The night was exceedingly cold, and the wind high. The flames towering up in lofty pyramids from the wide-spread conflagration, rendered the scene awfully sublime. The number of buildings destroyed,

8. What occurred in New York in 1835? How many buildings burned? How much property destroyed?

besides the Merchants' Exchange, was over 500, and the loss of property in buildings and goods was estimated at more than *seventeen millions* of dollars.

9. During the winter of 1835, the Seminole Indians of Florida, who had agreed by treaty to remove west of the Mississippi,* to a territory set apart for them by our government, called the Indian Territory, became dissatisfied, and refused to leave. Influenced by motives of revenge, and love of country, they opened a most cruel and desperate



DEATH OF MAJOR DADE.

warfare upon the whites. Troops were immediately marched into Florida, but found the utmost difficulty and danger in

9. What war broke out in 1835? What was the fate of Major Dade and his company?

* In 1833, the government of the United States set apart an extensive region west of Arkansas and Missouri, for the residence of those Indians who should emigrate from the states east of the Mississippi. It was believed that this would conduce to their welfare and preservation, as they would be beyond and removed from the settlement of the whites, and separated from all state authority. It is called the "Indian Territory," and is noted for its mild climate, numerous rivers, extensive forests, and abundance of game. Since that time, the Cherokees, Chickasaws, Choctaws, Creeks, Seminoles, Senecas, Shawnees, and many others have removed thither, and under the instruction of missionaries have made considerable advances toward civilization.—*See map of the United States.*

penetrating the swamps and forests in which the savages had taken refuge. On the morning of the 28th of December, as Major Dade with a brave band of soldiers was marching through a wood thick-set with long grass and underbush, to the relief of General Clinch, who was besieged by the savages in Fort Drane, his whole company, consisting of 110 men, was suddenly surprised with a deadly fire from the surrounding thicket, and all killed, excepting four, who escaped.

10. On the 29th of February, 1836, General Gaines with a force of about 1,200 men, fell in with the main body of the Seminoles, about 1,500 in number. An assault was made by the Indians, but nothing decisive resulted. General Gaines intrenched his army, and was immediately besieged by the enemy. In this situation his men were reduced to a state of starvation, and would probably have perished, had not General Clinch arrived soon after with reinforcements. The Creeks, a neighboring tribe, early in the season joined with the Seminoles, and began their hostilities by butchering fifty families. Murders and devastations were frequent. But by vigorous exertions on the part of our government, they were finally subdued, and the principal part removed to the Indian Territory, west of the Mississippi. On the 11th of July, 1836, "The Specie Circular" was issued by the treasury department, requiring the payment of gold and silver for public lands.

11. During the year 1835, the national debt was extinguished; and, from the rapid sale of public lands, and from the flourishing state of the nation, a balance of several millions of surplus revenue was, at the beginning of 1836, remaining in the treasury. Soon after, "The Distribution Act" was passed, providing that the money remaining in the treasury on the 1st of January, 1837, should be distributed among the several states in proportion to the population of

10. When did General Gaines meet the enemy? Who came to his relief? What was the result of the war? The entire removal of the Indians was not effected until 1840. What was issued July 11th? The object of the Specie Circular was to prevent speculation in the public lands.

11. When was the national debt extinguished, or paid off? What was done with the surplus revenue? How much was distributed? How much

each.* During the session, Arkansas and Michigan were admitted into the Union as independent states, and Wisconsin was erected into a territorial government. At the election in 1836, Martin Van Buren was chosen president, and Richard M. Johnson, vice-president. After witnessing the inauguration of his successor, on the 4th of March, 1837, General Jackson retired to his private residence at the Hermitage, in Tennessee.

MARTIN VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. Mr. Van Buren was inaugurated and entered on the duties of his office, March 4th, 1837. As was anticipated,

did this state receive? Did this state divide the money it received among the several towns? If so, what is it called? *Ans.* The Town Deposit Fund. What states were admitted into the Union? What territory erected? When did General Jackson's term of office expire? What was the result of the presidential election in 1836? *Ans.* Martin Van Buren had 170 votes; William Henry Harrison, 73; Hugh L. White, 26; Daniel Webster, 14; William P. Magnum, 11. Why did the opposition support so many candidates? *Ans.* To prevent a choice by the people, and thus throw the election into the House of Representatives.

1. When was Mr. Van Buren inaugurated?

* Apportionment of the Surplus Revenue of the United States, remaining in the Treasury, January 1st, 1837, (reserving \$5,000,000, to meet the expenses of the government,) among the several States, agreeably to the number of electoral votes for President, according to the Act of Congress, of June 23d, 1836:—the deposits to be made in four equal parts, on the 1st of January, 1st of April, 1st of July, and 1st of October, 1837.

States.	Electoral Votes.	Amount to be deposited.	States.	Electoral Votes.	Amount to be deposited.
Maine, . . .	10	\$1,274,451.02	Georgia, . .	11	\$1,401,896.12
New Hampshire, .	7	892,115.71	Alabama, . .	7	892,115.71
Massachusetts, .	4	1,784,331.43	Mississippi, .	4	509,780.41
Rhode Island, .	14	509,780.41	Louisiana, .	5	637,225.51
Vermont, . . .	7	892,115.71	Missouri, . .	4	509,780.43
Connecticut, . .	8	1,109,560.81	Kentucky, . .	15	1,911,676.53
New York, . . .	42	5,352,694.28	Tennessee, .	15	1,911,676.53
New Jersey, . .	8	1,019,560.81	Ohio, . . .	21	2,676,347.14
Pennsylvania, .	30	3,823,353.06	Indiana, . .	9	1,147,005.92
Delaware, . . .	3	382,335.31	Illinois, . .	5	637,225.51
Maryland, . . .	10	1,274,451.02	Arkansas, . .	3	382,335.31
Virginia, . . .	23	2,931,237.34	Michigan, . .	3	382,335.31
North Carolina, .	15	1,911,676.53			
South Carolina, .	11	1,401,896.12			
			Total,	294	\$37,468,859.97

no change was made in the general policy of the government; and it was soon evident that the measures of the new president would be but a continuation of those of his predecessor.

2. Hardly had the new administration come into power, before the "great money pressure" commenced, producing a state of embarrassment and distress unparalleled in the history of our country. This was caused by overaction in business, speculation, and extravagance. For several years, the facilities for borrowing on credit had greatly increased; especially after the removal of the "Deposites" from the Bank of the United States to the state banks, in 1833. Abandoning the old roads of honest industry, multitudes sought to make their fortunes in an hour by speculation. Cities were planned in the wilderness,—villages laid out in marshes,—building lots were sold at enormous prices,—and the wildest schemes devised for the acquisition of wealth. But this unnatural state of things could not continue; it reached its crisis in April, 1837.

3. Thousands, having contracted large debts, which they were unable to pay, were obliged to fail; and suspensions and failures in business became of daily, almost of hourly occurrence. In a short time, the failures in New York alone, amounted to more than one hundred million of dollars. At length, all confidence was lost. No one dared trust his neighbor, and a general panic pervaded the whole community. On the 10th of May, every bank in New York suspended specie payments, and this was soon followed by a similar suspension on the part of the banks throughout the whole country.

4. As the public moneys were deposited in banks that refused to redeem their bills in specie, the government itself was embarrassed and unable to discharge its own obliga-

2. What happened at the very commencement of his administration? What caused the "great money pressure"? What did multitudes seek to do? How should men seek to make their fortunes?

3. What did the failures in New York amount to? When did the banks suspend specie payments, or refuse to redeem their bills in specie?

4. As the public moneys, or funds of the general government, were deposited in banks, what was the consequence? What bill did Mr. Van Buren wish to

tions. An extra session of congress was convened on the 4th of September, and several bills passed for the relief of the government. The most important was one for the issue of treasury notes, to the amount of ten millions of dollars. The prominent measure of the session, was "The Sub-Treasury," or "Independent Treasury Bill." The object of this bill was to provide for the collection, safe keeping, transfer, and disbursement of the public funds, without any connection with, or dependence on banks. This passed the senate; but after a long and animated discussion in the house of representatives, it was laid on the table. On the 16th of October, the session closed without carrying out either the wishes of the government or people.

5. The war with the Seminole Indians in Florida, still continued. After several encounters, a number of chiefs came, on the 6th of March, to the camp of General Jessup, and signed a treaty for the immediate cessation of hostilities, and for the removal of all the Seminoles to the "Indian Territory." The war was now supposed to be at an end, but by the influence of Osceola, a noted chief, this treaty was disregarded, and the Indians again commenced their work of slaughter and devastation. In October, Osceola and several other chiefs, with about seventy warriors, came to the American camp, under a flag of truce, and were taken prisoners by order of General Jessup. This act was condemned by some, but justified by most, from the fact that Osceola was treacherous, and that no treaties could bind him. The war was finally brought to a close in 1840, when the Indians were removed west of the Mississippi.

6. During the year, serious disturbances took place in Canada, between the inhabitants and colonial government.

have passed? What was the object of "The Sub-Treasury Bill"? Did congress pass the bill? When did the extra session commence? When did it close?

5. What war still continued? When and by whom was a treaty signed? By whose influence was the treaty broken? Did Gen. Jessup do right in taking Osceola prisoner? Osceola was subsequently confined in Fort Moultrie, in South Carolina, where he died of a fever the next January. When was the Seminole war terminated?

6. What happened in Canada in 1837? To what government does Canada

Many of our citizens on the frontier, regarding their cause as that of liberty and human rights, and having taken part in it, the president, on the 5th of January, issued a proclamation, forbidding an interference in the war, and enjoining a strict neutrality. About that time, an incident occurred that excited a deep interest throughout the United States. A party of about 500 Canadians and Americans, had made a rendezvous on May Island, in Niagara river, opposite to which, on the American side, was a small village called Fort Schlosser. The Caroline, a small steamboat, was used to ply between the island and village. Colonel McNab, the commander of the Canadian militia, suspecting the boat was used for carrying supplies to the patriots on the island, resolved to destroy her. For this purpose, with 150 men, he crossed over one night from the Canada side, to Schlosser, seized the boat, drove the crew ashore, set her on fire, and let her drift over the Falls of Niagara. During the affair, an American by the name of Durfee was killed. Difficulties continued, and parties secretly crossed the lines until near the end of the year, when the president issued a new proclamation, calling on our citizens in Canada to abandon their designs, declaring the protection of our country forfeited by those who invaded the British possessions with hostile intentions. This had the desired effect.

7. On the 13th of August, 1838, the banks, by previous concert, throughout the United States, generally resumed specie payments. This event was welcomed by the whole country. Credit soon began to revive,—confidence was restored,—and business again resumed its former channels. On the 18th of August, "The Exploring Expedition," under Charles Wilkes, Esq., consisting of the Vincennes, a sloop of war of 20 guns, the Peacock, of 18 guns, the Porpoise, of 10 guns, and three smaller vessels, having on board a number of distinguished and learned men in the various departments of natural science, sailed from Hampton Roads

belong? *Ans.* To the British government. Did our citizens take any part in the Canadian rebellion? What took place at Fort Schlosser?

7. What event, important to the business of the country, took place August 13th, 1838? What was the effect of the resumption of specie payments?

for the southern ocean. After an absence of nearly four years, it returned in June, 1842, having circumnavigated the globe, discovered the coasts of an Antarctic continent, and visited many other parts, before nearly unknown. It brought home a valuable collection of plants, and fully accomplished the object for which it was designed.

8. A disagreement had long existed between the United States and Great Britain in regard to the boundary between Maine and New Brunswick. In several instances the border settlements were claimed by both nations, and frequently serious tumults ensued. In 1840, congress appropriated \$25,000 toward the expenses of surveying the disputed territory, for the purpose of obtaining correct information in regard to its topographical features and physical character. Happily, in 1842, the difficulty was terminated by a treaty, by which the boundary question was settled, in a manner satisfactory to both governments.

9. During the session of 1840, the Sub-Treasury Bill, the great financial measure of Mr. Van Buren's administration, passed both houses of congress, and became a law. The presidential election of that year was the most exciting and arduous that had ever occurred in the United States. It resulted in the election of General William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, for president, and John Tyler, of Virginia, for vice-president, by a large majority. On the 3d of March, 1841, Mr. Van Buren's* administration terminated, and he soon after retired to his private residence at Kinderhook, New York.

What important expedition was fitted out? When did it sail? When did it return?

8. What disagreement existed between the United States and Great Britain? When was "The northeast boundary question" settled?

9. When was the "Sub-Treasury Bill" passed? Is that bill in force now? What was the result of the presidential election? *Ans.* For president, Gen. Harrison had 234 votes, and Mr. Van Buren, 60. When did Mr. Van Buren's administration close?

* Martin Van Buren was born at Kinderhook, New York, December 5th, 1782. His parents were of Dutch descent, and in humble circumstances. He received his education at the academy in his native village, and at the age of fourteen, commenced the study of law. In 1803, he commenced the practice of law in his native village, and by the acuteness of his mind, soon enjoyed the reputation of being one of the first

HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. General Harrison* was inaugurated president of the United States, on the 4th of March, 1841. The ceremony took place in the presence of a large assemblage of people, gathered from all quarters of the country. His inaugural address was a plain, clear, and comprehensive document, highly acceptable to the party which had elected him.

2. In consequence of the financial condition of the country, on the 17th of March, the president issued a proclamation, calling an extra session of congress on the 31st of May following. Great and radical changes were now confidently expected in the measures of the administration. But Gen. Harrison was never destined to have an opportunity of realizing his system of policy. On the 4th of April, just one month after his inauguration, he expired, surrounded by his cabinet and nearest friends. His last words were, "Sir, I wish you to understand the principles of the government. I wish them carried out,—I ask nothing more." His death, so sudden, so unexpected, produced the deepest sensation throughout the country. Party feeling was laid aside, and all classes united in paying honors to the remains of one, elevated to the first office in the gift of a free and enlightened people. By a provision of the constitution, Mr. Tyler now became president of the United States.

1. When was Gen. Harrison inaugurated?

2. When did he call an extra session of congress? When did he die? Who became president in consequence of his death?

lawyers in the state. In 1812, he was elected state senator, and in 1815, appointed attorney-general of the state. In 1821, he was elected to the senate of the United States, where he distinguished himself as an eloquent speaker and skillful statesman. In 1823, he was chosen governor of New York. In 1829, he resigned this office, to fill the post of secretary of state in Gen. Jackson's cabinet. In 1831, he was sent as minister to England. In 1833, he was elected vice-president, and in 1837, president of the United States. He discharged the duties of every office which he held with ability, and his success and elevation are to be ascribed to his own talents, industry, and perseverance.

* William Henry Harrison was born at Berkley, Virginia, in 1773. In 1801, he was appointed governor of Indiana Territory. In 1824, he was elected to the senate of the United States. In 1828, he was appointed minister to Colombia. On his return, he retired to North Bend on the Ohio, where he remained, engaged in agricultural pursuits, until his election to the presidency in 1840.

TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. Mr. Tyler* took the usual oath and entered on the duties of his office, as president of the United States, April 5th, 1841. The cabinet was retained, and it was generally supposed he would carry out the measures recommended by his predecessor.

2. On the 31st of May, the extra session of congress, called by General Harrison, commenced, and continued to the 13th of September. Several important measures of exciting interest were brought forward. The sub-treasury bill was repealed, and after a lengthy discussion, a general Bankrupt Law was passed. Two separate bills, chartering a new bank of the United States, passed both houses of congress; but both were vetoed by the president. As this was one of the favorite measures of the whig party, the conduct of the executive caused him to be denounced by them, in no measured terms.

3. In 1842, domestic difficulties commenced in Rhode Island, which at one time threatened serious consequences. For a long time a desire had existed to set aside the ancient English Charter of the state, and adopt a new constitution. Two parties were formed with reference to the proper mode of accomplishing this object. The "Suffrage Party," believing that the people possess all political power, and have a right in their sovereign capacity, to alter, modify, and establish their fundamental laws, formed and adopted a con-

1. When was Mr. Tyler inaugurated?

2. When did the extra congress commence? When did it close? What was done at that session of congress? What bills did the president veto? Were the whig party pleased with his conduct?

3. What took place in Rhode Island in 1842? Into what two parties were the people divided? Which party was right?

* John Tyler was born in Charles City, Virginia, in 1789. He graduated at William and Mary's college, and subsequently pursued the study of law. At the age of twenty-one, he was chosen member of the state legislature. He was a representative in congress from 1816 to 1821, and distinguished himself as a bold and fluent debater. In 1825, he was elected governor of Virginia, and in 1827, to the senate of the United States. In 1840, he was chosen vice-president, and on the 5th of April, 1841, became president of the United States.

stitution, and chose Thomas W. Dorr, governor. The "Law and Order Party," on the other hand, contended that, although the people constitute the sovereign authority, yet they had no right to set aside the ancient charter of the state, and adopt a new constitution, except in accordance with legal forms and by the constituted authorities. This party chose Samuel W. King, governor. Each party also elected a legislature. In May, both parties met at Providence, and organized their respective governments.

4. Matters now came to a crisis. The "Law and Order Party," or existing government, took active measures to put down what they considered a rebellion. Several arrests were made, and great commotion ensued. A resort was had to arms; but Mr. Dorr, seeing the hopelessness of his enterprise, left the state, and his men speedily dispersed. On his return, he was arrested, tried, and imprisoned, but afterward released. In the mean time, a constitution for the state was prepared by the "Law and Order Party," and adopted.

5. On the 28th of February, 1844, a tragical event occurred on board of the U. S. steamship Princeton, Captain Stockton, during an excursion down the Potomac. The president, accompanied by his cabinet with their families, and many other distinguished persons were on board. During the passage, one of the large guns, made of wrought iron, on being fired the third time, burst, and the explosion instantly killed Mr. Upshur, secretary of state, Mr. Gilmer, secretary of the navy, Commodore Kennon, and several others. A treaty of annexation between the United States and Texas* was signed by the president, April 12, but rejected by the senate, June 8th, by a vote of 35 to 16.

4. Which party prevailed? What occurred on board of the Princeton?

5. When was a treaty for the annexation of Texas signed by the president? Did the senate ratify it? What can you say of Texas?

* TEXAS constituted a part of Louisiana at the time of the purchase of that vast territory by Mr. Jefferson, in 1803. Mr. Laussat, the French commissioner, who delivered the possession of Louisiana to our government, announced the Rio Grande, or Del Norte, as its true boundary. Texas remained in our possession until 1819, when, in the cession of Florida to the United States, it was ceded to Spain, and the Sabine river was made the boundary between the United States and New Spain, or Mexico.

The first settlement in Texas was made by the Spaniards, at San Antonio de Bexar,

6. The annexation of Texas to the United States was strongly opposed by the whig party, and highly approved by the democratic party throughout the country. During the presidential campaign of 1844, this question was warmly

6. What was the result of the presidential campaign in 1844?

in 1692. La Bahia was settled in 1716, Nacogdoches in 1732, and Victoria soon after. These old Spanish settlements continued to be surrounded by savage Indians until 1821, and Texas, for the most part, was an unexplored wilderness.

On the 17th of January, 1821, Moses Austin obtained permission from the supreme government of the eastern provinces of New Spain, at Monterey, to settle a colony of emigrants in Texas. In the month of December following, his son, Stephen F. Austin, arrived on the river Brazos, with the first American settlers. From that period may be dated the American history of Texas. Colonization laws were soon after passed by the Mexican government, and other inducements held out to citizens of the United States to settle within the limits of that state, guarantying all the rights, liberties and immunities of Mexican citizens, in the protection of their persons and property. On the 2d of February, 1824, the Federal Constitution of Mexico, similar to that of the United States, was proclaimed as the established polity of the land; and by a decree of the 7th of May of the same year, the provinces of Texas and Coahuila were provisionally united to form one of the constituent and sovereign states of the Mexican confederacy. Under these enactments, the current of emigration began to flow in, and spread itself over the fertile domains of the province of Texas. The forest gave way to the ax of the pioneer; the wild prairie, to the plowshare of the husbandman; plantations were opened, and villages sprung up on the hunting-grounds of the savage. In the brief period of nine years from the first settlement under Austin, the Americans had explored the whole southern portion of the province, redeemed it from the wilderness of the wild beast and Indian, and covered it with an industrious and hardy population.

In the mean time, Mexico was convulsed by political dissensions, and the most disastrous civil wars. Revolution followed upon revolution,—nothing was permanent, but disorder and misrule. The Texans, so long as they were left unmolested in the enjoyment of their rights, took no part, and felt but little interest, in the commotions of the Mexican government. But at length, their rapidly-growing strength and steady adherence to republican principles, began to attract the notice and excite the jealousy of the Mexican authorities; and on the 6th of April, 1830, an arbitrary law was passed, prohibiting, in future, the emigration of American settlers into Texas. Military posts were established throughout the province,—the civil authorities were trampled under foot,—and the people were subjected to the capricious tyranny of unrestrained military misrule.

In 1833, the Texans, in conformity with a decree of the 7th of May, 1824, which granted and secured to them a separate constitution as soon as they possessed the necessary elements of self-government, assembled a general convention at San Felipe, which drafted an instrument, suited to the wants, peculiar character and habits of the people, and commissioned Stephen F. Austin to present it to the supreme government, with a respectful petition that it might be sanctioned and granted in accordance with said decree of the 7th of May, 1824. Instead of this, it was treated with disdain, and Austin thrown into a dungeon. Santa Anna, who was raised to the chief power, by the joint efforts of the aristocracy and priesthood, for the purpose of overthrowing the free institutions of the country, in 1835 openly declared in favor of abolishing the state governments, and consolidating all power, civil and military, in the hands of a single individual. Many of the Mexican states had recourse to arms in support of their sovereignty, and Santa Anna took the field against them. One by one, the states were crushed by the usurper,—all, except Texas. With a single voice, the Texans declared for the constitution of May, 1824, and an immediate appeal to arms. There was no alternative left them, and they rose like one man for the protection of their rights, their liberties. On the 28th of September, 1835, they defeated a detachment of Mexicans at Gonzales. On the 9th of October, the strong fortress of Goliad was taken. Numerous battles were fought

discussed, and great excitement prevailed. The result showed that a large majority of the people were in favor of the measure. James K. Polk, of Tennessee, was elected president, and George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, vice-president. In accordance with the wishes of President Tyler, on the 23d of January, 1845, a JOINT RESOLUTION for the annexation of Texas to the United States was adopted by the house of representatives, by a vote of 118 to 101. On the 3d of March, Mr. Tyler proposed to submit *this* to that republic as an overture on the part of our government for her admission into the Union.

JAMES K. POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. On the 4th of March, 1845, Mr. Polk was duly inaugurated as president of the United States. The ceremony was witnessed by an immense concourse of people; and in his address on the occasion, he clearly stated the principles by which he designed to administer the government during his presidential term.

1. When was Mr. Polk inaugurated?

during the autumn, and the Texans were uniformly victorious. In February, 1836, Santa Anna, at the head of 8,000 men, entered San Antonio de Bexar, and the Texan garrison, 150 in number, retired within the Alamo. After a bombardment of several days, on the 6th of March, the Alamo was taken by assault, and Travis, Bowie, and Crockett, with their little band of heroes, were all put to the sword. On the 18th of March, near Goliad, the Texans, under Fannin, were surrounded and attacked by a much superior force of Mexicans, under Gen. Urea, in the middle of an open prairie. At first, the Mexicans were repulsed, but receiving a strong reinforcement, they renewed the attack, and the Texans being hemmed in, and entirely cut off from water, surrendered on condition of being released on parole and transported to the United States. But these terms were basely violated, and Fannin and his brave comrades were massacred in cold blood.

Notwithstanding the near approach of the Mexican forces, a newly-elected convention met at Washington, and on the 2d day of March, 1836, made a formal and absolute declaration of "The Independence of Texas." They then proceeded to frame a constitution, to be submitted to the people for adoption, and after organizing a government "ad interim," composed of a president, vice-president, and cabinet, they adjourned in time for many of their number to join the patriot army under Gen. Houston, before his meeting with the Mexican forces under Santa Anna. On the 21st of April, the two armies met on the field of San Jacinto, and *there*, the Independence of Texas was sealed and consecrated by the blood of its enemies, by the capture of Santa Anna, the Mexican general and president, and by the annihilation of his army. From that time, Mexico never attempted any serious invasion of Texas; but confined herself to a desultory and predatory warfare on the border, often characterized by acts revolting to humanity. In 1836, Texas adopted her constitution, under which she existed as a sovereign power, until she was annexed to the United States, in 1845.

2. On the 4th of July, 1845, Texas accepted the terms of the joint resolution passed by congress, and thus virtually became a state of the American Union. Although Texas had maintained her independence more than nine years, Mexico* still continued her hostile feelings, regarded it as a revolted province, and threatened to send an army to reduce it to submission. For the purpose of repelling any attempt at invasion by Mexico, in August, Gen. Zachary Taylor, by orders of the government, proceeded with a small force to Corpus Christi, and there established his head-quarters.

3. The first session of the twenty-ninth congress commenced December 1st, 1845, and continued until August 10th, 1846. On the 29th of December, 1845, an act was

2. When did Texas accept the terms of the joint resolution? Why was Gen. Taylor sent with troops into the western part of Texas?

3. What acts were passed by congress?

* Mexico was conquered by Cortez, in 1521. He named it New Spain. It remained subject to the Spanish government, or was governed by viceroys, until 1822, when it became independent of Spain. In 1824, a constitution was formed similar to that of the United States; but the government has, for the most part, been administered more on the principles of a military despotism, than those of a republic. Immediately after Mexico had declared her independence of Spain, she commenced a series of insults and spoiliations upon the commerce of the United States. Our citizens, while engaged in lawful trade with the citizens of Mexico, were imprisoned, their goods, their vessels seized, and our flag insulted in all the ports of that republic. The government of the United States frequently demanded redress in behalf of her plundered citizens, but it was refused, or the subject evaded, and new outrages committed. Although the United States were the first nation to acknowledge her independence, and ever treated her as a sister republic, yet in her intercourse with our citizens, she utterly disregarded all the laws of civilized nations. At length, on the 5th of April, 1831, "a treaty of amity and navigation" was concluded between the two republics; yet, scarcely had two months passed away, before fresh outrages were perpetrated. In less than seven years after that treaty was concluded, the outrages became so intolerable that President Jackson, in his message to congress, said, "they should be no longer endured." A messenger was dispatched to Mexico, in 1837, to demand redress. The Mexican government expressed a wish for the continuation of friendly feelings, and promised that the difficulties should be settled; but these assurances were never fulfilled. Magnanimity and moderation on the part of the United States only had the effect of increasing these outrages. A joint commission was organized August 11th, 1840, the powers of which were to terminate in February, 1842. The claims allowed by this board before the commission expired,—due to our citizens,—amounted to \$2,026,139. The amount of *unsettled claims* at that time, due to our citizens, was \$923,627. A second convention was concluded between the two governments, January 30th, 1843, which decided that the interest due on the claims allowed, should be paid the 30th of April, 1843, and the principal, with the interest accruing thereon, in five years, in equal instalments every three months. Although the payment of these sums was secured by treaty, yet the claimants have only received the interest due on the 30th of April, 1843, and three out of the twenty instalments. Mexico, in the repeated violations of solemn treaties, showed a want of good faith, and afforded ample cause for a war many years before the actual commencement of hostilities.

passed for the admission of Texas as a state into the Union. Many important bills were passed, among which was the bill re-establishing the sub-treasury, the warehousing bill, the bill for the establishment of the Smithsonian Institute. The tariff law of 1842 was repealed, and another substituted, which reduced, in a considerable degree, the duties on imports. About the same time, the British government made a similar change in her corn laws, and reduced many other duties. This simultaneous abandonment of a protective tariff by both nations, gave a new impulse to commerce and navigation, and opened new markets for the agricultural and other products of both countries.

4. On the 16th of June, the Oregon question, which had long been a subject of dispute between Great Britain and the United States, was settled, by making the forty-ninth degree of north latitude, and the strait of Juan de Fuca, the boundary line between Oregon and British America. In the mean time, open hostilities had been commenced by Mexico against the United States. On the 6th of March, 1846, General Taylor, by order of the president, moved his troops from Corpus Christi to Point Isabel, which he fortified and made his main depôt for supplies and military stores for his army. He then proceeded to the Rio Grande, and on the 28th of March established himself on the east bank, opposite Matamoras, and shortly erected Fort Brown.

5. In April, Colonel Cross, United States quartermaster-general, was murdered by one of those bands of Mexicans called *rancheros*. This was the first life lost in the war. Soon after, a small reconnoitering party, consisting of Lieut. Porter and three others, were murdered. Large parties of Mexicans now daily crossed the Rio Grande, spread themselves between Point Isabel and Fort Brown, and thus cut off all communication between the two places. Aware of the absolute necessity of free access to his depôt, on the 1st of May, General Taylor departed with the main body of his army, leaving the river and fort in care of Major

4. When was the Oregon question settled? When did Gen. Taylor move his troops to Point Isabel? To the Rio Grande? What fort was soon built?

5. Who was murdered by the Mexicans? What did the Mexicans then do? Why did Gen. Taylor return to Point Isabel?

Brown. On the evening of the 2d he reached Point Isabel without encountering a single Mexican.

6. As soon as the Mexicans became aware of the departure of Gen. Taylor, they opened a heavy cannonade upon Fort Brown, which they continued for several days. The Americans, notwithstanding the smallness of their number, returned the fire with spirit, and gallantly sustained the unequal contest. On his return from Point Isabel, on the 8th of May, at 2 p. m., Gen. Taylor met at Palo Alto about 6,000 Mexicans, drawn up in order of battle across a plain, ready to receive him. Our little army, numbering about one-third of the enemy, was soon formed in battle array, and the action commenced. Ringgold's and Duncan's batteries opened with terrible effect, sweeping down platoons at every discharge. The Mexicans, confident of victory, fought bravely for hours; but the storm from our artillery was resistless—their infantry broke in confusion, the cavalry gave way, and the whole army, at length, retreated, having lost, in killed and wounded, about 500. The Americans had nine killed and forty-two wounded. The brave Ringgold, the leader of the light artillery, fell in the action.

7. On the following day, Gen. Taylor recommenced his march, and at 4 p. m., came up with the Mexicans, who were strongly posted at a ravine called Resaca de la Palma. The two armies at once engaged, and the action soon became general. The Mexican infantry, in a short time, gave way before the resistless progress of the Americans, while their central battery checked all advances along the roads. Seeing that the whole battle rested here, Gen. Taylor ordered Capt. May to charge the battery with his squadron of dragoons. This he gallantly performed, driving the artillerymen from their pieces, and capturing Gen. La Vega, who remained alone at one of the guns. The enemy now fled on all sides, rapidly pursued by the Americans. Leaving baggage—every thing—they rushed

6. What did the Mexicans do after Gen. Taylor left? Describe the battle of Palo Alto.

7. Describe the battle of Resaca de la Palma.

furiously toward the river, to escape to Matamoras. The victory was complete.

8. On the 15th, Barita was taken by the Americans; and on the 18th, our army crossed the Rio Grande, and took possession of Matamoras without any opposition. For want of troops and supplies, Gen. Taylor was compelled to remain inactive at that post the greater part of the summer. In the mean time, Mier, Reynosa, and Camargo had been occupied by the Americans without resistance. On the 5th of September, Gen. Taylor received information that Gen. Ampudia had arrived at Monterey, the capital of New Leon, with a large Mexican force, and was fortifying that place with the greatest care.

9. Gen. Taylor, having received reinforcements, on the 7th of September, proceeded with 6,600 men from Matamoras, and on the 19th encamped at Walnut Springs, three miles from Monterey. The order of attack was formed in three divisions: the first, under Gen. Twiggs; the second, under Gen. Worth; and the third, under Gen. Butler. Gen. Worth was ordered to gain, by a circuitous route, the Saltillo road, and storm the heights above the Bishop's Palace. Generals Twiggs and Butler, were to make a movement against the center and left of the city. On the evening of the 21st the battle commenced, and for three days raged with great fury. The redouts in the rear were carried, the Bishop's Palace stormed, and the city entered at all points. The fight now became terrific. A deadly fire was poured upon our troops from every housetop, door, and window. Yet still, led on by Quitman and Worth, they advanced, entered the houses, dug through the sidewalls, fighting hand to hand until they came within one square of the principal plaza. On the next morning the place was surrendered, and the Mexicans allowed to retire with their arms. Our loss in killed and wounded was about 500—that of the Mexicans 1,000. The capture of Monterey, defended by 10,000 troops, with forty-two pieces of artillery,

8. When was Barita taken? When was Matamoras taken possession of?

9. When did Gen. Taylor leave Matamoras? Describe the battle of Monterey.



BATTLE OF MONTEREY.

and fortifications of immense strength, by a force so greatly inferior, was a bold and daring achievement, and forms a brilliant chapter in the pages of history.

10. Gen. Taylor now established his head-quarters at Monterey, and detached Gen. Worth, with 1,200 men, to Saltillo; and Gen. Wool, with 2,400 men, to Parras. In the mean time, Paredes had been deposed, and Santa Anna recalled from exile in Cuba, and placed at the head of Mexican affairs. Santa Anna, the moment he reached the capital, set about collecting a force sufficient to resist the further advances of the victorious Americans. Before the close of the year, he had succeeded in raising an army of more than 20,000 men, and concentrating them at San Luis Potosi, which he strongly fortified, and filled with military stores.

11. In the mean time, Gen. Scott had been appointed to the chief command of the army in Mexico, and had been obliged to call on Gen. Taylor for nearly all the regular troops under his command, to aid in the reduction of Vera

10. What did General Taylor now do? What took place at that time in Mexico?

11. Who was appointed to the chief command of the army?

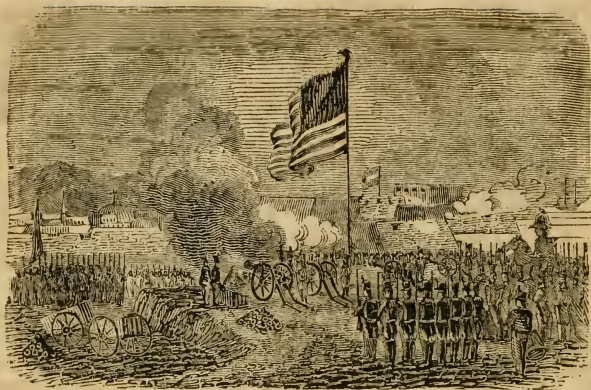
Cruz. In Feb., 1847, however, reinforcements of volunteers arrived, and Taylor's force amounted to about 6,000 men. Receiving information that Santa Anna designed to possess himself of the line of posts between himself and Matamoras, Taylor resolved to meet him on his own ground.

12. Accordingly he left Monterey, and on the 20th of February encamped at Agua Nueva, with a force of 5,000 men. Learning that Santa Anna, at the head of 20,000 men, was rapidly approaching him, and but twenty miles distant, Taylor fell back to Buena Vista, a mountain pass of remarkable natural strength, seven miles from Saltillo. On the morning of the 22d, the Mexicans, in immense numbers, were seen advancing; and about noon, Santa Anna sent a summons to Gen. Taylor to surrender. The old hero declined this courteous request; and at sunrise, next morning, the battle commenced in earnest. As the enemy advanced in overwhelming numbers, Washington's, Sherman's, and Bragg's batteries poured, in fierce and rapid succession, the most destructive volleys, sweeping away whole columns, and compelling them to retreat. Again and again they renewed the charge, but were as often repulsed. At length, darkness closed the contest. Both armies rested on the field. Before morning, however, the Mexicans retired, having lost, in killed and wounded, about 2,000. The loss of the Americans was 267 killed, and 456 wounded. The victory was complete, and secured to the Americans the quiet possession of the northern provinces of Mexico. Soon after the battle, Gen. Taylor returned to Monterey, and Gen. Wool, with the main body of the army, encamped at Buena Vista.

13. Soon after, Gen. Scott commenced his brilliant career in the southern part of Mexico. On the 1st of Jan., 1847, he reached the Rio Grande, and on the 9th of March, with the assistance of Commodore Connor, of the Gulf squadron, disembarked his troops near Vera Cruz. Having planted

12. Describe the battle of Buena Vista.

13. When did Gen. Scott reach Vera Cruz? Describe the capture of that city.



CAPTURE OF VERA CRUZ.

his batteries, and prepared for the siege, on the 22d he sent a summons to the Mexican commander to surrender the place. The summons was rejected, and shortly after the batteries opened on the city. From this time, with few interruptions, the cannonading continued with immense destruction of life and property to the inhabitants, until the morning of the 26th, when Gen. Landero, the Mexican governor, opened negotiations with General Scott, which finally resulted in the surrender of the city and the castle of San Juan de Ulloa.* On the 29th, the Mexican troops marched out of Vera Cruz, laid down their arms, and departed for the interior, and our troops entered and took possession of the city. About 5,000 stands of arms, 400 cannon, and a large quantity of military stores, fell into the hands of the Americans. During the siege, our army lost seventeen killed and twenty-eight wounded. The Mexican loss was very great. Considered in a military point of view, this was one of the most glorious victories in the history of modern warfare.

* The castle of San Juan de Ulloa, is one of the strongest fortresses in the world. It is situated on an island directly opposite the city of Vera Cruz, in a position to command the whole harbor.

14. Early in April, our army commenced its march for the interior of Mexico. On the 16th, it arrived at the strong mountain pass of Cerro Gordo, where Santa Anna was securely intrenched, with about 15,000 men. Along the front declivity were several powerful batteries, and on the highest peak of the precipice—more than 1,000 feet high—was the strong fortress of Cerro Gordo, which commanded every point in the road below. Gen. Scott, perceiving that an attack in front would be in vain, ordered a road to be cut round the base of the mountains, directly to the rear of the Mexican forts. Heavy artillery were taken to the heights, and on the morning of the 18th, opened on the intrenchments of the enemy with deadly effect. Col. Harney led his men, in the midst of a destructive fire, up the heights, stormed the citadel, and unfurled the stars and stripes from the tower of Cerro Gordo. The Mexicans, repulsed at all points, were put to a total rout. Santa Anna escaped on a mule, leaving his carriage, containing a large amount of specie, his papers, &c., behind. Five Mexican generals and 6,000 men surrendered themselves prisoners. The loss on each side was about 500 in killed and wounded.

15. On the 19th of April, Gen. Twiggs took possession of the town of Jalapa; and on the 22d Gen. Worth and his division occupied the strong castle* and town of Perote. On the 15th of May, Gen. Worth, with 4,000 troops, entered the ancient and beautiful city of Puebla, called, in the Spanish tongue, Puebla de los Angeles, "City of the Angels." Here Gen. Scott remained with his army until the 8th of August. There were two reasons for this delay. The *first* was: our government had been anxious for peace from the beginning—had sought every opportunity for negotiations, and now sent Mr. Nicholas P. Trist to Mexico, as agent, to terminate the war, if possible, by an honorable

14. When did our army leave Vera Cruz for the interior of Mexico? When did the battle of Cerro Gordo take place?

15. When was Jalapa taken? Perote? Puebla? Why did Gen. Scott make a halt at Puebla?

* The castle of Perote is one of the strongest in Mexico. In it were 54 cannon and mortars; 11,000 cannon balls; 14,000 bombs, and 500 muskets.

peace. The *second* was: our little army, although "a band of heroes," was too small to proceed further until reinforced.

16. During these operations of the armies under Generals Scott and Taylor, our squadron had captured all the Mexican ports on the Gulf of Mexico. On the 14th of Oct., 1846, Tampico, one of the most important posts to Mexico, was taken by Commodore Connor. On the 23d, Frontiera was captured by Commodore Perry, and on the 25th Tabasco. Soon after, Alvarado and Tlacotalpam were taken by Lieut. Hunter. On the 18th of April, 1846, the town and port of Tuspan was captured by Commodore Perry.

17. Our government, believing that the states of New Mexico, Chihuahua, Durango, and others in the upper portion of Mexico, stood ready to declare themselves independent, fitted out an expedition thither, under Col. Kearney. He left Fort Leavenworth on the 30th of June, 1846, and after an arduous march of 873 miles, arrived at Santa Fé, the capital of New Mexico, on the 18th of August, and took possession of that state without resistance.*

18. About the same time, Col. Fremont, assisted by the squadron under Com. Stockton, in the Pacific, took possession of California. They encountered but little resistance, and on the 13th of August, 1846, entered the "City of Angels," the capital of the Californias. They estab-

16. What had our squadron done in the mean time?

17. Who was sent to New Mexico? What did Col. Kearney do?

18. What did Col. Fremont do?

* Shortly after the conquest of New Mexico, occurred one of those military adventures almost unparalleled in history. This was the march of Col. Doniphan's corps through the wild and unknown regions of Northern Mexico. About the 1st of Dec., 1846, he left Santa Fé with 800 men, destined for Chihuahua. At Brozitos, on the 21st of Dec., he was suddenly attacked by a large force of Mexican lancers and infantry. A well-directed fire of his riflemen sent terror and dismay into their ranks, and put them to flight. Doniphan then pursued his march. On the 27th, he entered El Paso del Norte without opposition. On the 23d of February, he reached Carmen, and on the 28th his progress was interrupted by a large Mexican force of more than 4,000 men, intrenched near the Rancho Sacramento, in one of the strongest mountain passes of Mexico. A desperate action ensued. The Americans, at length, rushing up the intrenchments, poured in such a deadly fire, that the Mexicans broke, and fled in consternation, leaving their artillery and military stores in the hands of the victorious Americans. The next day, Col. Doniphan entered Chihuahua, and took formal possession, in the name of the United States.

lished a form of government, at the head of which was placed Col. Fremont.

19. Gen. Scott, having received reinforcements, on the 8th of August left Puebla with 10,738 men, and moved forward to the conquest of Mexico, the capital of the Spanish Aztec nation. On the 10th, they passed the Rio Frio—a place of great natural strength—and came within sight of the vast plain of Mexico. On the 15th, they reached Ayotla, fifteen miles from Mexico. From this place, the road to the city is a causeway, traversing a marsh, and is commanded by a lofty hill, called El Penon, which had been fortified with the greatest care by Santa Anna. To avoid this strong fortification, our army cut a road around Lake Chalco, and on the 18th reached San Augustine, nine miles south of Mexico.

20. On the 19th, Generals Pillow and Twiggs, with 4,000 men, proceeded to Contreras, three miles distant, where Gen. Valencia was strongly posted with 8,000 Mexicans, in a position to sweep the road with his batteries. Nothing effectual was done until past midnight, when the Americans rushed forward, and charged the works. In an instant all was a mass of confusion. The enemy broke and fled, each striving to be foremost in the flight. The victory was brilliant and decisive. The Mexican loss was 700 killed, 1,000 wounded, 813 prisoners, 22 brass cannon, and an immense quantity of military stores. Our loss, in killed and wounded, did not exceed sixty.

21. On the same day, our troops proceeded to Churubusco, a place strongly defended both by nature and art. Here Santa Anna had collected 27,000 of his choicest troops, resolved to make a desperate stand for the defense of the capital. At 1 P. M. the attack commenced, and con-

19. When did Gen. Scott resume his march?

20. Describe the battle of Contreras.

21. The battle of Churubusco.

On the 25th of April, Doniphan left Chihuahua, with his little band, arrived at Monterey the 25th of May, and New Orleans on the 25th of June. He and his troops pursued their unchecked career for more than 5,000 miles, over mountains and sandy plains, in snow and ice, in rain and hot deserts, amid the homes of civilization and the wilds of savages—amid the fires of battle, and the sports of the camp, and the adventures of the wild wilderness.

tinued for three hours, when the enemy were routed at all points, and were pursued by our troops to the very gates of the city. The Mexican loss was 600 killed and wounded, and 1,100 prisoners. Our loss in killed and wounded was 1,053. Gen. Scott might have entered the capital that evening, but hoping that the Mexicans would now be disposed to treat for peace, halted his victorious army, and an armistice was soon after proposed and agreed upon.

22. Mr. Trist, our commissioner, being unsuccessful in his attempts to negotiate a peace, and the armistice having been repeatedly violated by the Mexicans, on the 5th of September, General Scott resolved on a vigorous prosecution of the war. On the 8th, our troops attacked Molino del Rey, or the "King's Mill"—a stone building of massive, high walls, used as a dépôt and foundry. The enemy had strongly intrenched themselves there, and were commanded by Santa Anna in person. The battle raged with desperate fury for two hours, when the enemy were totally routed.

23. One stronghold now alone remained to the enemy. This was Chapultepec—a steep, bluff, rocky height, rising 150 feet, strongly fortified at its base and acclivities, and on its height was a strong castle and military college. This was attacked on the 12th, and was one of the most desperate actions fought during the war. Our batteries told with terrible effect upon the enemy's works. The buildings were crashed through, and the ramparts torn up, while, in return, the Mexicans rained down an incessant fire upon the assailants below. The assault continued throughout the day. The next morning, Pillow's and Worth's divisions were ordered to storm the works. They advanced over rocks, through dense woods, driving the enemy before them. On they swept in the face of a murderous fire, ascended the acclivities, stormed the batteries, and mounted the walls of the castle. Col. T. H. Seymour, of the New England regiment, tore down the Mexican flag, and planted the American standard in its place.

22. Describe the battle of Molino del Rey.

23. Chapultepec.

With wild shouts, the troops rushed on, sweeping all before them like a whirlwind. The fortress was carried, and access to the city opened to the American army.



SCOTT'S ENTRY INTO THE CITY OF MEXICO.

24. On the 14th, our army entered and occupied the capital of the Mexican empire. The stars and stripes floated over "the Halls of the Montezumas," and the loud, hearty cheers of our troops announced that the object of their long and eventful march had been realized. General Quitman was appointed military governor, and by prompt and energetic measures, order and confidence were restored among soldiers and citizens. The stores and public places were opened, and the city assumed a peaceful appearance. Thus the war was essentially terminated. Mexico was humbled, crushed, and incapable of further resistance. On the 2d of Feb., 1848, a treaty of peace* was concluded be-

24. When did the American army enter Mexico? When was a treaty of peace concluded?

* By this treaty the boundary between the two governments commences at the mouth of the Rio Grande, and proceeds up the middle of the deepest channel of that river to the southern boundary of New Mexico; thence westwardly, along the southern boundary of New Mexico to its western termination; thence northwardly,

tween the United States and Mexico, and soon after ratified by our government.

25. By this treaty, Mexico ceded to the United States more than two million square miles of territory. This, however, was regarded by many, at the time, as of comparatively little value, except the bay of San Francisco, which constitutes one of the most magnificent harbors on the globe. In February, 1848, an accidental discovery of gold was made on the land of Capt. Sutter, in California. Soon after, it was ascertained that this precious metal existed in immense quantities in that extensive region. The news of this rapidly spread from country to country, and astonished the whole civilized world. Thousands upon thousands left their homes for this western El Dorado, or "land of boundless wealth." The gold deposits, or "placers," as they are called, are mostly in the valley of the Sacramento. Millions of gold have already been gathered, and yet the quantity seems as inexhaustible as ever. San Francisco has become a large and important place, and seems destined to become one of the most populous cities in America.

26. On the 29th of May, 1848, Wisconsin was admitted as a state into the Union. On the 14th of August, Oregon was erected into a territorial government; and on the 3d of March, 1849, a territorial government was established over Minesota. The presidential election of 1848, resulted in the choice of General Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana, for president, and Millard Fillmore, of New York, for vice-president. On the 3d of March, 1849, Mr. Polk's eventful and important administration terminated, and he soon after returned to his residence in Nashville, Tennessee.*

25. What did Mexico cede to the United States? Describe the boundary between Mexico and the United States? What was discovered in California? When? What has been the result?

26. When was Wisconsin admitted into the Union? When was Oregon erected into a territory? Minesota? What was the result of the presidential election.

along the western line of New Mexico, until it intersects the River Gila; thence down the Gila to the Colorado, and thence in a straight line to the Pacific Ocean, at a point three miles south of San Diego.

James Knox Polk was born in Mecklenburg County, North Carolina, November 2d, 1795. His father was an enterprising farmer, and through life a firm and

TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. On the 5th of March, 1849, the inauguration of Gen. Taylor* took place, and he entered on the duties of his office as president of the United States. His cabinet consisted of John M. Clayton, of Delaware, secretary of state; William M. Meredith, of Pennsylvania, secretary of the treasury; Thomas Ewing, of Ohio, secretary of the home department; George W. Crawford, of Georgia, secretary of war; William B. Preston, of Virginia, secretary of the navy; Jacob Collamer, of Vermont, postmaster-general; and Revedy Johnson, of Maryland, attorney-general.

1. When was Gen. Taylor inaugurated? The 4th of July fell on Sunday.

undeviating democrat. In 1806, he removed with his family of ten children, to Tennessee, and was one of the pioneers of the fertile valley of Duck river, a branch of the Cumberland, *then* a wilderness, but *now*, the most populous and flourishing portion of the state. In that region Mr. Polk resided until his election to the presidency, in 1844. In 1815, he entered the University of North Carolina. His career at the University was distinguished. It is said, that he never missed a recitation, nor omitted the punctilious performance of any duty. In 1818, he graduated with the reputation of being the first scholar in both the mathematics and classics. From the University he returned to Tennessee, and in 1819 commenced the study of law in the office of the Hon. Felix Grundy. He was admitted to the bar in 1820, where he at once took a distinguished position. In 1823, he was elected a representative to the state legislature, and for two successive years was a member of that body. In August, 1825, he was chosen to represent his district in congress. In 1835, he was elected speaker of the house of representatives, and again chosen to that station in 1837. After a service of fourteen years in congress, in 1839, Mr. Polk declined a reelection, and was chosen governor of Tennessee. In 1844, he was elected to the presidency. At the close of his administration, which forms a brilliant and eventful period in history, he retired to his residence in Tennessee, where he expired on the 15th of June, 1849. He was ever a firm, undeviating, democrat, and his private life, which had ever been upright and pure, secured to him the respect and esteem of all who had the pleasure of his acquaintance.

* Zachary Taylor was born in Orange county, Virginia, Sept. 24, 1784. The following year, his father removed to Kentucky. In 1803, he received from President Jefferson a commission of first lieutenant in the 7th regiment of United States infantry. On the breaking out of the war of 1812, then a captain, he was placed in command of Fort Harrison, on the Wabash river. The gallantry and bravery he displayed, in the attacks of the Indians, gave promise of the military renown which he afterward achieved. In 1816, then major, he was placed by President Madison, in command of the post of Green Bay, on Lake Michigan. In 1832, he was appointed colonel by President Jackson, and served gallantly under Gen. Scott in the Black Hawk war of that year. He subsequently held the command of Fort Crawford, at Prairie du Chien, where he remained until 1836. He then repaired to Florida, and took an active part in the Seminole war, in which harassing duty he won a fame only surpassed by that which he won during the Mexican campaign. On the 25th of Dec., 1837, he fought the battle of Okeechobee, in which the Indians were almost annihilated, and never again appeared in any considerable number. In 1838, he was appointed to the chief command of all the troops in Florida.

2. Hon. John C. Calhoun, a senator in congress from South Carolina, died at Washington, March 31st, aged 68. For nearly half a century he had been engaged in the public service, and had exerted a powerful influence over the policy of the nation. He had filled almost every office in the gift of the people, and performed the duties of each with ability and stern integrity. He was a man of powerful talents and of the most unquestionable probity. The highest honors were paid to his memory. On the 12th of May, a large crevasse, or breach, was made in the levee, or embankment, of the Mississippi, fourteen miles above New Orleans. For a long time every effort to close it was ineffectual. A large extent of country was overflowed, and 1,600 houses in New Orleans flooded. On the 17th, a terrible fire occurred at St. Louis, by which twenty-three steamboats, with their cargoes, were destroyed, and nearly fifteen blocks of buildings in the business part of the city.

3. President Taylor having received information that an armed expedition was preparing to leave the United States for the invasion of Cuba, issued a proclamation, on the 11th of August, for its suppression. Soon after, a large party, collected on an island in the Gulf of Mexico, was dispersed by a naval force, and the expedition prevented. On the 31st of August, a convention of delegates met at Monterey for the purpose of framing a state constitution for California, preparatory to its admission into the Union.

4. The admission of California, and the organization of

2. What distinguished man died, and where? What happened on the 12th of May? On the 17th?

3. What expedition was suppressed?

4. What gave rise to the discussion of the slavery question? When was

where he remained until April, 1840, when he was relieved by Gen. Armistead. Gen. Taylor was then appointed to the command of the southwestern division of the army, and, in 1841, was ordered to relieve Gen. Arbuckle, at Fort Gibson. He removed his family about this time to Baton Rouge, in Louisiana, where he had purchased an estate. In 1845, on the annexation of Texas, he was ordered to place his troops in such a position as to defend Texas against a threatened Mexican invasion. In August of that year, he concentrated his forces at Corpus Christi. His triumphant success in that war, and subsequent elevation to the presidency, have already been stated. He died in Washington city, July 9, 1850. He was a brave soldier, an able general, and a devoted patriot. His death was universally lamented.

the territories of New Mexico and Utah, during the session of 1849-50, gave rise to an animated and lengthy discussion on the subject of slavery, in both houses of congress. One party insisted that slavery should be prohibited in the new states and territories, while the other contended that the subject should be left with the people of each to decide for themselves. The deepest interest was excited throughout the country, and serious apprehensions were felt by many for the safety of the Union. On the 7th of September, California was admitted as an independent state, and territorial governments established over New Mexico and Utah.

5. On the 9th of July, 1850, Gen. Taylor, after a short illness, expired at Washington. This mournful event deeply affected the whole nation; for he was regarded by all as a brave and able general, an upright statesman, and an honorable man. The chief characteristics of his administration were the desire to cultivate peaceful and friendly relations with foreign powers, so far as was consistent with national honor and dignity, and to maintain the union and prosperity of the states at home. Hon. Millard Fillmore now became president of the United States.

FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. On the 10th of July, 1850, Mr. Fillmore* was inaugurated, and entered on the duties of his office as president of

California admitted into the Union? When were New Mexico and Utah erected into territorial governments?

5. When did Gen. Taylor expire? What can you tell of his life? See note.

* Millard Fillmore was born at Summer Hill, Cayuga county, New York, Jan. 7th, 1800. His father was a farmer, in quite moderate circumstances, and unable to give his son more than a limited common-school education. When he was fifteen, he was sent to learn the trade of clothier, at which he worked for four years, improving all his spare time in reading books from a little library in the village where he lived. At the age of nineteen, Judge Woods, of Cayuga county, detected the latent

the United States. The following officers in the executive department of the government, constituted his cabinet, viz :

SALARY.

Daniel Webster,	Massachusetts, .	Secretary of State, . . .	\$6,000
Thomas Corwin,	Ohio,	Sec. of the Treasury, .	6,000
Charles M. Conrad, . . .	Louisiana, . . .	Secretary of War, . . .	6,000
William A. Graham, . .	North Carolina,	Secretary of the Navy,	6,000
A. H. H. Stuart,	Virginia,	Sec. of the Interior, . .	6,000
Nathan K. Hall,	New York,	Postmaster-General, . .	6,000
John J. Crittenden, . .	Kentucky,	Attorney-General, . . .	4,000

2. Congress, after one of the longest, most arduous, and stirring sessions, adjourned on the 30th of September. Among the numerous acts of the session, the most important were those for the admission of California, the organization of the territories of New Mexico and Utah, the establishment of the boundary of Texas, and the suppression of the slave trade in the District of Columbia—termed the compromise measures—and the fugitive slave bill. These produced, for several months, the most intense feeling in congress and throughout the Union.

3. The second session of the thirty-first congress commenced on Monday, Dec. 2d, 1850. The message of the president was a sound and able document, and was generally approved by all parties. His views of the veto power, of incidental protection, and his approval of the compromise measures of the former session, and his expressed determination to uphold and execute the fugitive slave law, met the general approbation of both whigs and democrats.

talents of the young man, and induced him to study law. He took him into his office, where he remained two years, studying with that industry and perseverance which have distinguished him through life. During this time, however, he taught school in the winter months, in order to provide for his expenses as far as possible. In 1822, he entered a law office at Buffalo, and passed a year studying and teaching, when he was admitted to the bar, and removed to Aurora to commence the practice of his profession. In 1826, he married Miss Powers, the daughter of Rev. Lemuel Powers. He spent several years in diligent judicial studies, and in the limited legal practice of a country town. In 1829, he was elected to the assembly, in New York, and for three years held a seat in that body. While there, he took a prominent and influential part, and was remarkable for his devotion and unwearied industry to his duties. In the mean time, he removed to Buffalo. In 1832, he was elected a member of congress, and was subsequently re-elected several times. During his congressional career, he manifested the same industry, ability, and efficient practical talent that had before distinguished him. In 1844, he was run by the whigs of New York for governor, and, in 1847, was elected comptroller of the state. He held that office until his elevation to the vice-presidency, in 1849. From this brief sketch it will be seen that Mr. Fillmore has gradually risen, by his own talents and untiring industry, from a humble station in life, to an office higher and more honorable than that of king or emperor. What a lesson is here taught to the young men of our great and glorious republic.

CONSTITUTION *

OF THE

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

We the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE. I.

SECTION. 1. All legislative Powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION. 2. The House of Representatives shall be composed of Members chosen every second Year by the People of the several States, and the Electors in each State shall have the Qualifications requisite for Electors of the most numerous Branch of the State Legislature.

No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five Years, and been seven Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct Taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective Numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole Number of free Persons, including those bound to Service for a Term of Years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other Persons. The actual Enumeration shall be made within three Years after the first Meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent Term of ten Years, in such Manner as they shall by Law direct. The Number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty Thousand, but each State shall have at Least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to chuse three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode-Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New-York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

When vacancies happen in the Representation from any State, the Executive Authority thereof shall issue Writs of Election to fill such Vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall chuse their Speaker and other Officers; and shall have the sole Power of Impeachment.

SECTION. 3. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six Years; and each Senator shall have one Vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in Consequence of the first Election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three Classes. The Seats of the Senators of the first Class shall be vacated at the Expiration of the second Year, of the second Class at the Expiration of the fourth Year, and of the third Class at the Expiration of the sixth

Year, so that one-third may be chosen every second Year; and if Vacancies happen by Resignation, or otherwise, during the Recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary Appointments until the next Meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such Vacancies.

No Person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty Years, and been nine Years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no Vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall chuse their other Officers, and also a President pro tempore, in the Absence of the Vice President, or when he shall exercise the Office of President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole Power to try all Impeachments. When sitting for that Purpose, they shall be on Oath or Affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside: And no Person shall be convicted without the Concurrence of two thirds of the Members present.

Judgment in Cases of Impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from Office, and Disqualification to hold and enjoy any Office of honour, Trust or Profit under the United States: but the Party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to Indictment, Trial, Judgment and Punishment, according to Law.

SECTION. 4. The Times, Places and Manner of holding Elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by Law make or alter such Regulations, except as to the places of chusing Senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every Year, and such Meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by Law appoint a different Day.

SECTION. 5. Each House shall be the Judge of the Elections, Returns and Qualifications of its own Members, and a Majority of each shall constitute a Quorum to do Business; but a smaller Number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the Attendance of absent Members, in such Manner, and under such Penalties as each House may provide.

Each House may determine the Rules of its Proceedings, punish its Members for disorderly Behaviour, and, with the Concurrence of two thirds, expel a Member.

Each House shall keep a Journal of its Proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such Parts as may in their Judgment require Secrecy; and the Yeas and Nays of the Members of either House on any question shall, at the Desire of one fifth of those Present, be entered on the Journal.

Neither House, during the Session of Congress, shall, without the Consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other Place

* Our readers may depend upon the accuracy of the text of the Constitution of the United States, here-with presented. It is copied from a printed Constitution, to which is attached a certificate from the Department of State, under the official seal, attesting that "the Constitution and Amendments have been critically compared with the original, and found to be correct in text, letter, and punctuation."

than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

SECTION. 6. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a Compensation for their Services, to be ascertained by Law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall in all Cases, except Treason, Felony and Breach of the Peace, be privileged from Arrest during their Attendance at the Session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any Speech or Debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other Place.

No Senator or Representative shall, during the Time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil Office under the Authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the Emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no Person holding any Office under the United States, shall be a Member of either House during his continuance in Office.

SECTION. 7. All bills for raising Revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with Amendments as on other Bills.

Every Bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a Law, be presented to the President of the United States; If he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his Objections to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their Journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such Reconsideration two thirds of that House shall agree to pass the Bill, it shall be sent, together with the Objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that House, it shall become a Law. But in all such Cases the Votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and Nays, and the Names of the Persons voting for and against the Bill shall be entered on the Journal of each House respectively. If any Bill shall not be returned by the President within ten Days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the Same shall be a law, in like Manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their Adjournment prevent its Return, in which Case it shall not be a Law.

Every Order, Resolution, or Vote to which the Concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of Adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the Same shall take Effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the Rules and Limitations prescribed in the Case of a Bill.

SECTION. 8. The Congress shall have Power

To lay and collect Taxes, Duties, Imposts and Excises, to pay the Debts and provide for the common Defence and general Welfare of the United States; but all Duties, Imposts and Excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

To borrow Money on the credit of the United States;

To regulate Commerce with foreign Nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian Tribes;

To establish a uniform Rule of Naturalization, and uniform Laws on the subject of Bankruptcies throughout the United States;

To coin Money, regulate the Value thereof, and of foreign Coin, and fix the Standard of Weights and Measures;

To provide for the Punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

To establish Post Offices and post Roads;

To promote the progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the exclusive Right to their respective Writings and Discoveries;

To constitute Tribunals inferior to the supreme Court;

To define and punish Piracies and Felonies committed on the high Seas, and Offences against the Law of Nations;

To declare War, grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal, and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water;

To raise and support Armies, but no Appropriation of Money to that Use shall be for a longer Term than two Years;

To provide and maintain a Navy;

To make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the land and naval Forces;

To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions;

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the Discipline prescribed by Congress;

To exercise exclusive Legislation in all Cases whatsoever, over such District (not exceeding ten Miles square) as may, by Cession of particular States, and the Acceptance of Congress, become the Seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like Authority over all Places purchased by the Consent of the Legislature of the State in which the Same shall be, for the Erection of Forts, Magazines, Arsenals, Dock-Yards, and other needful buildings;--And

To make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into Execution the foregoing Powers, and all other Powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any Department or Officer thereof.

SECTION. 9. The Migration or Importation of such Persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a Tax or Duty may be imposed on such Importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each Person.

The Privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in Cases of Rebellion or Invasion the public Safety may require it.

No Bill of Attainder or ex post facto Law shall be passed.

No Capitation, or other direct, Tax shall be laid, unless in Proportion to the Census or Enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

No Tax or Duty shall be laid on Articles exported from any State.

No Preference shall be given by any Regulation of Commerce or Revenue to the Ports of one State over those of another: nor shall Vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay Duties in another.

No money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in Consequence of Appropriations made by Law; and a regular Statement and Account of the Receipts and Expenditures of all public Money shall be published from time to time.

No Title of Nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no Person holding any Office of Profit or Trust under them, shall, without the Consent of the Congress, accept of any present, Emolument, Office, or Title, of any kind whatever, from any King, Prince, or foreign State.

SECTION. 10. No State shall enter into any Treaty, Alliance, or Confederation; grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal; coin Money; emit Bills of Credit; make any Thing but gold and silver Coin a Tender in Payment of Debts; pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any Imposts or Duties on Imports or Exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection Laws: and the net Produce of all Duties and Imposts, laid by any State on Imports or Exports, shall be for the Use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such Laws shall be subject to the Revision and Controul of the Congress.

No State shall, without the Consent of Congress, lay any Duty of Tonnage, keep Troops, or Ships of War in time of Peace, enter into any Agreement or Compact with another State, or with a foreign Power, or engage in War, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent Danger as will not admit of Delay.

ARTICLE. II.

SECTION. 1. The executive Power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his Office during the Term of four Years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same Term, be elected, as follows

Each State shall appoint, in such Manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a Number of Electors, equal to the whole Number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no Senator or Representative, or Person holding an Office of Trust or Profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

[The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by Ballot for two Persons, of whom one at least shall not be an Inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a List of all the Persons voted for, and of the Number of Votes for each; which List they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the Seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the Presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the Certificates, and the Votes shall then be counted. The Person having the greatest Number of Votes shall be the President, if such Number be a Majority of the whole Number of Electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such Majority, and have an equal Number of Votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately chuse by Ballot one of them for President; and if no Person have a Majority, then from the five highest on the List the said House shall in like Manner chuse the President. But in chusing the President, the Votes shall be taken by States, the Representation from each State having one Vote; A Quorum for this Purpose shall consist of a Member or Members from twothirds of the States, and a Majority of all the States shall be necessary to a Choice. In every Case, after the Choice of the President, the Person having the greatest Number of Votes of the Electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal Votes, the Senate shall chuse from them by Ballot the Vice President.]

The Congress may determine the Time of chusing the Electors, and the Day on which they shall give their Votes; which Day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No Person except a natural born Citizen, or a Citizen of the United States, at the time of the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the Office of President; neither shall any Person be eligible to that Office who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty five Years, and been fourteen Years a Resident within the United States.

In Case of the Removal of the President from Office, or of his Death, Resignation, or Inability to discharge the Powers and Duties of the said Office,

the same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by Law provide for the Case of Removal, Death, Resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what Officer shall then act as President, and such Officer shall act accordingly, until the Disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated Times, receive for his Services, a Compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the Period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that Period any other Emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Before he enter on the Execution of his Office, he shall take the following Oath or Affirmation:—

“I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the Office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my Ability, preserve, protect and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

SECTION. 2. The President shall be Commander in Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States, when called into the actual Service of the United States; he may require the Opinion, in writing, of the principal Officer in each of the executive Departments, upon any Subject relating to the Duties of their respective Offices, and he shall have Power to grant Reprieves and Pardons for Offences against the United States, except in Cases of Impeachment.

He shall have Power, by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, to make Treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, shall appoint Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the supreme Court, and all other Officers of the United States, whose Appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by Law: but the Congress may by Law vest the Appointment of such inferior Officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of Law, or in the Heads of Departments.

The President shall have Power to fill up all Vacancies that may happen during the Recess of the Senate, by granting Commissions which shall expire at the End of their next Session.

SECTION. 3. He shall from time to time give to the Congress Information of the State of the Union, and recommend to their Consideration such Measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary Occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in Case of Disagreement between them, with Respect to the Time of Adjournment, he may adjourn them to such Time as he shall think proper; he shall receive Ambassadors and other public Ministers; he shall take Care that the Laws be faithfully executed, and shall Commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION. 4. The President, Vice President and all civil Officers of the United States, shall be removed from Office on Impeachment for, and Conviction of, Treason, Bribery, or other high Crimes and Misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.

SECTION. 1. The judicial Power of the United States, shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their Offices during good Behavior, and shall, at stated Times, receive for their Services, a Compensation, which shall not be diminished during their Continuance in Office.

SECTION. 2. The judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in Law and Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their

* This clause within brackets has been superceded and annulled by the 12th amendment, on page 585.

Authority;—to all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls;—to all Cases of admiralty and maritime Jurisdiction;—to Controversies to which the United States shall be a Party;—to Controversies between two or more States;—between a State and Citizens of another State;—between Citizens of different States;—between Citizens of the same State claiming Lands under Grants of different States, and between a State, or the Citizens thereof, and foreign States, Citizens or Subjects.

In all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be Party, the supreme Court shall have original Jurisdiction. In all the other Cases before mentioned, the supreme Court shall have appellate Jurisdiction, both as to Law and Fact, with such Exceptions, and under such Regulations as the Congress shall make.

The Trial of all Crimes, except in Cases of Impeachment, shall be by Jury; and such Trial shall be held in the State where the said Crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the Trial shall be at such Place or Places as the Congress may by Law have directed.

SECTION. 3. Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying War against them, or in adhering to their Enemies, giving them Aid and Comfort. No Person shall be convicted of Treason unless on the Testimony of two Witnesses to the same overt Act, or on Confession in open Court.

The Congress shall have Power to declare the Punishment of Treason, but no Attainder of Treason shall work Corruption of Blood, or Forfeiture except during the Life of the Person attained.

ARTICLE. IV.

SECTION. 1. Full Faith and Credit shall be given in each State to the public Acts, Records, and judicial Proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general Laws prescribe the Manner in which such Acts, Records and Proceedings shall be proved, and the Effect thereof.

SECTION. 2. The Citizens of each State shall be entitled to all Privileges and Immunities of Citizens in the several States.

A Person charged in any State with Treason, Felony, or other Crime, who shall flee from Justice, and be found in another State, shall on Demand of the executive Authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having Jurisdiction of the Crime.

No Person held to Service or Labour in one State, under the Laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in Consequence of any Law or Regulation therein, be discharged from such Service or Labour, but shall be delivered up on Claim of the Party to whom such Service or Labour may be due.

SECTION. 3. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the Jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the Jun-

tion of two or more States, or Parts of States, without the Consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have Power to dispose of and make all needful Rules and Regulations respecting the Territory or other Property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to Prejudice any Claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION. 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a Republican Form of Government, and shall protect each of them against Invasion; and on Application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened) against domestic Violence.

ARTICLE. V.

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose Amendments to this Constitution, or, on the Application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a Convention for proposing Amendments, which, in either Case, shall be valid to all intents and Purposes, as Part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by Conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other Mode of Ratification may be proposed by the Congress; Provided that no Amendment which may be made prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any Manner affect the first and fourth Clauses in the Ninth Section of the first Article; and that no State, without its Consent, shall be deprived of its equal Suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE. VI.

All Debts contracted and Engagements entered into, before the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

This Constitution, and the Laws of the United States which shall be made in Pursuance thereof; and all Treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme Law of the Land; and the Judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any Thing in the Constitution or Laws of any State to the Contrary notwithstanding.

The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the Members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial Officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by Oath or Affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious Test shall ever be required as a Qualification to any Office or public Trust under the United States.

ARTICLE. VII.

The Ratification of the Conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the Establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the Same.

AMENDMENTS

TO THE

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

(ARTICLE I.)

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably

to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances.

(ARTICLE II.)

A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the

security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed.

(ARTICLE III.)

No Soldier shall, in time of peace be quartered in any house, without the consent of the Owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

(ARTICLE IV.)

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no Warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by Oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

(ARTICLE V.)

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the Militia, when in actual service in time of War or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any Criminal Case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

(ARTICLE VI.)

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law; and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have Compulsory process for obtaining Witnesses in his favour, and to have the Assistance of Counsel for his defence.

(ARTICLE VII.)

In Suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

(ARTICLE VIII.)

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

(ARTICLE IX.)

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain

rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

(ARTICLE X.)

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

(ARTICLE XI.)

The Judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by Citizens of another State, or by Citizens or Subjects of any Foreign State.

(ARTICLE XII.)

The Electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for President and Vice President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate;—The President of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted;—The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

SETTLEMENT OF THE STATES.

States.	Date.	Towns.	Nation.
1. Florida . . .	1565	St. Augustine . . .	Spanish
2. Virginia . . .	1607	Jamestown . . .	English
3. New York . . .	1614	Albany	Dutch
4. Massachusetts . . .	1620	Plymouth . . .	English
5. N. Hampshire . . .	1623	Dover	English
6. New Jersey, . . .	1624	Bergen	Danes
7. Delaware . . .	1627	Cape Henlopen . . .	Swedes and Finns . . .
8. Maine . . .	1630	York	English
9. Connecticut . . .	1633	Windsor	English
10. Maryland . . .	1634	St. Mary's	English
11. Rhode Island . . .	1636	Providence . . .	Roger Williams . . .
12. N. Carolina . . .	1650	Albemarle	English
13. Missouri . . .	1663	St. Genevieve . . .	French
14. S. Carolina . . .	1670	Port Royal	English
15. Michigan . . .	1670	Detroit	French
16. Pennsylvania . . .	1682	Philadelphia . . .	William Penn . . .
17. Arkansas . . .	1685	Arkansas	French
18. Illinois . . .	1686	Kaskaskia	French
19. Wisconsin . . .	1690	Green Bay	French
20. Texas . . .	1692	San Antonia de Bexar	Spanish
21. Indiana . . .	1694	Vincennes	French
22. Louisiana . . .	1699	Iberville	French
23. Alabama . . .	1703	Mobile	Spanish
24. Mississippi . . .	1716	Natchez	French
25. Vermont . . .	1724	Fort Dummer . . .	English
26. Georgia . . .	1733	Savannah	English
27. Tennessee . . .	1765	Nashville	English
28. California . . .	1769	Los Angeles . . .	Spanish
29. Kentucky . . .	1775	Boonsboro'	Daniel Boone . . .
30. Ohio . . .	1788	Marietta	Emigrants frm N. England
31. Iowa . . .	1820	Dubuque	Emigrants from Illinois

THE PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE REVOLUTION.

Battles.	State	Date.	B. loss.	A. loss.	Battles.	State	Date.	B. loss.	A. loss.		
Lexington, . .	Mass	April 19,	1775	273	88	Fort Mercer, . .	N. J.	Nov. 18,	1777	500	32
Bunker Hill, . .	"	June 17,	1775	1054	450	Monmouth, . .	"	June 28,	1778	400	200
Long Island, . .	N. Y.	Aug. 12,	1776	400	2000	Rhode Island, . .	R. I.	Aug. 28,	1778	260	210
White Plains, . .	"	Oct. 28,	1776	300	300	Brier Creek, . .	Geo.	March 3,	1779	23	450
Fort Washington	"	Nov. 16,	1776	1000	2868	Stony Point, . .	N. Y.	July 15,	1779	600	100
Trenton, . . .	N. J.	Dec. 26,	1776	1020	4	Savannah, . .	Geo.	Oct. 9,	1779	130	1000
Princeton, . . .	"	Jan. 3,	1777	400	100	Camden, . . .	S. C.	Aug. 16,	1780	325	1000
Hubbardton, . .	Ver.	July, 7,	1777	200	800	King's Mountain,	N. C.	Oct. 7,	1780	1150	20
Bennington, . .	"	Aug. 16,	1777	800	100	Cowpens, . . .	S. C.	Jan. 17,	1781	800	72
Brandy wine, . .	Del.	Sept. 11,	1777	500	1000	Guilford, C. H.,	N. C.	Mar. 15,	1781	600	400
Stillwater, . . .	N. Y.	Sept. 19,	1777	600	300	Hobkirk's Hill, . .	S. C.	April 25,	1781	250	250
Germantown, . .	Penn	Oct. 4,	1777	500	1200	Eutaw Springs, . .	"	Sept. 8,	1781	700	700
Saratoga, . . .	N. Y.	Oct. 7,	1777	400	80	Yorktown,† . .	Va.	Oct. 19,	1781	7000	
Saratoga, . . .	"	Oct. 17,	1777	5791	00						

* Surrender of Burgoyne and his army.

† Surrender of Cornwallis and his army.

SETTLEMENT OF THE STATES.

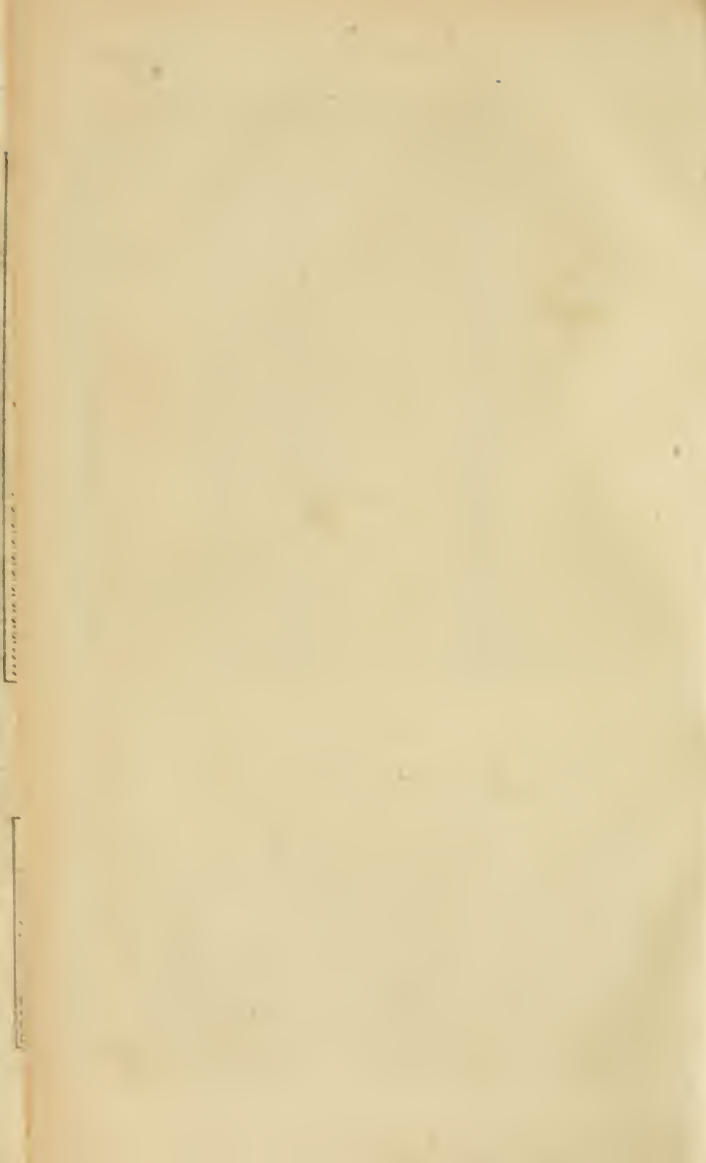
States.	Date.	Towns.	Nation.
1. Florida . . .	1565	St. Augustine . . .	Spanish
2. Virginia . . .	1607	Jamestown	English
3. New York . . .	1614	Albany	Dutch
4. Massachusetts . . .	1620	Plymouth	English
5. N. Hampshire . . .	1623	Dover	English
6. New Jersey, . . .	1624	Bergen	Danes
7. Delaware . . .	1627	Cape Henlopen . . .	Swedes and Finns . .
8. Maine	1630	York	English
9. Connecticut . . .	1633	Windsor	English
10. Maryland	1634	St. Mary's	English
11. Rhode Island . . .	1636	Providence	Roger Williams . . .
12. N. Carolina . . .	1650	Albemarle	English
13. Missouri	1663	St. Genevieve	French
14. S. Carolina . . .	1670	Port Royal	English
15. Michignn	1670	Detroit	French
16. Pennsylvania . . .	1682	Philadelphia	William Penn
17. Arkansas	1685	Arkansas	French
18. Illinois	1686	Kaskaskia	French
19. Wisconsin	1690	Green Bay	French
20. Texas	1692	San Antonia de Bexar	Spanish
21. Indiana	1694	Vincennes	French
22. Louisiana	1699	Ibberville	French
23. Alabama	1703	Mobile	Spanish
24. Mississippi	1716	Natchez	French
25. Vermont	1724	Fort Dummer	English
26. Georgia	1733	Savannah	English
27. Tennessee	1765	Nashville	English
28. California	1769	Los Angeles	Spanish
29. Kentucky	1775	Boonsboro'	Daniel Boone
30. Ohio	1788	Marietta	Emigrants frm N. England
31. Iowa	1820	Dubuque	Emigrants from Illinois

THE PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE REVOLUTION.

Battles.	State	Date.	B. loss.	A. loss.	Battles.	State	Date.	B. loss.	A. loss.		
Lexington, . .	Mass	April 19,	1775	273	88	Fort Mercer, . .	N. J.	Nov. 18,	1777	500	32
Bunker Hill, . .	"	June 17,	1775	1054	450	" " " " " "	"	June 28,	1778	400	200
Long Island, . .	N. Y.	Aug. 12,	1776	400	2000	Rhode Island, . .	R. I.	Aug. 28,	1778	260	210
White Plains, . .	"	Oct. 28,	1776	300	300	Brier Creek, . .	Geo.	March 3,	1779	23	450
Fort Washington	"	Nov. 16,	1776	1000	2868	Stony Point, . .	N. Y.	July 15,	1779	600	100
Trenton,	N. J.	Dec. 26,	1776	1020	4	Savannah, . . .	Geo.	Oct. 9,	1779	130	1000
Princeton,	"	Jan. 3,	1777	400	100	Camden,	S. C.	Aug. 16,	1780	325	1000
Hubbardton, . . .	Ver.	July, 7,	1777	200	800	King's Mountain,	N. C.	Oct. 7,	1780	1150	20
Bennington, . . .	"	Aug. 16,	1777	800	100	Cowpens,	S. C.	Jan. 17,	1781	800	72
Brandywine, . . .	Del.	Sept. 11,	1777	500	1000	Guilford, C. H.,	N. C.	Mar. 15,	1781	600	400
Stillwater, . . .	N. Y.	Sept. 19,	1777	600	300	Hobkirk's Hill, .	S. C.	April 25,	1781	250	250
Germantown, . .	Penn	Oct. 4,	1777	500	1200	Eutaw Springs, .	"	Sept. 8,	1781	700	700
Saratoga,	N. Y.	Oct. 7,	1777	400	80	Yorktown,† . . .	Va.	Oct. 19,	1781	7000	
Saratoga,*	"	Oct. 17,	1777	5791	00						

* Surrender of Burgoyne and his army.

† Surrender of Cornwallis and his army.



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 258 342 8

